A DICTIONARY OF SANGO

Contract No. OE-4-14-003

Author: Charles R. Taber, M.A.

Project Director: William J. Samarin, Ph.D.

Hartford Seminary Foundation

Hartford, Connecticut

January, 1965
TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION ................................................................. iii
   General Considerations ................................................... iii
   Purpose of the Dictionary ............................................... iv
   Sources ........................................................................ v
   Procedure in Compilation ............................................... vii
   Acknowledgements ......................................................... xiv
   Symbolization ................................................................ xvi
   Bibliography ................................................................. xviii

FRENCH LEXICAL SETS .......................................................... xxi

SANGC ENGLISH DICTIONARY ............................................... 1
   -A- .............................................................................. 1
   -B- .............................................................................. 5
   -B' - .......................................................................... 23
   -C- ............................................................................ 24
   -D- ............................................................................ 31
   -E- ............................................................................ 40
   -F- ............................................................................ 43
   -G- ............................................................................ 51
   -H- ............................................................................ 66
   -I- ............................................................................ 73
   -J- ............................................................................ 75
   -K- ............................................................................ 76
   -L- ............................................................................ 99
   -M- ........................................................................... 110
   -N- ........................................................................... 129
   -O- ........................................................................... 148
   -P- ........................................................................... 150
   -Q- ........................................................................... 160
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>En</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>309</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>332</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>337</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ENGLISH-SANGE DICTIONARY
INTRODUCTION

General considerations

This dictionary is intended to be a companion volume to the one entitled A Grammar of Sango,* which was written in 1963 by William J. Samarin. Since the Sango language and its use are described at some length in the Grammar (i-iii), nothing further will be said in this volume.

Prior to the compilation of the present dictionary, several bilingual or polylingual word lists and glossaries were in existence at various times, as the result of the efforts of administrators, such as Eboué, of Protestant missionaries, especially the Inter-Missions Language Committee, and of Catholic missionaries, notably Tisserant. But for several reasons none of these can be considered a fully satisfactory dictionary.

The oldest lexicographical effort available is that of Félix Eboué (1948) entitled Langues sango, banda, baya, mandjia. After a brief grammatical sketch and semantically-grouped word list for each language, and a section of parallel columns of "phrases usuelles," there are 48 pages of parallel columns of single words in French glossed in each of the other languages. The deficiencies of this approach from the point of view of lexicography are evident.

A much more voluminous list was compiled a number of years ago (but never published) by the Inter-Missions Language Committee. In the two parts, Sango-English and English-Sango, an effort was made to distinguish various senses of certain words, and in a few cases illustrative examples were given. But, apart from the practical disadvantage that this glossary was never made generally available, it suffered greatly from lack of rigor.

* Full bibliographical references for all works cited in the Introduction are given in the Bibliography at the end of the Introduction
in selection and definition. Many terms are included which are used only in Protestant missions literature, but which are not in general use among native speakers of standard Sango. Many of these neologisms are either ad hoc creations by the missionaries or borrowings from various African languages, notably Yakoma and Ngbandi, which are related to Sango. Thus the lack of rigorous selectivity impaired the usefulness of this work. These remarks are based on the writer's memory, since no copy of the dictionary was available to him.

By all odds the best existing list is that included in Tisserant's (1950) *Sango, langue véhiculaire de l'Oubangui-Chari*. This consists of 42 pages of Sango-French lists and 179 pages of French-Sango lists. Most words are defined by a gloss followed by an illustrative example. The orthography is fair, in that it provides for the most functional phonemic contrasts. The most serious flaw is the absence of any indication of tone. Contrasts for which the functional load is relatively small are ignored, such as that between /e/ and /e/, /o/ and /o/, and in some words /mb/ is transcribed /b/ initially. Double vowels are not noted, and the distinctions between /l/ and /r/ seem in places arbitrary, though this may be a matter of what informant was used. On the other hand, a non-existent distinction is created between /z/ and [ɔ], spelled j. Various adaptations are evident in the direction of conformity to standard French orthography: ou for /u/, gu for /g/ before i and e, double s between vowels, and so forth. But even in this work, the attestation is insufficient, different senses are not discriminated with enough care, and there are not nearly enough phrases defined.

It follows from above remarks that the present effort, preliminary though it is, is much needed.

**Purpose of the dictionary**

Since this work is being done under a contract with the United States Government, it is aimed primarily for use by speakers of English wishing to learn Sango. Consequently, both halves of the dictionary have been prepared with this audience in mind. Thus, Sango terms are glossed rather
fully in the Sango-English half, illustrative examples are used freely, and a good many notes are added to make understanding and use clearer. It is assumed that the user, knowing English, will come to this part of the dictionary with the question, "What does this term, seen or heard in Sango, mean?" The English-Sango half, on the other hand, is intended to answer the correlative question, "How does one say X in Sango?" Here, the illustrative examples are given in English and glossed in Sango.

Thus, the speaker of English is consciously favored. But this by no means makes the dictionary useless to a speaker of Sango wishing to learn English. He can consult the Sango-English part to find out how to say in English what he knows in Sango, and the English-Sango part to find out the meaning of English words that he runs across. Thus, it is hoped that both speakers of English and speakers of Sango will find this work useful in their efforts at mutual understanding.

Sources

A dictionary can be no better than its sources. That is to say that the lexicographer is not an author nor an authority, not a legislator nor an innovator, but simply a compiler of what he finds in actual use among people who speak the language. If he consults the speech of persons who use a language well, he will at least have a basis on which to construct a sound dictionary. But if his sources are suspect, no amount of ability or diligent effort on his part can make a good dictionary. A lexicographer, since he is not an inventor, is at the mercy of the real experts: those individuals who, by the fact that they are accepted as such by their language community, give evidence that they speak the language correctly. It thus becomes a matter of paramount importance to establish a reliable corpus from which to work, by exercising informed discrimination. The sources of this dictionary are described in the following paragraphs.

The bulk of the corpus used for this dictionary is the same on which was described by Samarin (1963 p. iv-vii, xi-xiii) as constituting the basis of the grammar. Nothing further will be said here except to state that this corpus consisted of approximately 37,000 citation slips representing
Sango and 508 French terms taken from 63 texts by almost as many speakers.

This corpus was inadequate for our purposes in two different ways. First, a good many words were insufficiently attested in the file. That is, either there were only one or two slips, or the slips available did not furnish a sufficient basis for determining accurately the sense or senses of the word. Second, a number of other sources had to be consulted in an attempt to supplement the lexicon. The discussion which follows concerns especially Sango terms, since the French list presented its own problems which will be discussed in the next section.

The first effort was to listen carefully to a number of tapes which had not been included in the original corpus, culling citations to meet the two requirements outlined above. But the law of diminishing returns quickly made this endeavor inefficient. Very few new terms were discovered by this means.

Second, in the course of working through the material, either Dr. Samarin or I from time to time remembered words which we had heard previously, and listed them to be checked for currency and correctness. For the most part, these words were checked by mail with Mr. Nambozouina, who had worked with us on the grammar and had been given some instruction as to what was desired of him. A number of words were added in this way.

Third, Mr. Nambozouina, in addition to answering questions about words which were insufficiently attested in the corpus or which we submitted to him, furnished a fair number of words which were not previously in the file. These came in the course of conversation, or phonological or lexical checking while working on the grammar, or in the process of explaining words which were submitted to him, or especially in response to a list of basic French words which he was asked to gloss in Sango. In addition to making additions to the list, it must be said that Mr. Nambozouina's testimony helped to eliminate a number of words which were in the list but were found not to conform to current Sango usage. These included a number of nonce borrowings from various local languages.

Finally, a serious effort was made to sample the literature, both
Protestant and Catholic. A good number of pages of both kinds of written texts were read at random, and new words were listed. Time did not permit checking these with Mr. Nambozouina, but a spot check with two native speakers of Sango who were available, Mme Gallin and Mme Soni, produced results which on the whole must be considered negative. That is, in very few cases did they accept as standard Sango words submitted to them from these sources. In many cases they registered a complete lack of recognition, even though they are native speakers of Yakoma. This is not, of course, conclusive proof that these words are not valid. But at least it precluded their inclusion in the dictionary. Should a careful investigation on the field reveal that these words, or some of them, are currently used, they should of course be incorporated in any future revisions.

The points just mentioned underline the fact that it is ultimately not satisfactory to compile a dictionary away from the field. Especially on a short-term project such as this one, the amount of time consumed by an exchange of correspondence made it impractical to use the abilities of Mr. Nambozouina to the extent which had been hoped. At a great many points, a moment's spot check with a good informant or two would have answered questions which must here remain unanswered. It is of course illegitimate for me to attempt to answer them ex cathedra or on the basis of personal memory of usage previously heard. Only unimpeachable data from a native source would do. As a result, this dictionary is distinctly a preliminary effort. Every effort has been made to make accurate and reliable what has been included, but there are gaps which should be filled by further work.

Procedure in compilation

The procedure followed may be conveniently discussed under the rubrics of (a) selection, (b) determination of what was to constitute an entry, (c) discrimination of senses, (d) formulation of definitions, and (e) construction of the English-Sango section.

In making a selection of items to be included, the first step was to make a careful inventory of all the items which were available, whether
from the corpus or one of the auxiliary sources mentioned above, Sango and French. All citations of every candidate word were included in a single alphabetical file, under a set of colored head slips which specified how many citations came from which source. As new citations of old words and new words turned up, they were included.

The next step was to make the actual selection of those items which would ultimately be included. For Sango terms, all that was required was evidence that the term was in current use, and enough illustrative examples of the right kind to permit a determination of the meaning and range of usage. As was mentioned above, Mr. Nambozouina served as informant and arbiter in most cases, though in a few cases the help of Mme Gallin and Mme Soni was crucial. As a result, a certain number of terms were eliminated as not constituting good usage.

This procedure worked with a minimum of trouble for Sango words. But the selection of the French words which were to be included presented a much greater difficulty. In an effort to establish sound criteria of selection, a study was made of the statistical incidence of the French loan words in the corpus in relation to a number of variables: the kind of text involved, the nature of the topic under consideration, and the sex, age, religion, and degree of acculturation and bilingualism of the speaker (Taber 1964). As a result of this study, a number of approaches were successively tried and discarded.

First, it was tentatively decided to include all French words which appeared in four or more of the seven kinds of texts. Then there were several those words which appeared in any of the three kinds of texts (ethnographic, conversations, and fables) which had shown the lowest frequency of French words. Also to be included were the entire set of numerals (up to mille), days of the week, and months of the year. But the result appeared quite arbitrary: a number of words appeared which by no stretch of the imagination could be considered as currently in use, while a number of words which we knew to be in use were omitted. Thus, the purely random approach through statistical incidence was discarded.
Next, it was decided to put apart in separate lists all words which fitted into readily described semantic sets (the taxonomies of various sorts, numerals, days of the week, months of the year, tools, names of human occupations, etc.), and to include in the general listing only those terms which (a) appeared from the corpus to be in general use, and (b) could not fit into a neat category. But this in turn proved unsatisfactory, as a number of words which would have been relegated to the glossary were found to require, for cultural reasons, fairly extensive treatment.

The final decisions, which was adopted and is embodied in this dictionary, was a compromise between the two previously mentioned approaches. The following categories are included:

(a) All words appearing in four or more kinds of texts. This includes 9 nouns, 12 verbs, 4 adjunctives, and 9 connectives and particles.

(b) Of those additional words appearing in one or more of the ethnographic, conversation, or fable texts, the majority were included: 31 nouns out of 46, 13 verbs out of 16, 3 adjunctives out of 7, and 5 connectives and particles out of 7. The ones which were eliminated were either picked up in the special lists mentioned below, or dropped as not sufficiently current.

(c) Of additional words appearing in the corpus, those were included which in my judgment required, for cultural or other valid reasons, a more extended treatment than would be possible in a simple glossary. These included 83 nouns, 15 verbs, and 2 adjunctives.

There are, then, 123 nouns, 40 verbs, 9 adjunctives, and 14 connectives and particles which are included in the general listing, for a total of 186 items. Because in a few cases phrases are defined separately, the number of entries is slightly higher than this. In some of the complex entries, morphemes appear which are not separately defined, since they do not appear to be used alone. Such items are à coudre and à écrire, which are appended to machine, législative which appears in assemblée législative, d'identité which forms a phrase with carte as the head, and so forth.
In separate lists appear: numerals, days of the week, and months of the year. These are listed so as to permit giving a phonetic transcription of the way they are usually pronounced.

No other French words appear in any list. But for the benefit of the user of this dictionary, it will be said here that speakers of Sango use the appropriate French term, in approximately the French pronunciation, when they have occasion to refer to any activity or social, economic, political, or cultural domain which is basically of European origin: tools, instruments, occupations, modern medicine, education, government, and so forth. Many of the terms are quite generally known, while others are known only to bilinguals or to individuals who specialize in a given activity. It should be said that French words appear in illustrative examples and as glosses to English words in the English-Sango portion of the dictionary which are not entered in the Sango-English portion. It was judged that the way in which they are cited gives sufficient indication of their sense.

The compromise solution outlined above is in some senses arbitrary, but, especially in the absence of the possibility of a field investigation, it seemed pragmatically to work out better than any alternative.

In describing the procedure followed in determining what was to constitute an entry, two factors must be mentioned. First, once the selection had been completed, French terms were treated in every way exactly as were the Sango ones. That is, they were considered to be full-fledged members of the Sango lexicon. Second, since Sango has no morphological processes corresponding to the Indo-European ones of derivation and compounding (Samarin 1963 p. 127-8, 169), the next level above the morpheme is the phrase. Thus, the determination of what was to constitute an entry, beyond the simple basic list of morphemes, was simply a determination of which phrases could be said to function lexically as single items. Three criteria were applied: (1) phrases were required to have an invariable form with a constant meaning, (2) in general they were required to exhibit some semantic qualities which could not be deduced from a simple addition of their constituents, and (3) in some cases they exhibited a sort of ellipsis by the omission of an internal connective, as when kâli 'hair'
appears without an expected ti between the nouns. As a result, a good many phrases have been defined as entries separate from their constituent morphemes. In cases where phrases customarily begin with a connective, the connective does not appear in the entry but is shown in the illustrative examples.

The orthography used for Sango terms is the phonemic one established by Samarin (1965). Where divergent pronunciations are known to us through the data, they are indicated immediately after the entry in phonetic transcription enclosed in square brackets []. In a number of cases, terms are entered for which the meaning could be checked by correspondence but for which no phonological verification was possible. These are spelled as in the sources, though some symbols are normalized: ou becomes [u] or [w], etc. Such items are marked by a single following asterisk (*), as in gengi*. No attempt is made to mark tone, since the sources do not mark it. French entries are spelled in standard orthography, and followed by two asterisks (**), then by a phonetic transcription of pronunciations found in the corpus or from Mr. Nambozouina, the transcription being enclosed in square brackets [].

Alphabetization follows the system outlined below: (1) segmental phonemes and letters are assimilated, as between Sango and French items; (2) the order is a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, w, y, z, ç; (3) the symbols ç and ù are used to represent the phonetic entities usually so symbolized, i.e. alveopalatal affricate and glottal stop, which appear only in ideophones; (4) all entries are alphabetized ignoring intervening spaces, so that ma comes between mo and mbo; (5) a nasalized vowel follows an oral vowel, segmentals being the same; (6) as a secondary criterion, high tone precedes low tone, all letters being equal, i.e. mé precedes me and gonda precedes gonda.

The discrimination of the sense or senses of each word proceeded by a series of inductive approximations. The citation slips for the term under investigation were spread out on a table and sorted into as many piles as possible on an impressionistic basis of the shades of meaning.
displayed. Then the piles were combined, resorted, and recombined, until each pile could be said to exhibit a fairly uniform semantic content. In general, an effort was made to avoid over-discriminating, so that closely related senses are usually considered to be a single sense. Incidentally, it is not always easy, in the absence of either historical evidence or the reactions of native speakers, to determine which cases represented divergent meanings of a single term, and which ones represented homonyms. For example, are ′hú 'to breathe' and ′hû 'to spread, to prosper′ the same verb with different meanings, or two different verbs? On the whole, the tendency was to split rather than to join, in the interest of clarity. As a result of this tendency to split and of the one mentioned above to avoid discrimination of senses, the number of words with many different senses under a single entry is relatively small.

In writing the definitions, each one was typed first on a colored slip or set of slips and entered into the file at the head of the appropriate examples. These definition slips were then put together to constitute the basis for the final manuscript of the dictionary.

A very important feature of the defining procedure was the words were grouped and defined at the same time as often as possible. Thus, sets of synonyms were compared and contrasted, and this study was used to find any valid basis for discrimination. An example of this was the set finóo, mawa, pâsi, ponó, sáná, vundú, which covers in various ways the semantic field of suffering. A somewhat similar situation existed when there were sets which, while not strictly synonymous, shared a major semantic element, as for example biríbiri, bière, duma, hárágé, ngbágo, samba, and vin, which are all alcoholic beverages. Likewise báságbó, béta, dengbe, kángá, lekpa, tágba, woga, and zaranga are all antelopes. In some cases, taxonomic sets could be treated together: terms of kinship, for example, as well as the terminology of political and administrative divisions. This study of groups of words led to a finer discrimination, and, through cross-references, to making the dictionary more useful for a study of the semantic structure of the language as well as of the structure of culture and society. In most cases, a fairly full description of the set is given under one particular
term, and cross-references are included under the other members of the set.

The style of the definitions is deliberately flexible, though in most cases the form of a (theoretically) substitutable phrase is used. Where, in a few cases, a single word is adequate, it is given. Where a series of near synonyms better defines the range of usage of an entry, the definition takes this form. Where the required information would transcend the limits of a single manageable phrase, a first approach is made through a phrase, which is then followed by further phrases or even sentences. The definition proper is followed, in most cases, by illustrative sentences, glossed. Where both literal and free glosses seem to be required to make the example intelligible, both are included. It will be noted that in many instances, a simple verb is glossed in the past tense, even when no awe is present. This is in keeping with the finding (Samarin 1963 p. 156) that the unmarked verb often expresses completed action. The purpose of the examples is to show in what kinds of semantic, syntactic, and socio-cultural contexts the entry term is used. Caution should be exercised in using a term in a situation widely different from those shown in the examples. It should be noted that the indication "used only in ..." in a definition means that this limitation holds true in the corpus and/or in the explanations and illustrations furnished by Mr. Nambozouina. No personal judgment is involved.

Following the examples, in a number of instances, is further information. In some cases, as was mentioned above, an entire set is discussed at some length under a representative term. In other cases, notes are added to situate the word culturally or otherwise. This is most often done when the term under study is of great cultural importance, especially when the simple denotation given in the definition proper would not reveal its importance. In a few instances, notably in the discussion of kinship under famille, these notes become brief ethnographic essays in an encyclopaedic style.

Finally come the cross-references pointing either to synonyms or to related words under which further pertinent information is given.
A rigorous attempt was made to exclude all subjective or normative judgments. The definitions were required to arise out of the usage actually found on the slips, which represented ordinary speech.

No status labels of any sort are used in this dictionary. Since Sango is a pidginized language in a somewhat unstable state, (though this judgment must be interpreted with caution), and a lingua franca lacking the cultural and social connotations present in more developed languages, it is at present impossible to make valid statements such as are found in dictionaries of larger languages: colloquial, substandard, local dialect, etc. Such judgments as are expressed by the speakers themselves are inconsistent and often contradictory.

In some cases, e.g. connectives and pronouns, reference is made to the Grammar of Sango, where more information is given than could be summarized in a dictionary. The form of the references is (Grammar p. 135).

Simultaneously with the writing of the definitions, a further step was taken: English-Sango index slips were made, using as head words the English glosses of the Sango words, to serve as the basis for the English-Sango half of the dictionary. After this process was completed, Eaton's English-French-German-Spanish Word Frequency Dictionary and Roget's Thesaurus were consulted so as to ensure both that all pertinent semantic categories were adequately represented and that the words which a speaker of English would be likely to look for were entered with at least a cross-reference. In the English-Sango portion, the information is more condensed. As much as possible, duplications are avoided by an extensive use of cross-references. Persons wishing to find more information may look under the appropriate Sango terms which are used to gloss English entries.

During the entire period of writing definitions, much experimenting was done to find out what would be the best format. Several pages were done in each of a number of formats, until the present one was developed.

Acknowledgements

This dictionary was made possible by a grant (No. OE-4-14-003) from
the United States Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, through its Bureau of Educational Assistance Programs, by the authority of Title VI, Section 602, Public Law 85-864 (otherwise known as the National Defense Education Act). But many others contributed in various ways to the successful completion of the project, and it is a pleasure to make the following acknowledgements.

First, appreciation is due to the Hartford Seminary Foundation, which provided office space, furniture and other equipment, and which also administered the funds. The constant close cooperation of the administration of the school was of valuable assistance throughout the duration of the project.

All those groups, organizations, and individuals who were mentioned in the grammar likewise contributed materially to the completion of the dictionary: those who provided funds and hospitality for Dr. Samarin in his field trip in 1962, when the corpus was collected, not only made the grammar possible, but also the present work. The ladies of the Bethel Baptist Church of Hartford underlined the 37,000 slips which were used for the dictionary as well as those used for the grammar, at a cost of much time and effort.

Dr. H. A. Gleason, Jr., both in a seminar on lexicography and in many casual conversations, provided many valuable ideas and tips which find expression in the form of this dictionary. To Dr. Martin Joos I owe the valuable suggestion concerning the use of Eaton's polylingual Word Frequency Dictionary and the Roget's Thesaurus for checking the coverage of the English-Sango section, as well as several useful procedural ideas. Thanks are also especially due to Mme Gallin-Douatha, wife of the Ambassador from the Central African Republic to the United States and the United Nations, and Mme Agnès Soni, niece of the Ambassador, who generously took time to answer questions about a number of terms and who contributed a number of their own.

Mr. Simon-Pierre Nambozouina, in spite of the great handicap of distance, made an absolutely invaluable contribution: it was he who, before his return to the Central African Republic and later by correspondence, responded
to my innumerable questions about meaning, usage, and so forth. He contributed many terms, explained many, gave illustrative examples where these were lacking, rejected some words, and otherwise served effectively as the sensitive and discriminating informant without which nothing of value could have been done.

Finally, special appreciation is due to Dr. William J. Samarin. His contribution as Principal Investigator in the project was much more than a nominal one. Out of his linguistic competence and personal knowledge of Sango, he generously gave many hours to discussions in which ideas were developed and procedures clarified. He ransacked his own files for information which was incorporated into the file. His constant alertness to new information, especially in the contacts with Mme Gallin and Mme Soni, was invaluable. It was indeed a privilege and a pleasure to work under his direction.

Symbolization

In addition to the orthographies and transcriptions which have already been mentioned (p. xi), the following expressions and symbols are used throughout the dictionary:

Abbreviations:
- Adj : an adjective (English)
- Adv : an adverb (English)
- An : an adjunctive usually used to modify a noun (Sango)
- Au : a universal adjunctive (Samarin 1963 p. 62)
- Av : an adjunctive usually used to modify a verb (Sango)
- C : a connective (Sango), a conjunction (English)
- CP : a connective phrase (Sango)
- esp. : especially
- I : an interjection
- lit. : literally
- N : a noun
- opp. : opposite, opposite of
- P : pronoun
Prep : a preposition (English)
SP : a sentence particle (Sango)
Syn. : synonym, synonymous with
V : a verb

Symbols:
* : preceding a form, means that this is a hypothetical, artificial, or non-existent form
* : following a form, means that the phonology has not been checked with an informant
** : following a form, means that it is French
[ ] : enclose phonetic transcriptions
{ } : enclose illustrative examples
( ) : in definitions, enclose parenthetical explanatory matter
( ) : in forms or examples, enclose optional elements
... : between parts of a complex form, indicates the possibility of other elements intervening in a sentence
: : separates explanation and gloss in a definition, and illustration and gloss in an example (within braces)
- : separates the various phrases, clauses, and parts of a definition

Numerals : with a period immediately following, mark the separate senses of an entry
without a period, immediately after a cross-reference, mark which reference and sense is meant when there is possibility of confusion

Underline : marks the specific form of the entry referred to; also used to mark Latin scientific nomenclature
"  " : indicate an analogic reference to familiar grammatical categories (i.e. Indo-European) which are not to be pressed in Sango grammar
/ : between forms, e.g. ti/ní indicates alternation of the forms
Bibliography

Note: In addition to the Bible books cited, many more have been translated by the Inter-Missions Language Committee. These are the books actually sampled, as mentioned in the discussion of selection (p.  ).

Diocèse de Bangui. Messes : Messes - Prières - Bia ti Nzapa, Issy-les-Moulineaux, Imprimerie Saint-Paul, 1957


Eboué, A. F. Langues sango, hanga, haya, mandja, Paris, Émile Larose, Librairie-Éditeur, 1918


Mbeti ti Esaie, tr. by Inter-Missions Language Committee, experimental mimeographed edition, n.d.


______. "Une lingua franca centrafricaine," Colloque sur le multilinguisme, Brazzaville, Commission de Coopération Technique en Afrique, 1962, pp. 257-65

______. A Grammar of Sango, Hartford Seminary Foundation (in pursuance to a contract with the United States Office of Education), 1963


Seligman, Brenda Z. (ed.). Notes and Queries on Anthropology, sixth ed. revised and rewritten by a Committee of the Royal Anthropological Institute of Great Britain and Ireland, London, 1951

Testament *ti Fini*, tr. by missionaries of the Baptist Mid-Missions, London, British and Foreign Bible Society, 1951


FRENCH LEXICAL SETS

Numerals
un, une [ü, ü, û, ú]-
deux [dé, dez-]
trois [trwâa, turuwâ, trwaz-]
quatre [kâtre, kâtere, katr-]
cinq [sêkge, sêke, sêk-]
six [siis, sîz-]
sept [sêt, sêtê, sêti, sêti-]
huit [wîte, wit-]
neuf [nôfu, néfu, nêv-]
dix [díis, diz-]
onze [ôzô, ôzô, ôz-]
douze [duzê, duz-]
treize [tréze, trézi, trêz-]
quatorze [katôrze]
quinze [kêze]
seize [sêze]
vingt [vêt, vêt-, vêt]
trente [trôte, trânte]
quarante [karôte, karânte]
cinquante [sêkâte, sêkânte]
soixante [swasôtê, swasânte]
cent [sêgan, sàg, sât-]
mille, mil [miil, mil]

Days of the Week
lundi [lûdíi]
mardi [mârde]
mercredi [mêrkreôdi, mârkrôdi]
jeudi [zêdi]
vendredi [vàndreôdi, vândreôdi]
samedi [sàmeôdi]
dimanche [dìmága, dimâsi]

Months of the Year
janvier [zâviye]
février [fevriye]
mars [mârse]
avril [avrîl]
mai [mâ, mâ]
juin [zwêçi, zwêçi, zwê]
juillet [zwîjët, zwîjët]
aôût [ûte]
septembre [sêptâôbre]
octobre [ôktôbre]
novembre [novôbre]
décembre [desôbre]

In speaking Sango, French terms are constantly introduced with approximately the French pronunciation for such denotata as: tools, instruments, and machines; occupations; fruits and vegetables; and any kind of technical terminology whatsoever.
accident** [aksidåg] N : an accident, especially one resulting from work or a mishap with a vehicle

adorónu N : a coarse, impure rock salt consisting in part of sodium chloride and sodium carbonate, mined in the Sahara and imported into the Central African Republic by Muslim traders from the Chad (adorónu askè mbéni yìngó só alíngbi tì wòko yì fadé, mais alíngbi tì tɔ na kàsa mais yama pèpe : adorónu is a kind of salt which softens things fast, and can be used in cooking vegetables but not meat) - see yìngó, which is the general term for salt

ádu ni, ádu titènè C : correlated with ka, and introducing the protasis of a condition contrary to fact: if {ádu ni ála, ka î lingbi titènè i báa finòo míngi : if it were just them, then we would be able to say we had experienced much suffering} (ádu titènè, wàle tì mbi askè na kɔtɔrɔ, ka mbi na lo î causer : if my wife were at home, then she and I would chat) - probably based on dù V 2 - see also tongana

aider** [edée] V : to render assistance, especially of a physical or material nature, to help (mbi dutí na hôpital, mais mbéni famille ade aider mbi pèpe : I was in the hospital, but no member of the family has yet given me help)

ála P : 1. third person plural pronoun : they, them, their, theirs {ála dutí na tèrè tì da : they sat beside the house} {mbi hûnda na ála : I asked them} {da tì ála : their house} {sò tì ála : that is theirs} - see mbi for the pronoun system (Grammar p. 135-138)
2. second person plural pronoun : you, your, yours {ála gá o : you all come on} {mbi ekè éré ála : I'm calling you all} {érè tì ála : your names} {sò tì ála : this is yours} - Protestant literature uses *é - see mbi for the pronoun system
allez-âni

allez** [alé] I : interjection expressing suddenness, rapid succession, or resolution (allez 1 ngbâ tì continue : well then, we still continue) (lo sì gígi, allez, lo gâ pendere wâle awe : she came out, and suddenly she had become a beautiful woman)

andâá [andáa, kandâa] C : 1. really, in reality, in effect, as a matter of fact (lo bâa tongana yâma aske da, andâá yâma aske pepe : he looks to see if there is any meat in it, but as a matter of fact there is no meat) (andâá mo eke tongasô ? : so you are really like that?) (mo kë titëns âla sûru li tì maboko tì mo, andâá mo yî titëns kôâ agâ amû mo : if you refuse to let them vaccinate your shoulder, you are in reality saying that death can come and get you) 2. it turns out that (depuis sô, andâá, oignon abe awe : in the meantime, it turns out that the onions have browned) - (Grammar p. 66)

ânde Av : later, at some future time - used with or without fadé before the verb (aske mú ânde mërengë tì köli bale otá : later they'll take thirty boys) (fadé lo mú na mbi ânde : he'll give it to me at some future time) - distinguished from fadé in lacking the element of speed

ândo Av : formerly, a while ago, recently (mbi tene ândo na mo, wâle tì mbi aske na hôpital : I told you a while ago that my wife is in the hospital) (âla sâra ândo sionî yi mingi : formerly, they used to do very bad things) - distinguished from giriri and kôzo nî in not being used pre-clausally - giriri is a more remote past, and kôzo nî introduces an element of order or sequence

âni P : in the usage of Protestant missions and some persons who learned Sango from the Protestant missions, the first person plural pronoun : we, us, our, ours (âni bôngbi tì dô lengë : we gathered to dance the lengë) (Nzapâ amû na âni : God gave (it) to us) (kôtarâ tì âni : our ancestors) (tî âni awe : ours is finished) - î is in more general use - see mbi for the pronoun system - (Grammar p. 135-138)
apprenti** [aprətii] N : an apprentice learning a European trade - esp. a truck driver's flunky, also called bata kongba

arabe** [arâab, arâbu] N : 1. an Arab - most often, a Muslim from the Chad who, though a Negro, considers himself an Arab - Chad Muslims are usually businessmen, especially importers or transporters 2. the Arabic language

arrêter** [aratêe] V : 1. to cease, to desist, to stop (lo arrêter lo : he stopped him) (mbi arrêter : I stopped) - when an action is specified which is stopped, zia is used 2. to arrest (tonga a ake nzâ na bi, mbi arrêter lo : when someone steals at night, I arrest him) - when the subject of the verb is a noun, so that the subject marker a- would be required, the initial vowel of this verb is assimilated to the subject marker - in other words, there is no overt difference between the verb with or without the subject marker in some cases, while in others the verb without the subject marker appears without any initial vowel

âsa V : to dig shallowly, to scratch with the hands (mbi âsa li ti mbi : I scratched my head) (lo âsa dû ti lú kâsa : he dug the hole (with his hands) to plant vegetables) - koto is used only of scratching, kpaka means to scrape, and zâ implies a much deeper penetration and the use of an implement

assemblée, assemblée législative** [asablêe lezislatliv] N : the national legislature elected by universal adult suffrage - a member is called député - see république for the administrative organization of the country

âta N : 1. a grandmother on either side - tarâ 1 is a syn. - see famille for the kinship system 2. a grandchild, usually female - see famille for the kinship system 3. a term of affection used mutually by a young person and an older woman (gâ, âta, kpaka târê ti mbi : come, child, scrape my body) (âta, mo yi mbi sâra y§ ? : grandmother, what do you want me to do?) syn. tarâ 2
attention - awe

attention [tasyaq] I : watch out, take care! {attention mo zia mbéni vin da pep : take care not to put in any more wine}

attention** N : care, attention - used only in sára attention

aû N : 1. uncle, esp. one's mother's brother - syn. kóya 1 - see famille
   for the kinship system
   2. used as a term of respect in addressing a mature man {aû, mú na mbi mbo tí mbi : uncle, give me my dog} - syn. kóya 2

aussi** [osii] Av : also, too {mbi aussi, mbi fatiguer : I also am tired} {i wara nginza tí i aussi : we've received our money also} - syn. ngâ - both aussi and ngâ can be used together in hybrid reinforcement

auto** [otôo, wotôo] N : an automobile, most often a passenger car -
   kutukutu is a general term applying to all automotive vehicles -
   camion is a truck

autocar** [otokâar, kåar] N : a bus, either urban or cross-country -
   busses represent the principal means of long-distance public transportation, though many people travel by truck - see camion -
   see also kutukutu, the general term for automotive vehicles

awe : see we
bâ N : an oath - usually in the verbal expression dé bâ (fâdé i dé bâ da : we'll swear upon it) - more formal and solemnly binding than zé ndo

ba V : to bend, to be bent, to stoop, to be crooked (lo ba w' ni : he bent the iron) (pêkô ti lo aba : his back is bent) (kôkê aba : the stick is crooked) - ba suggests a single major bend, while kirikiri suggests a series of switches and zigzags - see also dênge and kuku

bâa V : 1. to perceive visually : to see, to notice, to catch sight of, to glance, to stare, to look at, to examine (dole abâa mbirimbiri pêpe : the elephant couldn't see straight) (même mo gâ na pôpô ti dole tongasô, dole abâa mo pêpe : even if you go right in the midst of the elephants, they won't notice you) (lo kpê ti bâa kâmba : he ran to see the snares) (lo bâa tongana yâma aske na yâ ni : he looked to see if there was an animal in it) (mais ita mo bâa bongô sô : but sister, look at this cloth) (mbi wâle mbi changer tongô pêpe, âzô aske bâa mbi : I, the woman, I don't change clothes, people stare at me) (tongana mo goe na hôpital, âla bâa kobâla ti mo : when you go to a hospital, they examine your illness) - see also bâa na lé, bâa ndo

2. to perceive in a more general way (tongana mo sâra tongasô, fâdé mo eke bâa anzere mingi : if you do like this, you'll see that it tastes good) (tongana âla bâa, âla gâ ti sûru ndô ti mabâko sô, il faut que âla kpê pêpe : when you hear that they are coming to prick fingers, you must not run away) - see also mâ, tara

3. to look for, to find (fâdé mbi bâa yi ti kirî na question ti mo : I'll look for and find something to answer your question) - see also gî, wara
bâa-bâa li ti

4. to obtain in visible form (i eke bâa nginza encore : we still get money) - see also wara

5. to meet someone socially, to enter into face-to-face relations with someone, to call upon (mais lo bâa mbi ëko pêpe : but he didn't see, i.e. call upon me, at all) (gâ i goe, mô bâa âû ti mô : come, let's go, you'll meet your uncle) - see also bâa lé ti, bâa têrê, tê

6. to realize, to understand (tongana âla bâa, mô eke na nginza mingi pêpe, âla yî da pêpe : when they realize you don't have much money, they won't agree) (mo bâa awe? : do you understand?) - see also mâ

7. to think, to feel that, to consider as, to be of the opinion that (mbi bâa, na lége ti âmbâni wâle sô Nzapâ amû na âla ti dû méréngê, sô ake kusâra ti âla : I think, as far as women to whom God has given to bear children are concerned, that this is the work of women) (mbi bâa yî sô ake kôtâ yî : I consider that this is a big thing) - see also bâa ... tenê, bâa tongana, penser

8. a device to get the attention of someone : look, look here, see here, hey! (bâa, só lo : look, that's him) (bâa kôtâ caisse sô, mbi bi na sêse : look, this big crate, I threw it on the ground)

9. in future form, with ominous sense : to see (fadê i bâa na yâ ti nzê sô : we'll see during this very month!)

bâa finôo V : to experience physical suffering or pain (i bâa finôo mingi, ngbangati âla mû zaza, tîtenâ âla sô i : we experienced much suffering, because they took whips to hurt us) - see also finôo, bâa pâsi, hû ponô

bâa lé ti V : to encounter socially (îta, nzala ti mô asâra mbi mingi, tî bâa lé ti mô : brother, I have a great desire for you, to see you face to face) - see also bâa 5, bâa têrê

bâa li ti V : to have a dream, a vision (tongana babâ ti mbi alângô na bí sî lo bâa li ti lo, lo bâa mamâ ti lo sô akûi : when my father slept at night and dreamed, he saw his mother who had died) - see also mosûmâ, sûmâ
bâa mbadi V : to practise divination - syn. sâra mbadî

bâa na lé V : to see for oneself, to see first-hand (zia lo gâ na ndo só, fadé i na lo 1 goe na yáká nî, fadé lo bâa na lé tî lo : let him come here, he and I will go to the field, he'll see for himself) - see also bâa 1

bâa ndâ V : to seek to ruin someone's reputation (lo bâa ndâa mbi : he is seeking to ruin my reputation)

bâa ndo V : to see, to be able to see (mbéni kóli 5ko ake, mais lo bâa ndo pepe : there was a certain man, but he couldn't see) - see also bâa 1

bâa ndo tî kûi V : to aim at the vital spot (tongana lo wara dole, lo múngombe, lo bâa ndo tî kûi, lo fâa lo : when he found an elephant, he took a gun, he aimed at the vital spot, and he killed it)

bâa ndo, yi tî : see yi tî bâa ndo

bâa nze V : to have a menstrual period - see bângó nze

bâa pâsi V : to suffer, especially as a result of burdensome toil (mbi bâa pâsi alîngbi pepe : I experienced suffering beyond measure) - see also bâa finòc, hû ponô, finòc, ponô, sâna, pâsi

bâa ... tene V : to think, to conclude, to be of the opinion (mbi bâa mbi tene, kóli kóë ake wara bilharzie : I was of the opinion that men also got the liver-fluke disease) - see also bâa 7, bâa tongana, penser - hinga ... tene is much more confident and sure

bâa tîrê V : to meet socially, of two or more people (jusqu'à lâ só, âni bâa tîrê na lo pepe : to this very day he and I haven't met) - see also bâa 5, bâa lé tî

bâa ... tongana V : to consider as (âla bâa i tongana yâma pepe : they don't consider us as animals) - see also bâa 7, bâa ... tene, penser

bâa yi awe? V : an expression of astonishment (mo bâa yi awe? : can you beat that!)
babâ N : 1. father, in a biological and social sense - usually accompanied by a specifying complement {mbi ëke babâ ti mërengé fadesô : I'm the father of a child now} {sô babâ ti mbi laâ : that's my father there} - without complement, used in direct address or in third person : one's own father {babâ, mbi kûi : father, I'm dying} {babâ asâra koa : father is working} - see mamâ, see famille for the kinship system

2. usually plural : collectively, the members of the father's clan, including paternal ancestors {kôzo nî, âbabâ ti i ... : formerly, our ancestors ...} {lo goe na place tî âbabâ tî lo : he went to the place of his father's clan} - kôtarâ is a more general, less specific term for ancestors - see mamâ 2.

3. usually with some specifying complement : a member of one's father's clan, especially one's father's brothers {mbéni babâ ti mbi : a certain "father" of mine} {babâ ti mbi ti kêtê : my father's younger brother} - see also kêté babâ, kôtâ babâ, mamâ 3

4. by extension, a man who has authority or influence over one, or whom one respects highly {fadesô mo gâ babâ ti mbi awe : now you've become my father}

5. an exclamation of intense surprise, sometimes tinged with apprehension - in this case it is strongly articulated, with the pitch interval exaggerated {babâ! : wow!} - syn. mon vieux

babâ 5ko An : expression used to specify that someone is a sibling rather than a cousin - further specification can be added regarding the mother {îta, babâ 5ko na mamâ 5ko : a full sibling, a sibling with the same mother and father} {îta, babâ 5ko na mamâ akê ndê : a sibling of one father but a different mother} - see mamâ 5ko, mamâ ... ndê

baba N : vanity, conceit, pride {sô babâ si mo ëke sâra apê? : isn't that vanity you're doing, i.e. aren't you showing off?} - used in the expression fa baba - syn. fandara

bâbolo N : a sweet potato, either white or orange
bac** [bák, báke] N : a ferry for crossing a river - this comprises a platform of boards fixed to a set of parallel metal barges or dugout canoes, and propelled either by paddle or pole or, in rare cases, by outboard motor

bágara N : 1. hump-backed domestic cattle or zebu, or other domestic cattle {ábóróró ake ázo tí bata bágara : the Bóróró, i.e. local Fulani, are the people who keep cattle} - the zebu is by far the most common kind of cattle - it may be kept only in the extreme northwest and northeast, in areas bordering on the Chad, because the tsetse fly carries sleeping sickness in the rest of the country 2. buffalo (rare) {ábágara ní agá tí kpé na gbé tí mbi : the buffalo came and ran right below me} - gógá, ngbáa are more usual synonyms 3. beef {tongana mo yi tí zia bágara da, só nzoni : if you want to put beef into it, that's good} - yáma 2 is the more general term for meat

bakongo* N : a turtle, a tortoise

bákoyá N : a baboon {lá kôê na yáká tí kóli só, ábákoyá míngi ake foutu kôbe ní : always in this man's field, many baboons were destroying the crops} - see yáma tí ngonda

bála N : an area within a village which is enclosed by a hedge or fence {tongana i fáa yáma awe, i gá na place tí bála ní, i kángbi yáma só tenstí áfamille : when we had killed the animal, we came to the enclosure and divided the animal among the families} - gbágbá designates the fence or hedge

balai** [balêe, baliê] N : a broom - indigenous brooms are made of a bunch of grass, fibers, or analogous vegetable material, held, bound, or woven together, without a handle, so that the user must squat while sweeping

báláwá N : the shea tree or its nut - a solid fat called mafuta tí báláwá is made of the nuts and used in cooking in the northern parts of the country, especially among Muslims and those culturally influenced by them
balayer-banc

balayer** [balié, balée] V : to sweep {balayer yâ da : sweep inside the house} {balayer ndo : sweep up, sweep the place} - balayer is more specific than sukûla

bale N : a unit of ten in the number system, which is decimal {fadé mbi ekz mü ámbëni zo, li tí ála mûgi, wala bale otá, wala bale osiô : afterwards I will take other people, many of them, perhaps thirty, perhaps forty} {mais yâma ti bale 5ko, tongana mo vo, même mërengé só, lo lingbi tí te, alingbi na lo ppe : but ten (pâta's worth, i.e. fifty francs) of meat, when you buy it, even this child could eat it and it wouldn't be enough for him} - see 5ko for the number system and its uses

ballon** [balôô, balôo] N : 1. a ball, usually of the imported inflated type used for soccer - when the ball is a solid home-made one of native rubber, it is often called ndembú - see pika ballon
2. soccer, which is virtually a national sport - see pika ballon

bâmará N : a lion {pôrô tí bâmará, mo kâ awe? : the lion skin, have you sold it yet?} - most lions in the Central African Republic are maneless - see yâma ti ngonda

bambou** [bambûu] N : 1. bamboo - true bamboo is relatively rare, though it is found and used in scattered places
2. a type of fan palm (Raphia sp.) - the woody central stem of the fronds is used in the roof structure of houses, in making beds and other furniture, etc. - the tough bark of the frond stems, peeled in long narrow strips, is woven into large mats and baskets - the leaves themselves are sewed into large flat shingles or tiles which are widely used for roofing in the southern Central African Republic - children carve toys such as dolls, model cars, and so forth, of the fibrous pith from the inside of the frond stems, and use slivers of the bark for pins

banc** [bâq] N : 1. a bench
2. a board on which food is crushed or mixed {atûku na ndô banc, abôngi na oignon, amélanger yâ ni nzoni : she dumps it on the board and mixes with onions, and blends it well}
bângâ N : 1. a rubber tree - in most places rubber is taken from wild
rather than cultivated trees, though plantations exist
2. raw latex or rubber {asâra bângâ na géré tî vélo : they make
rubber into bicycle tires} - latex is also called ngû tî bângâ -
ndembû is cured rubber

bângô nze N : a menstrual period - see bâa nze

bara V : to greet {mbi bara mó nzoni : I greet you cordially} {mbi bara
âla kôé : I greet you all}

bara N : greetings {îta, bara mínga : brother, many greetings} {mbi
tene bara tî mbi na âla kôé : I say my greetings to you all} {lo mû
na mó bara tî lo na madame na âmâmèngé kôé : he gives you his
greetings, and Madam and the children also} - this expression is the
first greeting exchanged by two people upon meeting, and is
conventionally followed by other formulas - see mo eke, mbi eke -
duti nzoni, goe nzoni are used at parting

básâgbé N: Derby's eland, a large, rather scarce antelope much prized by
hunters - see yama tî ngonda

basânze N : that which pertains to traditional customs or crafts - used
in the phrases ta tî basânze, yingô tî basânze - much less pejorative
than sauvage - opp. civiliser, service

batá N : a squirrel

bata V : 1. to keep, preserve, protect, guard, sustain, retain {gi vin
só mó bata na nî só venî mo ké tô na nî : just the wine in which
you kept it you should boil it in} {mbi ké bata lo na kôbe tî mbi :
I'm sustaining him with my food} {mais îta mbi má âla ké mú kôli gi
na kêtê yorô tî bata tîrî ape? : but sister, haven't I heard that
they catch husbands with a small charm for protecting the body?}
2. by extension, to adopt {îta tî lo, âla mú âmâmèngé tî lo só, âla
bata lo ; his brothers, they took his child and adopted it} - syn.
kamâta 2
bata kôngbá-béta

bata kôngbá N : an apprentice and assistant to a truck driver who rides on top of the load to make sure of its safety and to warn the driver of vehicles from the rear - also called apprenti

bata mè N : a brassière

bata yângâ V : to keep still, especially under provocation or inducement, to exercise self-discipline so as not to speak

bé N : the middle or center of something - used in bé bi and ndé bé - syn. pépé, milieu - means in the middle of a surface, e.g. a table

be V 1 : to weary or discourage someone (téné tì lo abe ála awe : his saying discouraged them) - see nzé, mú yângâ, kara

be V 2 : 1. to brown, as frying food (mtì sâra yâma na mafuta, na abe : I prepare meat in fat, and it browns)
2. to ripen, to be ripe (mângo ni abe nzoni, anzeré míngi : the mango is quite ripe, it tastes very good)

bebé N : roofing grass, a special kind of tall grass (perhaps Imperata cylindrica L.) especially well adapted to making durable thatched roofs (tongana mo fâa péré na place tì bebé, mo mú géré ni kòé : when you cut grass in the place of roofing, take the roots as well) - péré is the general term for grass - see li ti da

bé bí N : midnight - see bí, heure, - syn. midi ti bí

békpâ N : thunder (békpâ asungba, amú mo : may thunder burst and get you, i.e. a curse upon you) (békpâ asungba mbéni lá, amú mérangé só anzí yì : the thunder burst one day and got the youth who stole the thing) - see yékpa

berâ N : battle, war (tongasô lo ké goe na berâ tì tiri na áìta tì lo na tì kamáta álá : so he went to war to fight with his brothers and to capture them) (álá goe tì tiri berâ : they went to fight a war) - see also píka berâ, tiri, tì na lí

béta N : a waterbuck, a large, dark grey game antelope - see yama tì ngonda
bé N : 1. the liver, human or animal

2. in folk psychology, the seat of the human spirit (see yingá), hence of the personality and all its functions: will, intellect, memory, emotions, consciousness, disposition, temperament, etc. - the process of perception begins with the senses (see lé, nké, báa, má) - next the head (see li) takes the information and either loses, i.e. forgets it (see girisa i), or transmits it to the liver, where all further dispositions are made - the information may be understood (see hinga na bé) - the liver can accept and believe the information and commit itself (see zia bé), or reject it (see k£) - it can reverse itself and receive truth formerly rejected, as in repentance (see leke bé) - it can cogitate, meditate, ponder, and wonder (see pi bé, b'anda, há, penser) - the liver experiences joy (see bé ... ngiá), sorrow and resentment (see bé ... sa, vundá), desire and love (see bé ... fé) - it can be overwhelmed by an awesome thing (see bé ... dô), it can be broken (see bé ... fáa), amazed and astonished (see bé ... gbô) - anger is associated with a rise in the bile (see ngonzo, bé ... londô), and when the anger has abated it is said that the liver has cooled, is resting, or has returned to its place (see bé ... dé, bé ... lângô, bé ... kirî) - it can also be said that it has again become good, though this expression (see bé ... ngonî) applies equally to the cessation of sorrow and resentment as the result of consolation - the liver can be arrogant (see bé kótâ), and it can become humble and amenable (see wôko bé) - it can become weary and discouraged (see bé ... nzé) and experience pleasure (see bé ngere) - it can be characterized as black or double (see bé ... vokô, bé ... üse) to indicate dishonesty or deceitfulness, or white (see bé ... vurû) to indicate integrity and guilelessness - when livers are one (see bé ñkô), there is good fellowship - kindness is described as a good liver (bé nzoni), and other qualities include right, evil, and so on (see mbirimbiri, sioni) - really knowing another person implies knowing his liver (see hinga bé tí) {lukundû até bé tí lo : a witch spirit has eaten his liver, i.e. to explain sickness or death} (ngonzo akáí na bé tí lo : anger has
bé (cont.) - bé ...

quieted in his liver) {bé tí ála aške tongana bé tí zo vokó : their liver is like that of a black man, i.e. their temperament, so that they are congenial and understanding} {téné aške na bé tí lo : there is a matter in his liver, i.e. something that needs to be settled before peace is restored} {lo téné na bé tí lo ... : he said within himself ...} {bé tí lo achanger : his disposition has changed} - see expressions including bé : bi bé, gbó bé, kánga bé, kpo bé, li bé, má ... bé, sára ... na bé, sioní bé, wa ... bé, zia bé

bé ... dé V : anger has abated {bé tí lo adé : he has calmed down} - see also bé ... lângo, bé ... kírí, bé ... sa nzoní - opposite, bé ...
londó

bé ... dô V : to be overwhelmed by something awesome, frightening - hence, dòngó bé : something terrible {tenéti politique, ála sára yí tí dòngó bé, mais ála sára gbá : as for politics, they did some terrible things, but without success}

bé ... eké na ngiá V : to rejoice greatly - the expression can be inverted {bé tí mbi aške na ngiá : my liver has joy} {ngiá aške na bé tí mbi : joy is in my liver} - not as strong as bé ... si na ngiá

bé ... fáa V : to be heartbroken, to be overwhelmed by sorrow and despair - the inverted form is more common {bé tí lo afáa : his heart is broken} {yí só afáa bé tí lo : this thing is breaking his heart}

bé ... gá nzoní V : 1. to be morally ameliorated {bé tí lo agá nzoní : his liver became good, i.e. he became a better man}
2. to be pacified {bé tí lo agá nzoní : he calmed down} - see bé ...
dé, bé ... kírí, bé ... lângo
3. to be comforted or consoled {bé tí lo agá nzoní : he was comforted} - see wa bé

bé ... gbó V : to be startled, amazed, astonished, to marvel {bé tí lo agbó ngbanga ti finí yí só lo báa kózo ní pepe : he marvelled on account of the new things he had never seen before}

bé ... kírí V : to be pacified after violent anger {bé tí lo akírí na
place ní : his liver returned to its place, i.e. he calmed down) — see báo ... dé, báo ... lângó, báo gâ nzoní 2 — opposite of báo ... lândô

bá ... kótá N : arrogance — see also bâba, fandara

bá ... lângó V : to calm down after hot anger — syn. báo ... dé, báo ...
kírí, báo ... gâ nzoní — opposite, báo ... lândô

bále V : to deny (mbi bále téné pépe : I don’t deny the matter) — see sâra téné

bá ... lândô V : to be aroused, to become angry (bá t’lo alândô, ngonzo agâ na lê tî lo : his liver arose, bile came up into his face, i.e. he became violently angry) — not as strong as ngonzo ... gbô báo — opposite of báo ... dé, báo ... kírí, etc.

bá ... nzé V : to be wearied or discouraged (bá tî lo anzé bianî : he was truly discouraged) — syn. báo ... wôko, fatîguer — opposite wa báo, kânga báo

bá ... nzéré V : to take pleasure, to be pleased (fâdé i dîko èré tî âla, sí báo tî âla anzéré : we’ll read your names, so that you will be pleased) — this expression is less specific in focussing on the source of the pleasure than nzéré na báo

bá nzoní N : kindness, amiability, cordiality, mercy — also said as nzoní báo — frequently found in the phrase sâra báo nzoní (íta, mo sâra báo nzoní na mbi mo diminuer ngéré nî maa ; sister, show me kindness and bring down the price, won’t you) (âla têne na báo nzoní yî sô alîngbi na pópó tî âla pépe ; they don’t talk kindly among themselves as they should)

bá ... óse V : to be dishonest, deceitful, underhanded — the copula èke either appears or is understood before óse (mbi zia báo tî mbi na lo ǹko pépe, báo tî lo óse ; I don’t trust him at all, he is deceitful)

bá ǹko N : agreement (âla sâra báo ǹko na ndô téní nî : they agreed on this matter)
bé ôko (cont.)-bé ... yi

2. fellowship (lo sára bé ôko na âyâma tî ngangó tongana dole pepe : he didn't associate and have fellowship with strong animals like the elephant)

3. single-mindedness (lo sára na mabôko ôse pepe, mais na bé ôko : she doesn't do it with two hands, i.e. halfheartedly, but with dedication) - see also ngiâ, sára ngiâ

bé ... sí na ngiâ V : to be full of joy, to be overjoyed - the inverted expression is more common {lá só bé tî mbi asi na ngiâ : today I am full of joy} {lá só ngiâ asi bé tî mbi : today joy fills my heart} - this is a stronger expression than bé ... eke na ngiâ

bé ... so V : to be offended, to experience resentment, to hold a grudge - the expression can also be inverted {bé tî mbi aso na patron tî mbi míngi : I'm very much put out and offended at my boss} {mbéni yî aše so bé tî mbi : something is offending me} - when the feeling expressed by bé ... so becomes settled it is called vundû

bé ... vokô V : to be dishonest and deceitful - the result of a person's being and acting in this manner is a rupture of goodwill and fellowship with others {âmbéni só bé tî âla avokô aše da míngi : there are many who are dishonest} - syn. bé ... ôse - opp. bé ... ôko, bé ... vuru

bé ... vuru V : to be guileless, honest, open - the result of a person's being and acting in this manner is to create goodwill and fellowship with others {zo sô bé tî âla avuru na mbâge tî âzo vokô ... : people who are open and above-board towards black people ...} - syn. bé ... ôko - opp. bé ... ôse, bé ... vokô

bé ... wôko V : to be or become humble, amenable - this expression can be inverted {bé tî lo awôko : he is humble} {wôko bé tî mo : relent, humble yourself} - opp. bé kôtâ

bé ... yî V : to want, desire, like, love {zo só bé tî lo ayî lo gá : the person whom he wants comes} {peut-être bé tî lo ayî mo pepe laâ : perhaps it's because he doesn't love you} - a much weaker syn. is lé ... yî - opp. kg - see yi
bé ... yí da-bière

bé ... yí da V : see yí ... da

bí N : night, nighttime (tonga zo ake nzí na bí, mbi arrêter lo : when someone steals at night, I arrest him) - see hauro for the times of the day

bi V : to throw, to cast, to shove away (mo bi adorônu da ; throw in some rock salt) (bi ngô tì mô na lé tì ngû, sî î bi gbândå : shove out your boat on the surface of the water, so that we can cast the nets)

biá N : a song àla commencer tì hé biá, tì sâra ngiá ; they began to sing a song and to have fun) (mbi pîka na àla mbéné pendere biá : I'll play for you a beautiful song) - see hé biá, pîka biá

biakú Av : truly, in truth - can be reduplicated for emphasis (àla zía yí tì àla kôé biakú biakú : they left all their things in very truth) syn. bîánî

bîánî Av : truly, in truth, really, certainly - can be reduplicated for emphasis (fâdé lo kûí bîánî : he's really going to die) (na bîánî, mbi hîngã só, fadesô ake âmbunzû só agá na kusâra só na ìt and truly, I know that it is now white men who bring this work to us)(taâ téné tì mô bîánî? : is what you're saying really true?) - syn. biakú

bianga N : a frog - syn. kôngba

bi bé V : to set one's heart on (mamá abî bé tì lo na lége tì sâra kusâra tì yá da : mother set her heart on doing the housework) - this is largely used by Protestants, while the more usual expression is zíâ bé

bien** [byé] Au : good, well (Sango tì Bangui ake bien : the Sango in Bangui is good) (mbi ské travailler bien bien : I work very well, i.e. under excellent conditions) - this is much less common, more sophisticated than nzonî

bière** [byéér] N : European-type beer - for a list of alcoholic beverages see samba
bima-bíngo

bima V : to complain, lament, moan (mbi bima ngbangati yí tí vundú só ála sára na mbi : I'm complaining on account of the resentment-arousing things they are doing to me) - this is much more specific, and less loud a sound than that indicated by the more usual uses of toto and dé kângo, and less active and reasoned than dé kite - see also sára téné

bi mbo V : to send a dog after something, to incite a dog to the chase (lo bi mbo tí lo tí tomba yáma : he sent his dog to chase animals) - the expression used to address the dog for this purpose is ca?

bi ... na likongó V : to throw a spear at, to pierce with a spear {tongana zo ayí tí bi mo na likongó, mo mú válá só mo kânga na lé tí mo : when someone wants to pierce you with a spear, you take the shield and cover your face}

bi ... na ngonda V : to throw away, to abandon {i kângbi áyá ní kóé, i bi na ngonda : we cut out all the insides, i.e. intestines, and threw them away}

bi ... na sése V : to throw on the ground, to abandon {bâa kótá caisse só, mbi bi na sése : look, this big crate, I just abandoned it}

bingbá An : a color term covering primarily red, orange, reddish brown, and the more intense, deeper shades of yellow - reduplicated, it means very red, bright red {lo ke bingbá yáma : he's a reddish animal} {amú mbéni kótá bongó, bingbá bingbá, abí na sése, mbi tambéla na ndé ní : they took a great cloth, bright red, and put it on the ground, and I walked on it} - see couleur

bingbá kété An : lighter shades of yellow, orange, and pink - see couleur

bingbá mafuta N : palm oil - see mbúrú, mafuta

béngo N : nighttime, darkness {azía í na yá tí bíngo, só ake sioní míngi : they abandoned us in the darkness, this is very bad} - the darkness can be moral or otherwise, figurative as well as physical - see bi
blé N : a bone - as opposed to mi, the flesh

blói li N : a skull

bírí N : yesterday (bírí sí madame amú bongó na mbi : it was yesterday that Madam gave me the cloth) - see lá for the date system - see also mbéni bírí

bíribírí N : beer made from mil, soaked in water two days- the mash is drained and allowed to stand for a week, and then pounded, mixed with water and made into a drink - see samba for a list of alcoholic beverages

bi yângá V : to speak up, possibly out of turn, to put in one's oar, to express one's opinions freely (ála bi yângá ti ála na yá ti politique ti République Centrafricaine, ì hûnda na ála ti sârángò na ndó sí pepe : they interfered vocally in the politics of the Central African Republic, we ask them not to do it here)

bobo N : termite - these insects are very destructive, coming out of their underground nests and their hills to destroy wood, paper, cloth, etc. - but they are also a significant source of protein at certain times of the year - after the first rains of the rainy season, they erupt from the ground in vast swarms on their nuptial flight - they are caught as they emerge in cans, pots, or sieves, their wings are shaken off, and they are eaten raw, roasted, or boiled

boîte** [bwâte] N : 1. a tin can (nginza ti boîte ake ngangó mingi : the price of a can (of food) is very high.)
2. a small box or carton, as opposed to caisse or sandóku which are larger (mbi sâra bon ti trois boîte ti cartouche : I bought on credit three boxes of cartridges)

bólo V : to throw a stone with accuracy so as to hit something (abólo ndeke na témé : he hit a bird with a stone) - gana implies the throwing of several stones, as when someone is pelted with stones

bon** [bóô] N : a debt, especially one incurred by buying on credit (mbi vo na bon : I bought it on credit) (kóli ni aobliger ti sâra bon ;
the man is obliged to go into debt) { fadesô bon tî Trompette aše pêpê, âzo avô gi vôngô : now there is no more credit (for buying) the Trompette (a journal), people just buy it (for cash)} - various kinds of credit and debt are very common - kôdâ is a traditional term for various kinds of obligations, often arising out of social relationships

bon** [bɔ̃] I : 1. frequently an empty morpheme merely signalling the continuation of speech (bon, têné aše pêpê : there's no trouble) 2. well then, now then (mbi têné, bon, fadesô mbi ëkë na kôtôrô tî mbi : I said, Now then, I'm in my village) 3. good, fine, all right {bon, merci : good, thanks}

bôndô N : mil (*Sorghum guineense* Stapf.), specifically the edible dried grains of the plant {tongana heure tî burû awe, âbôndô asâra awe, alungûla lé nî azía na yá tî gogòrë : when the dry season is over, and the mil grains have formed, we remove the grains and put them into a granary} - mil is the staple of most of the inhabitants of the northern half of the Central African Republic - syn. zuru

bôngbi [bûngbi, bingbi, bumbi] V : to gather together, to assemble, to collect, to put together {mo mú kékë tî wâ mo bôngbi : you take firewood and gather it together} {i bôngbi, i na ála kôë, i sâra ngiâ : we gather together, we and they, and have fun} {âni bôngbi tî dô lengë : we assembled to dance the lengë} {âmërëngë mingi abôngbi na li tî fini mërëngë wâle só tî piâ lo : a lot of children ganged up on the new girl to beat her up} {mbi bôngbi âzo tî kôtôrô : I assembled the people of the village} - opp. kângbi 2 - see also tîngbi

bôngbi N : a gathering, a meeting {áinspecteur asâra só na lá tî kôtà bôngbi tî ála : the inspectors did this at the time of their great meeting}

bôngbi li tî V : to assemble for a meeting or other common undertaking, to get heads together {il faut ála bôngbi li tî ála, sí ála sâra koa na ngiâ : you must get together, so as to do the job with joy}
bôngbi téré V : to assemble for a common purpose (i bôngbi téré, i yô samba lége 豸o : we got together and drank beer together)

bozó N : a pouch-shaped bag of leather or woven grass, slung under the arm by a shoulder strap - used primarily by old men (lo pîka li ti susu ni, si lo zía na yá tí bozó : he hit the fish over the head and then put it into his bag)
2. there is sometimes a confusion of form, then of meaning, with French poche
3. by extension, any carrying bag or case, such as a brief case, especially of leather, cloth, or woven-work

bozó íaćo N : the bladder - íaćo is urine

bozó tí ngonzo N : the gall bladder - ngonzo ą is bile

bózo : see poche

bôi N : a personal or domestic servant, especially in a European context (préavis ti âbôi na âcuisinier asek làngó miombe : notice for house servants and cooks is eight days) - in a household of several servants, the cook, cuisinier, has the most prestige, the highest pay, and the most privileges, the bóî comes next, and the kété bóî or marmiton, is at the bottom of the scale - ngbáá means a slave

bôi coton N : a petty agricultural official who, in the days when the cultivation of cotton was compulsory, supervised the work and enforced the requirements - see coton

bongó N : 1. cloth, fabric (kôngbá só álâ ka ake ake ápiège tí bongó : the merchandise which they are selling is pieces of cloth)
2. any piece of clothing, the totality of one's clothing, clothing in general (tongana mo làndô na koa, mo sukúla ngú, mo yú bongó tí mo, mo pîka kate tí mo, atene, mbi eke kóli : when you've come from work, you wash up, put on your clothes, beat your chest and say, I'm a man!)
3. a cloth, a rag
bubâ An: 1. worthless (yáká só i sâra só, aências yáká tí búbá pepe: this field which we’re making is not a worthless field) {giriri mbi dutí na mawa, ála báá mbi tongana zo tí búbá: formerly I remained in a pitiable state, they considered me a worthless person} 2. foolish, senseless, crazy {álá gi lége ti sâra i na búbá zo tí ála pepe: they don’t try to make us into their fools} {ázo só aências sâra téné tí búbá: these people are talking nonsense} — see also sâra búbá, lí ... tourner

buba V: to ruin, to waste, to make or become worthless {kóli tí mo amú nginza aências buba séngé séngé: your husband takes the money and wastes it for no reason} {mbi báá yí só anzeré na mbi, sí mbi buba pëmbé tí mbi: I considered that this thing would please me, so I ruined my teeth} {mbi yí mo buba mbi pepe: I don’t want you to make a fool of me} {yí ní abuba awe: the thing became worthless} — see foutu

búburú N: dumbness {lo éké wa búburú, lo sâra téné gbá: he is a dumb person, he tries vainly to talk}

bulée N: sweet banana, widely used as a diet supplement, in contrast to fondo, which is used as a staple by some people

bureau** [birôo] N: 1. an office, especially an administrative office {álá éké na bureau na mbi: you are in the office with me} {álá éré kóli ní na bureau: they summoned the man to the (district) office} {lo sâra mariage tí bureau na tí mission ngâ: he had a civil marriage and a church wedding too} 2. a desk

burú N: dry season {na yá tí burú, álâ éré kôngó, sí álâ éké mú susu ní: in the dry season, they dam up the Kongo stream and catch the fish} — see vurú ndo

buruma N: leprosy — this disease is endemic in the Central African Republic, though a persistent effort of public health and other medical forces has greatly improved the situation — traditional mores did not prescribe any ostracism or banishment for the victim — syn. ngiba — see kobêla
b'anda V: to ponder, to meditate (lo b'anda téné na yá tí békó ló: he pondered the problem in his mind, lit. his liver) - syn. gi békó, hâ, penser

b'ongô N: a hyena - in fables, the hyena is a stupid, ridiculous, nasty-tempered character - see yama tí ngonda
café** [kafé] N : 1. coffee in a botanically generic sense (yáká tì café tì mbi akànga kóé : my coffee plantation is completely choked (with weeds)) - coffee is the second most important cash crop of the Central African Republic, and is grown especially in the southern half of the country
2. coffee plantation (mbi ëkë na yàngà tì café tì mbi : I'm at the edge of my coffee plantation)
3. coffee beans (mò ëkë pìka café : you pound the coffee beans)
4. coffee, a drink (âmbèni zo agá na galá, àla y¿ café : some people come to the market to drink coffee)

caisse** [kèse, kêes, kési] N : a wooden box or crate (caisse ní ané, mbi yó caisse ní gbá : the crate was very heavy, I tried in vain to carry it) (ì ëkë voter gi na kété kété mbètì só, amù, agoe zìa na caisse tì vote : you vote just with those little slips of paper, you take and go put them into the ballot box) - caisse is more specific and modern than sandûku, and larger than boîte

camarade** [kamarâd, kamarâde] N : a close friend, a buddy or pal, always of the same sex (tongàna mbènì camarade tì mò agá, mò° na lo ì dutì tì causer : when a friend of yours comes along, you and she sit and chat) - almost syn. ndeko, which can however be of either sex, and can refer to a person whose companionship is so intimate as to warrant a sort of honorary membership in the family - ndeko can also be a euphemism for mistress or lover - ìó refers specifically to a work companion, mbá to a compatriot, ìta to a relative, and ndóé to a person having the same name as oneself

camion** [kamy¿] N : a truck - any automotive vehicle larger than a passenger car and used primarily to transport merchandise - trucks are the only means of inland transportation of goods, and also carry many passengers, in spite of the growth of bus service - see also auto, autocar, kutukutu
canton** [käntɔŋ] N : 1. an administrative territorial unit of colonial
days, composed of a number of villages and, together with several
parallel units, constituting a district (canton tí Bessao : the
county of Bessao) - since independence, replaced by the collectivité -
see republique for the administrative organization of the country
2. the chief officer of the canton - an African selected by the
colonial government in part by traditional or pseudo-traditional
criteria of chieftainship, usually from a chiefly or pseudo-chiefly
clan - often despised by the younger generation for their usual lack
of education, their attachment to traditional customs and patterns of
authority, and especially their identification with the colonial
régime - this office has been superceded since independence by the
elective position of président tí collectivité - see also makunzi,
gbiá

capitaine** [kapitiɛn] N : the Nile perch - a large fish, caught in the
larger rivers, and considered a great delicacy - see susu, gí susu
carte** [kârte, kârate] N : a card, especially a membership or identifying
card {âzo ðkɛ a/y tí téñɛ ála mú carte tí lo? : how many people want
to take away his membership card?} - used especially in Protestant
churches - see also carte d'identité
carte d'identité** [dɔtitiɛ] N : an official identifying document intended
to be carried on the person at all times {ngû tí mbi, tongana mó
báa carte d'identité, ka mó hïnga : as for my age, if you saw my
identity card, then you would know}
catéchiste** [katɛsite] N : a catechist or subordinate lay leader in
a local congregation, as among Protestants - a person charged with
teaching the catechism, as among Catholics - ordained leaders are
called père among Catholics and pasteur among Protestants
causere** [kozée] V : to chat, to discuss, to talk cordially and informally
{mbi na wâle tí mbi ñ causer tí téñɛ í ðkɛ sâra mó téñé só mbîrîmbîrî : my
couple and I discussed this so we could tell you this matter rightly} -
see sâra téñé for a study of synonyms
ça va** [savāa] V : to recover from illness, to be in good health {fadesò mbi ça va awe : now I'm well} {î lingbi tî ça va na lége tî kobéla só : we can recover from this illness} - syn. gá nzoni 1, guérir, kobéla ... kâi

certificat** [sertifikāa] N : a certificate - especially, the certificate d'études primaires élémentaires, or elementary school certificate {alîngbi mō wara certificat tî mō sî, nγbangatî gângô moniteur só ake yi tî ngiâ pēpe : you must have your certificate, because becoming an instructor is not a joking matter} - the certificate is a prerequisite for many jobs, and hence is a very desirable attainment, though increasingly the better clerical jobs carry higher requirements

changer** [säzée, sanzé : 1. to change {fadé âla changer yângâ tî âla : they will change their mouth, i.e. not do what they said} {mbi changer bângô pēpe : I don't change clothes} {bē tî zo achanger : people's dispositions change} 2. to exchange, to change places {mô changer mbi : change places with me}

chapeau** [sapōo] N : a hat - syn. kpoto

chapelle** [sapēl] N : a chapel, a church building - also called da tî Nzapâ - église is sometimes used of a large, elaborate building, especially among Catholics - less acculturated individuals sometimes call a church edifice mission

charbon** [sarbû, sarvû] N : charcoal - made locally by stacking sticks of certain kinds of wood, covering them with mud or clay, and burning - at the proper time, the fire is extinguished and the charcoal recovered - in traditional technology, charcoal was made by smiths and used by them to smelt and forge iron

charpentier** [sarpątyēe, sarapandēe, sarapânde] N : a carpenter, a cabinet-maker - many men acquire some skill at this craft, and work either as small contractors or manufacturers, making doors, shutters, and door and window frames, or furniture and wooden carrying boxes - for many, this is an important source of income supplementary to that derived from agriculture
chauffer** [sofée] V : to heat, especially food or water {tongana mafuta achauffer awe, mo zía cignon da : when the fat has heated, you put in onions}

chauffeur** [sofêer] N : the professional driver of a truck, bus, or car - chauffeur, truck driver - this is a remunerative and prestigious occupation

chicotte** [sikôte] N : a whip, a scourge, often of leather - used formerly by slave drivers and other exploiters of the population - see also zaza

choisir** [swazii] V : to choose, to select {âla eke choisir gouvernement ti âla : they will choose their government} - syn. kamâta ... na pôpô, mú ... na pôpô

chrétien** [kretyë§] N : a Christian {chrétien alingbi kânga lége na zo pepe : a Christian cannot close the way, i.e. create an obstacle, for a person} - in Protestant circles, used in a more general sense than membre, which indicates formal membership in good standing in the church - syn. mërenge ti Nzapâ - Protestants sometimes use the artificial neologism wa má bé

civiliser** [sivilizée, sevilizê!] V : to be civilized, in European sense, to be acculturated {mbéni wâle aciviliser : a certain woman has become civilized}

civiliser** N : acculturation, civilization {zo tí civiliser : a civilized person} - syn. service, opp. basânze, sauvage

clé** [klée, kéréré] N : 1. a lock - also called mamâ tí clé
   2. a key - also called mërenge tí clé

cochon** [kosôo, koséo] N : 1. a domestic pig - pigs are not often raised, and when they are, they forage for themselves freely
   2. a wild pig, especially a wart hog - syn. cochon tí gigi, cochon tí ngonda - a dark grey animal, while mbengé is a bush pig, a reddish animal
cochon tél gigi, cochon tél ngonda - commander

cochon tél gigi, cochon tél ngonda N: a wart hog - syn. cochon 2 -
mbengé is a reddish bush pig

collectivité** [koléktivité] N: a township, an administrative unit
composed of a cluster of villages having common economic interests -
since independence, this unit has replaced the canton - its président
is elected, and persons exercising power are usually better educated
than the former chiefs (oui, collectivité na bâ acommencer tél gâ
nzoni : yes, the township by the ferry is beginning to prosper) -
see also district - see république for the administrative organization
of the country

collège** [koléz] N: a secondary school - there are two kinds, a
four-year school, and a six-year school leading to the baccalaureate -
selection of entering students and elimination of failures are quite
severe, so that few who begin school complete secondary school -
école is the more general term for school

coller** [kolée] V: to thicken, as a sauce or paste, to congeal, to
jell, to coagulate (kása nî acoller nzoni mingi : the sauce has
thickened beautifully) - syn. gbô'
coller** [kolée] N: a dance in the European style, with men and women
dancing together and holding each other - syn. malînga, nylon - see
also dôdô

commandant** [komadá] N: under colonial rule, a district or regional
administrative officer (ála gâ na lo na commandant, ála kânga lo :
they brought him to the administrator and jailed him) - this term,
whose use was popular rather than precise, was a carry-over from
earlier days of military occupation and rule - see république for the
administrative organization of the country

commander** [komandée, kumandé] V: to command, to order, to rule (lo
commander na kôtôrô : he rules in the village) (lo commander kôtôrô :
he rules the village) (lo commander li tî sârangô samba : he commands
the head of, i.e. directs, the making of beer) (lo commander mbi : he
commanded me)
commencer** [kómšée, kumáse] V : to begin, to start, to commence, to initiate {aské commencer ánde híó míngi : it will begin later on very soon} {kóbêla acommencer tí kái : the illness has begun to get well} {mafuta acommencer sí gígí : the fat has begun to render out}

concours** [kôkúur] N : a competitive examination, as for entering secondary or technical school or obtaining a civil service position {ála sâra concours, sí lo wara : they took an examination, and he succeeded} - a carry-over from French rule, competitive examinations are used extensively and loom large in the consciousness of the people, especially the younger generation

continuer** [kótínié] V : to continue, to persist {mo continuer tí sára kóa : continue to do your work} {allez, i ngbá tí continuer : well then, we persist in continuing} - since this refers to action begun in the past and continuing through the present, it is syn. ngbá, while dé refers to action not yet begun

coton** [kôtôô, kotôô] N : cotton {tongana avó coton, sí fadé i kóé i bôngbi nginza nî tí to na mó : when they buy cotton, we'll all get the money together and send it to you} - this is the principal cash crop of the Central African Republic, especially in the northern two-thirds of the country - the annual buying of cotton from individual planters is strictly supervised by the government, and for many people it represents the only time in the year when they are in possession of an appreciable amount of cash - hence, it is a time of paying debts and bills - syn. tende

couleur** [kuléer] N : color {couleur ní aské bingbá : its color is red} - the term is not very commonly used - the color system is as follows : bingbá includes red, orange, reddish brown, and the more intense, deeper shades of yellow - reduplicated, it means very red vokô means black, but also includes darker shades of blue, green, violet, and even brown as well as gray - reduplicated, it means pitch black vurú means white, as well as pale or pastel tints of almost any color - reduplicated, it means bright white
any of the three basic terms may be modified by placing kété after it, which attenuates the color: bingbá kété, a less intense red or yellow - yokó kété, gray or grayish shades of other colors - vurú kété, light gray or grayish tints of other colors among more acculturated speakers, French terms are in use, especially jaune, bleu, and vert

comparative expressions are often used to indicate color (aëke tongana kugbé : it's like a leaf, i.e. green)

coup-de-poing** [kutubôo] N 1 : a fist (apika kate ti lo na coup-de-poing : he hit his chest with his fist) - syn. ngobo 2. a blow with the fist (coup-de-poing ọko, lo ti na sêse : one punch, and he fell down)

coup-de-poing** [kutubôo] N 2 : a kind of manioc (coup-de-poing só mbi sára tîné ni aëke gozo tí ngú : the coup-de-poing of which I was speaking is the water manioc) - see gozo

coupe-coupe** [kupekûpe, kupkûup] N : a machete (lo mû coupe-coupe, lo commencer ti dé kêkê : he took his machete and began to chop down a tree) - this is an imported tool with a flat steel blade about fifteen to eighteen inches long and from two to four inches wide, the tip frequently curved back, and with a grip-shaped handle of wood - syn. kpangbara, nzenze - see also zembe

croisement** [kurazem^ç.] N : a cross-roads - syn. sangbijlége

cuisinier** [kwizinyêe] N : a cook, almost invariably a man employed by Europeans or acculturated Africans - the cook is at the top of the pay and prestige rating among domestic employees, followed by the bói, while the kété bói is lowest
- D -

da \(N\) : 1. any kind of building, often with its use specified by a complement as in da \(tî\) kânga, da \(tî\) kôli, da \(tî\) lengé, da \(tî\) magasin, da \(tî\) ngbangà, da \(tî\) Nzapâ - the parts of a house are \(gîrê\ tî\) da or \(koto\) the foundation, têrê tî da the walls, li tî da the roof, vângâ tî da the door
2. a house, a home {âgene ake gâ na da \(tî\) mô mingi : many guests come to your house} {mbi ake na mîrêngê âko na da \(tî\) mbi : I have one child at home} - this last example may illustrate an extension of meaning to the sense of household

da \(Av\) : 1. there, in that place, into that place, on that place, from that place {i sâra yâkâ, i lû yî da : we prepared a field, we planted things in it} {mo zia yîngâ da : put salt into it} {place só babâ asâra koa da, i sâra ngû mingi kâ : the place in which father worked, we spent many years there} {fadé i dé bâ da : we'll swear on it} {mbi sî gigi da : I've come out from it} - differs from \(kà\) and \(ge\) in expressing an element of anaphora, and in being broader in its locative reference
2. about it {têné só mî hûnda mbi da : the matter about which you asked me}

da \(bê\) \(V\) : 1. to remember {mbi da bê mbi, mbi da bê tî mbi : I remember} {mbi da bê tî mbi na têné nî : I remember the matter}
2. to remind {lo da bê âla, lo da bê tî âla : he reminded them} {lo da bê tî âla na têné nî : he reminded them of that matter}

da \(gbî\) \(N\) : a fireman

dambâ \(N\) : a tail, especially of an animal

dame-jeanne** [damzâan] \(N\) : a demi-john - a type of narrow-necked glass jug holding five to twenty quarts and covered with wicker-work - coming from Europe filled with wine, they are used extensively in the Central African Republic to carry and store oil, kerosene, and other liquids
dará V : to incite an animal, usually a dog, to pursuit - to sick on a dog {lo dará mbo tí lo, ateze, ça? : he sicked on his dog, saying, ça?} - see ça?
da ti kánga N : a prison - syn. kánga N
da ti kóli N : a man's house - used in speaking of a girl making a marriage final by going to her husband's home {mo goe na da ti kóli awe pépe? : haven't you gone to a man's house, i.e. haven't you already got married?} - see mariage, goe na da ti kóli
da ti lengé N : a building used for the lengé dance ceremonials
da ti magasin N : a store, a storehouse, a warehouse - syn. magasin
da ti ngbanga N : a court house, a building where judgments are rendered
da ti Nzapá N : a church building - see chapelle, église
davke N : syphilis - see kobéla
dé N : cold {dé asára mbi míngi : cold is bothering me greatly} {dé asára míngi : cold is doing, i.e. it's very cold} {só ngú tí dé : that's cold water} - opp. wá
dé V 1 : to be or become cold {fadesô acommencer tí dé : now it's beginning to get cold} {fades ngú adé : the water will be cold} {yí só adé míngi : this thing is very cold} - syn. gá dé, mú dé, wara dé - opp. mú wá - used in ndá adé
dé V 2 : to chop, to break or cut up with a chopping motion {lo dé kéké : he's chopping wood, or chopping down a tree} {mo dé yáká ngangó : break ground for a field with your strength} {mo dé tomate na ndó tí banc : chop the tomatoes on the chopping board} - see also fáa
dé V 3 : 1. to spit, to vomit {lo yuru na lo dé ngá na deux heures tí bí jusqu'a sept heures tí ndápéréré : he had dysentery and vomited from two o'clock at night until seven in the morning} - syn. dé na séé 2. to utter, esp. to utter a name, to name {adé ngá mo zo yɛ aso mbi yɛ : if they call you 'Who's that?' how can that bother me?} - syn. dé éré - see also sára téné - used in dé bá, dé éré, dé kité, dé kóngó
de V : to remain for the future, to remain to be done (yáká tí nzó ade : the corn field remains (to be planted)) (mbi de mérängé : I remained a child) (ade na ngangó tí lo : he remained with his strength, i.e. it had not yet left him) (ade na lége : he is still on the road, i.e. he has not arrived) (mbi de mbi mú kóli pẹpe : I still haven't taken a husband) (mbi de tí mú kóli pẹpe : I still haven't taken a husband) (ngú tí mbi ade tí téné mbi mú wále : my years remain for me to take a wife, i.e. I'm not old enough to marry) - syn. ngbá, but while the time reference of de is primarily future, that of ngbá is primarily past - the contrast is illustrated by the following examples (mbi de tí mú kóli pẹpe : I still haven't taken a husband) (mbi ngbá tí hú ponś : I'm still suffering) - the difference is not always clearly maintained, however

dé bá V : to swear, to utter an oath (í ìkẹ dé bá da : we'll swear on it) - this is more formal and solemnly binding than zé

dede N : horn of animal (ála mú dèdè tí yáma só ìkè na ngonda, aúlu : they took the horn of a wild animal and blew on it) - syn. ñá

dé éré V : to name, to utter a name (mbéni yáma ìkè só adé éré ní, atene woga : there is an animal who is called woga) (adé éré tí lo, lo yí da pẹpe : they said his name, but he didn't respond) - syn. dé V 3, éré V

dé kité V : to object, to demur, to express doubt, to expostulate (mbi dé kité na ála gbá : I expostulated with them in vain) (mais só Jésus atene téné awe, ála dé kité ní pẹpe : but since Jesus had said it, they didn't object to it) - see also kę, sóra téné, papa V

deko N : a rat or mouse - any animal of the genera Rattus and Mus (àngásà na àdeko na kóndo só ála téné àwále até fadesó pẹpe só, í te tí i fadesó kóé : goats and rats and chicken which they say women do not eat, we now eat them also)

dé kôngó V : to shout, to yell, to bark (as a dog) (mo ìkè dé kôngó na li tí lo ngangó míngi, mo téné lo fáa yáká pẹpe : you yell at him very loud, you tell him not to cut down the garden) - see also tóto, sóra téné, éré ndo
déma, déma téré-descendre

déma, déma téré V : to carry on, to act in an agitated manner, to lose self-control {zia toto, déma mingi tongasó pépé : stop crying, don't carry on so} {lo eké déma téré, lo eké toto : he was carrying on, he was crying}
démerder** [demerdée, demerdág] V : to manage, to make out, to get along, to overcome obstacles by a display of ingenuity {fadé mbi kôé mbi démerder na lége tî yî tongasó, mbi wara bongó mbi yû ma : I'll make out also in this matter, I'll find clothes to wear}
dé na sése V : to vomit - syn. dé V 3

dengbe N : a small antelope (Cephalophus maxwellii) - see yama tí ngonda
déngé V : to lean to one side {mo déngé na gô tî mô tongasó : you bend your neck to one side like that} - ba often suggests a more permanent and involuntary curvature, while kuku means to kneel
dépendre ** [depâg] V : to depend {tongana mô yî tî tê na gozo mô tê, tongana mô tî tî tê na fondo mô tê, só adépendre mô : if you want to eat it with manioc you do, if you want to eat it with plantains you do, that depends on you}
depuis** [depwii, depii, dipii] C : 1. since, ever since {mbi kpé ténê tî tiri pépé, depuis dûngó tî mbi : I haven't run away from a fight ever since I was born} - both this usage and 2. below reflect the grammatical influence of French, and so can be called Gallicisms 2. in the meantime {depuis sô, andâa, oignon abe awe : in the meantime, it turns out that the onions have browned}
depuis** Av· : for quite a while {mbi hingga lo depuis : I've known him for quite a while} - the orientation is perfective, in contrast to ngbii and jusqu'â Av, which are neutral or imperfective - that is, depuis relates a past event to the present
député** [depitée] N : a member of the assemblée législative, elected by universal adult suffrage from his constituency

descendre** [desâg] V : to go down, to descend {wê ni askê descendre na sése : the (molten) iron goes down to the ground (from inside the
descendre (cont.)- district

furnace)) (yama ti ndúzú adescendre ti yé ngú na sése : aerial animals come down to drink at ground level) - opp. monter
deuex heures** [dezéer] N : early afternoon, specifically the time to return to work after the noon break - see heure 5 for the divisions of the day
devant** [deváì, daváì] N : the front of something - used in the expression na devant tí, meaning in front of, ahead of (i goe fáa ngú na devant : we crossed the river out ahead) {tongana mbi goe na devant ... : if I go in front ...} {mbi zia na devant tí lo : I put if in front of him}
diki* V : to winnow grain, termites, etc. - syn. pè 2
diko V : to count, to enumerate, to reckon (mo diko na mbi, fadé mbi fúta na lo : tell me how much, I'll pay him) (mbi língbi tí diko ahúndzi pès : I could enumerate them but they wouldn't be exhausted)
2. to read (mbi yi mbéni mbéti so mo lèke tí diko : I want a certain paper which you prepared for reading) (mbi èkè diko éré tí ála : I'll read your names) - syn. diko mbéti
3. to pray to, to consult worshipfully (mbi diko Nzapá da : I prayed to God about it) - syn. sambéla
diko mbéti V : to read (mbi diko mbéti na Sango : I read in Sango) - syn. diko 2 - see sára mbéti means to write, pika mbéti means to type or print
dimanche** [dimáps, dimáse, dimási] N : 1. Sunday
2. a week (mo hú téré tí mo dimanche otá : rest for three weeks) - less frequently, semaine is used - see lâ for the dating system
diminuer** [diminée, dominée] V : to diminish, to decrease (yá tí mbi akiminuer awe : my stomach (swelling) has gone down) (yá tí hótóró tí i aske diminuer awe : the things of our village have diminished) {mo diminuer na mbi ngéré ní ma : why don't you decrease the price for me!}
district** [distríkte] N : before independence, an administrative unit intermediary between the canton and the région, and governed by an
administrator called chef de district or commandant - since independence, the district has been renamed sous-préfecture, and the administrative officers are African - see république for the administrative organization of the country

dole N: the African elephant (ábambinga akpé dole pepe, ála eke na yoró
tí dole: the Pygmies don't run away from elephants, they have charms for elephants) - see pémbé tí dole, yama tí ngonda

dondo N: the vagina

doucement** [dusumâg, dusumá] Av: 1. softly, gently (mo sára doucement: do it gently)
2. quietly (mo goe ká doucement doucement, mo wara lo na kéké: if you go over there very quietly, you'll find it in the tree)
3. slowly (fadé kobéla ní akái doucement: the sickness will get well slowly) - syn. veke veke

dó N: an ax, a hatchet - the indigenous tool has a triangular iron blade about six to eight inches long and one and a half inches wide across the cutting edge, set into a club-like handle about eighteen inches long - see zembe for a list of cutting tools

dó V: 1. to kick - used in dó géré
2. to dance - used with either dôdô or the name of a particular dance (ála eke dó ganzá: they're dancing the circumcision dance)
3. to shake, to tremble - especially in bé ... dó, téré ... dó
4. to tread, to mix with the feet, as the mud for making sun-dried brick (mo dó potopotó ní: tread, mix the mud) - see tourner

dôdô N: a dance (mará tí dôdô ndé ndé ake na kótóró tí mbi: there are various dances in my village) (ála dô dôdô ní: they danced the dance) - the names of specific dances include: malinga or coller N or nylón, a dance in the European style, with men and women holding each other,  
ganzá, the circumcision dance, lengé, an initiation dance, and sumári, a dance associated with a male secret society

dôdô* N: a partridge
dô géré V : 1. to stamp on someone's foot (lo gâ lo dô géré ti méréngé 
sô : he came and stamped on the child's foot)
2. to stub the toe, to stumble (lo dô géré ti lo : he stubbed his toe, 
he stumbled)
3. by extension, to err, to make a mistake

dôla N : any kind of moth
dôngô bé : see bé ... dô
dongô, dongô yöngoro N : 1. prob. a generic term for mucilaginous foods, 
e.g. the seed of an uncultivated tree (Beilschmidia ngriki A. Chev.) 
which is made into a mucilaginous condiment
2. by extension, slimy, viscous, mucilaginous (aâke dôngô yöngoro 
tongana téré ti susu : it's slimy like the body of a fish) (gûsà só 
aâke kugbé, âke dôngô dôngô : gûsà is a kind of leaf, (cooked) it's 
very mucilaginous)
doroko V : to butcher an animal, specifically to cut it into pieces (âla 
doroko yqma nî : they butchered the animal) - see fâa
dû V : to give birth - used equally of both parents (wâle tî mô adû : your 
wife has given birth) (mbi dû méréngé : I have born a child) (adû mbi 
na Carnot : (they) bore me in Carnot, i.e. I was born in Carnot) 
{depuis dôngô tî mbi ... : since my birth ...}
dû N : a hole, a gap (mbi zî dû nî : I dug the hole( - used in dû hô. dû 
ngû
du V 1 : to tie (adu kâmba na gô tî woga : he tied a cord around the neck 
of the antelope) - see kânga V, tîngbi
du V 2 : to be, to exist, to be present, to sit, to dwell (lukundû âke du 
tongana directeur tî mô : the witchcraft spirit exists as your master) 
{tongana mbi na babâ tî mbi û du na téré tî wâ, lo âke sâra téné : 
when my father and I were sitting by the fire, he used to talk} (fadesô, 
û du na li tî kôtôrô tî û : now, we are at the head of our country) - 
dû is not a simple copula like âke, but is much more static than âe 
and ngû, which are specifically time-oriented - see also dutî 2 and 3
du (cont.)-duti
- used in âdu ni - syn. lângé 3

dû h§ N : nostril

duma N : beer made from honey and water (mo hinga malin, si mo sâra
samba, tongana duma : you have the know-how to make beer, like duma).
see samba for a list of alcoholic beverages

dûngô N : birth - see dû V

dû ngu N : a well - wells are used only rarely in a land where most areas
are abundantly watered by streams and rivers that flow all year -
the Kâr§ of Bozourn are noted for their well-digging skills

dû sembé N : a deep dish - see sembë

duti V : 1. to sit, to sit up, to sit down (mo bâa lo duti na li ti kéké,
mo kpo lo : if you see it sitting in the top of a tree, you shoot it)
(mérengé eluti tongana sô kâ : the child sits up like that one there)
(lo duti na sése : he sat down) (mo duti, mo kâ lo : sit down and wait
for him)
2. to stay, to remain, to live, to dwell (kôli sô ayi ti duti, manière
acke pepe : this man wanted to stay, but there was no way) (mbi duti
na lo : I stayed with him) (aduti na térf ti mo : he stayed with you)
(tere aduti na pekô ti gângô tî lo lângô ñko : Tere stayed away after
he (left) only one day) (i duti na ndo sô : we stayed here) (téné ni
aduti na bê ti i : the matter remains in our livers, i.e. it has
not been cleared up) - see ngbâ, du 2, lângé 3
3. to be, to exist, in a stative rather than a copulative sense (mo
duti missionnaire na âla ? : are you their missionary?) - see du 2
4. to be idle (mbi duti, mbi sâra kusâra pepe : I'm idle, I don't
work) (mo duti sëngé tongasô, acke nzonî pepe : for you to remain
idle like this is not good) - in general, there is no particular
stigma attached to being out of work or idle
5. to co-exist harmoniously (fadé i duti kô lége ñko na yâ ti kôtôrô :
we'll all live together in the village) (âla duti tongana ñta : they
live together like brothers)
6. to experience (mamâ ti mbi aduti na vundû : my mother is experiencing
bitterness} - see bâa finôo

dutí ... kpó V : to be quiet, to be tranquil, to be at peace (ála dutí fadesó kpó, ála má téné : now all of you be quiet and listen to the matter)

du ti mé N : earhole - see mé N

dutí nzoní V : 1. to prosper, in a passive or negative sense, to be in a state of contentment, peace, and sufficiency (i dutí nzoní na lé ti ambá ti î : we are all right in the presence of our compatriots) 2. this phrase is used as a parting greeting by the person leaving to the person staying (dutí nzoní o : so long, good luck!) - the person staying behind says goe nzoní - see bara V, bara N
- E -

d'école** [ekɔl, lekɔl, lekɔʁ] N : a school, of whatever kind or level
(mbHi sàra école, mbi goe na école : I go to school) - most frequently
refers to elementary schools, which have a six-year curriculum in
French leading to the certificat d'études primaires élémentaires -
other schools include école tì catéchisme, or religious catechetical
schools conducted in vernacular languages by Christian missions, école
coranique or Muslim religious schools, and the collège, or secondary
school

d'église** [eglïiz] N : 1. the church, in the sense of an organization or
congregation of members (lo eke membre tì église : he is a member of
the church)
2. a church building (gá í goe na église : come on, let's go to church)
this usage is more prevalent among Catholics, and is used to refer
to a large, permanent structure - a more general term is de tì Nzapá,
while chapelle frequently refers to a small, subsidiary meeting place
or building - less acculturated individuals also refer to such a
building as mission

eh bien** [ebyf, âbe, âpe] C : well then, so then (eh bien akporo na ní
fadesò ngbii : so then you boil it now for a while) (tongana lo sí
ká awe, eh bien áwále só kóé agá asi : when he had arrived there, then
all those women arrived)

demmerder** [mɛrdée] V : to annoy greatly, to bother, to pester (kobéla
ti wàle sì aemmerder lo míngi : the illness of a woman bothers her
a lot) (mérengé aekè emmerder mo na lége tì sàra kusàra : the child
pesters you while you work) - be, mú vângé and nzé, imply an idea of
discouragement and defeat consequent on the annoyance which is absent
from emmerder

d'encore** [aŋkɔr, aŋkɔro, aŋgɔro] Av : 1. again (mbHi goe na ngonda encore
ti gí yi tì mbi : I went again to the bush to hunt for my things) -
syn. **mbéni**

2. still, yet *(angbá encore yí míngi : there remain still many things)*

3. next *(encore, íta tí mbi akúí : next, my brother died)* - syn. **pekó**

4. in correlation with **mbéni** : still more *(tongana má zíá mbéni vín da encore ... : if you put in still more wine ...)*

5. in negative sentences : any more *(mbí yí tí goe na place tí lo encore pèpe : I don't want to go to his place any more)* - syn. **mbéni**

**éré N** : a name *(ála kú tí má éré tí ála : wait to hear your names)* *(tongana zo só adé éré tí mbi, fadé mbi té kóbé tí lo : if someone can say my name, I'll eat her food)* *(éré ní lengé : its name is lengé)* - used in *dé éré*

**éré V** : 1. to call, to summon, to invite *(mbó éré ãzo kóé, títéne ála gá : call everyone, so that they'll come)* *(ála éré kóli ní na bureau : they summoned the man to the office)*

2. to name, to call *(a name)* *(ála éré lo gi Serekunga : they just called him Serekunga)* *(i éré tí i, i ténè, rongo : we call it, saying, rongo)* - syn. **dé éré**

3. demand, request, call for *(bábá tí mbi akúí awe, na lége yô sí lo éré kóbe na mbi : my father is dead, how can he demand food of me?)* - syn. **húnda**

**éré na mabóko V** : to beckon with the hand to summon someone - the gesture is usually made with the entire hand, palm down or out, in a quick grasping motion not involving the thumb - *pé 1* is a more general term for signalling with the hand or waving

**éré ndo V** : to call out *(tongasó kóli só aéré ndo na pèkó tí lo gbá : so the man called out after him in vain)* - *toto* and *dé kôngó* lack the specific element of summoning someone which is present in **éré ndo** - see also **sára ténè**

**éré ngú V** : to dam up a stream and bail out the enclosed area with gourds so as to catch fish - the name of a specific stream may be substituted for the word ngú *(mbó goe éré ngú sí mò fáa susu : you go and dam up*
ére nga (cont.)-éké nzoni

the stream so as to kill fish) {álá éké ére Kongo sí ála mú susu :
they dammed up the Kongo stream so as to catch fish} - see gí susu,
ngbingbi

ére téné nzoni na ndó V : to bless (aéré téné nzoni na ndó lo : he blessed
him)

et** [e] C : and - used most often in French numeral phrases, where it
is the only connective (see 5ko), and also in other borrowed phrases - syn.
na, et puis, mais

et puis** [epwi, epii] C : and then, next - a sequential connective used
to join two sentences - syn. na and mais are both more frequent, while
et in this usage is much less frequent

- é -

éké [éké, ke] V : 1. to be - the simple copula of equation or attribution
{lo éké zo : he is a person} {lo éké kótá mingi : he is very big} {àké
dé mingi : it's very cold} du implies the idea of existence or presence,
while éké approaches being a purely grammatical word
2. used with other verbs, usually to imply a sort of progressive action
{mbi éké te kôbe : I'm eating} {i éké kpé lôrô : we're running} - but
in this usage éké seems often to be completely empty
3. used in the greeting formula : mo éké - see bara N

éké nzoni V : to be good - used in an "impersonal" sense in making
suggestions, with a sentence following {àké nzoni mo sára sô : it
is good for you to do this}
fa V: to show, to demonstrate, to explain, to reveal, to teach {amû nginzâ, afa na lo: he took the money and showed it to him} {mo fa na mbi maniere tî koa: demonstrate to me the knack of this work} {mbi eke fa na mî nouvelle: I'm telling you the news} {mbi fa yângâ tî Sango na mî: I'm teaching you the Sango language} {mbi fa na lo tî goe da: I taught him how to go there} {fadé mbi fa na âla koa tî ndao: I'll explain to you the work of a smith} {lo fa na âla éré tî lo: he revealed to them his name} - where the idea of verbal communication is uppermost, tene is syn. - see also sâra téné - used in fa lége, fa mbètî, fa na gîgî, fa ndâ tî, fa téné

fâa [fâa, fâ] V: 1. to cut, to cut off, to cut down, to cut up {mo fâa ngunzâ na ngonda: you cut greens in the bush} {lo fâa kâmba na gô tî mbo: he cut the cord off the neck of the dog} {âla fâa péré: they cut the grass} {mo fâa yâ tî oignon: you cut up the onions} {lo fâa yâma nî: he cut up the meat} - fâa is opposed to kpo, which means to pierce, puncture, or stab - doroko means to butcher an animal - sîru means to split, to cut lengthwise, as along the grain, while fâa suggests cutting across the grain - dé V 2 means to chop, as a tree - three of the above terms are found in the example which follows {i commencer tî doroko yâma nî, tî fâa, tî sîru yâ tî lo: we began to butcher the animal, to cut it up, to split the abdomen} 2. to cross, as a river, a road, etc. {i fâa ngû encore: we crossed the river again} {âla fâa lége nî: they crossed the road} 3. to break, as a pot, a rope, etc. {gâré tî lo afâa: his leg is broken} {lo fâa kôngbâ tî yâ tî da kîrikiri: he broke up the furnishings of the house every which way} {ressort tî kutukutu só afâa: this car spring broke} - kôngbi means to break by bending, as a stick 4. to kill {kobéla só anînga tî fâa zo pêpe: this sickness does not delay in killing people} {i fâa dole nî: we killed the elephant} {âla
commencer t’irir, âla fàa téré : they began to fight, they killed each other - or, they cut their bodies, see sense 1} - syn. fàa méné
5. used in nzala ... fàa

fàa ganzá V : to circumcise, to excise (âla fàa ganzá ngú na ngú : they circumcise every year) - the physical operation is performed on both sexes at the time of the rites of passage, as an essential part of these rites - see also ganzá, dôdô

fàa méné V : to kill (tongana mo fàa méné ti zo mo wara ngbanga : if you shed human blood you will be judged) - see fàa

fàa ngbanga V : to judge, to adjudicate, to condemn, to sentence (âla fàa ngbanga na li ti lo awe : they have already judged him) (mbi fàa ngbanga ni na âla péspé : I will not adjudicate the matter for you) - see ngbanga

fâángó ngbanga N : judgment, act of judging - from fàa ngbanga

fâángó yáká N : act of making a garden - from fàa yáká

fàa yáká V : to make a garden or field, to be a farmer (giriri, kóli afâa yáká, mais wâle afâa yáká 5ko péspé, mais fadesô, wâle afâa yáká kôé : formerly, men made gardens, but women didn’t at all, but now women make gardens also) - see also dé V 2

fàa yá tí V : to cut up into parts or portions - kângbi yá tí means to divide into parts without specifying the manner

fa baba V : to show off - syn. fa téré - see baba, fandara

fadé Av : 1. after the verb : soon, quickly, fast {mo sâra réponge na mbi fadé péspé : you didn’t send me an answer soon} {ahô fadé na pekô tî midi : he left quickly right after noon} - distinguished from ânde by expressing the idea of speed, and from hio by expressing the idea of a time lapse
2. before the verb : future time marker {fadé mbi gbô mabôko tî lo : I’ll take his hand} {fadé mbi kirí ânde : I’ll come soon}
3. partially reduplicated : immediately, right away {fafadé awe : it’ll be done right away} - see fadesô 2
fadesô [fadisô, faesô, faasô, fasô] Av : 1. now, just now, right now - used either pre-clausally or post-verbally (i má húngô ní fadesô mingi pêpê : we don't hear of the fame of it now very much) (fadesô, mbi ekê mú na lo ânde congé : I'll give him a vacation soon)
2. partially reduplicated [fafadesô, fafaesô, fafasô] : right away, right now, immediately (mbi ekê diko éré ti ála fafadesô : I'll read your names immediately) (mo éré mbi, fafadesô mbi ekê sí na mo : call me, immediately I'll come to you) - this expression relates rather to the present than to the immediate future, as does fadé 3
fa ... lége V : to explain, demonstrate how to do something (lo fa na mo lége ti fáa yááká : he demonstrated to you how to make a garden) (akê ti fa lége na mbi : he refused to show me how) - syn. fa 1, though this is more specific
fa mbéti V : to teach reading and writing
famille** [famii] N : 1. a family, either in the nuclear or extended sense
2. a member of one's family - can be used in the plural (mo hünda áfamille ti mɔ, mɔ yí ti mú wále : you ask the members of your family (saying), you want to get married) (mbéni famille ade, aider mbi pêpê : no member of my family has yet helped me) - this usage is much more common in Sango than 1 - the kinship system is as follows : among the members of one's generation, ñtà refers to one's siblings or to the children of parents' siblings - if it is necessary to distinguish between siblings and cousins, one specifies full siblings by the phrases babá ɔko, mamá ɔko, and half-siblings by the phrases babá ɔko, mamá aekte ndé - if sex must be distinguished, ñtà ti kóli is brother, ñtà ti wále is sister - kótá ñtà is an older sibling, kótá zo 2 means one's older brother, while ngambe is one's younger sibling - in the preceding generation, babá is one's biological father, as well as his brothers - kótá babá is father's older brother, kété babá is his younger brother - the plural ábabá designates collectively the paternal clan - mamá is one's biological mother, as well as her sisters - kótá mamá is mother's older sister, kété mamá is her younger sister - the plural ámamá designates collectively the maternal clan - aũ and kóya are syn. terms
for mother's brothers, but can also be applied as terms of respect to mature men - ômba is father's sister - in the next ascending generation, kakâ refers to the grandfather on either side - tarâ and áta are syn. terms for the grandmother on either side, but áta is also used by the grandmother in speaking or referring to grandchildren - both terms are used to show respect to an older woman - kótárâ is an ancestor, and the plural is usually used in a collective sense - four affinal relationships are designated by special terms : wále is wife, kóli is husband - kógarâ is one's father-in-law or other male in-law, especially one's wife's brother - kógarâ can also refer to the reciprocal relationship, i.e. to one's son-in-law - wôgara is used by a man in speaking or referring to his daughter-in-law - mérgélé is used in speaking or referring to one's children and grandchildren, whose sex can be specified by tí kóli, tí wále

fa na gégi V : to publish, to reveal publicly - used of making public the news of a betrothal

fa ndá V : to explain thoroughly, to make clear the meaning (mó fa ndá tí téné ní na mbi : explain the point of the matter to me) - this is more specific than fa 1

fandara N : pride, vanity conceit - syn. baba
fângó baba N : showing off - from fe baba
fa téné V : to proclaim, to preach (lo fa téné tí Nzapâ : he preached the word of God) - this is more specific than fa 1
fa téré V : to show off - syn. fa baba - see téré 3
fatiguer** [fatigée] V : to tire, to weary (mbi fatiguer, gbikí así gégi na téré tí mbi : I'm weary, sweat has come out on my body)
(lo sê fatiguer na pekó tí mo : he is wearing you out (following) after you) - syn. wôko, nzé, though fatiguer suggests a physical weariness more than nzé
fête** [féét] N : a holiday, especially a legal or religious celebration (fête tí indépendance : independence day) - matânga is a more general
fête (cont.)-foutu

term for any celebration

\[\text{fê} \quad [\text{fē}, \text{fēz}] \ N : \text{an odor, good or bad } \{\text{fê ti kôbe só anzɛɛɛ : the odor of this food is pleasing}\}

\text{fini} \ N : \text{life } \{\text{lo mú yàma nî na fini nî : he caught the animal alive}\}

\text{fini} \text{An} : \text{new, fresh } \{\text{âɛkɛ tongana mbénî fini yi : it is like a new thing}\}
\{\text{ândâa mbénî da aqî na fini kôtôrô : it turned out that some houses burned in the new village}\} \{\text{Nzapâ amú mbénî fini mérêngɛ na mbi : God gave me a new child}\} \{\text{fini bongô : new clothes}\} \{\text{fini susu : fresh fish}\} - \text{opp. ngbêrê, in speaking of things only - kûrû in speaking of dried fish}\}

\text{finôo} \ N : \text{pain, suffering, especially of a physical nature - used in bâa}
\text{finôo - nêisi can also refer to the same thing, though the emphasis is on the suffering of burdensome toil - mawa suggests pitiable misery or wretchedness - nonî can suggest an element of persecution, as can sánâ - vundû refers primarily to the bitter and resentful reaction to suffering of any sort, as presumed to proceed from some malevolent personal source - ngangô can mean violence, or the suffering occasioned by violence}\}

\text{fô} \ N : \text{a co-worker, a work companion - hence, a friend } \{\text{fono na yàngâ da tî afô mo mingi sê pêpe : don't gad about to the houses of your friends too much}\} - \text{see camarade for syn.}\}

\text{forcer** \[\text{forsée}\] V} : 1. \text{to compel, to oblige, to force}
\text{2. with attenuated meaning : to exert great moral pressure or persuasion, so as to make it difficult to refuse } \{\text{zo aforcer mbi, sî mbi kɛ : a man exerted great pressure, but I refused}\} - \text{see also pousser}\}

\text{foutu** \[\text{fûti}\] V} : \text{to ruin, to spoil, to destroy, to lay waste, to waste, to render useless, even momentarily, to be ruined } \{\text{sêse âɛkɛ na mabôko ti mérêngɛ, afoutu bongô ti zo sô : there was dirt on the child's hands, he ruined this man's clothes}\} \{\text{âbákɔyà afoutu kôbe nî : the baboons ruined the crop}\} \{\text{zo ahânda mɔ ti foutu nginza ti mɔ : people entice you to waste your money}\} \{\text{yî sô afoutu mɛ ti mbi, âɛkɛ camion :}\}
foutu (cont.)-fû

the thing that made my ears useless, i.e. that obstructed my hearing, was a truck) {lé ti mbi agâ ti foutu : my eyes are beginning to give out} {ápont afoutu na sése tì Bangui ndé ndé : various bridges have been ruined in the area of Bangui} - syn. buba - fû suggests spoilage by decomposition resulting in a bad odor

fondo N : a plantain - a large, starchy, non-sweet banana used as a staple by many of the inhabitants of the forest zone of the Central African Republic (Musa paradisiaca sapientum) - the fruit is dried and pounded into a meal which is boiled, fried, or steamed - the sweet banana is buléé

fono V : to walk about, to stroll, to wander, to travel, to gad about
(lége tì fono na camion aské ngangó : it's hard to travel by truck)
(i fono encore, tì gi dole : we walked about again to hunt for elephants)
(kobéla tì lo awe, lo fono nzonï : his illness is over, he gets around all right) (wâle ayi kóli tì lo afono pepe : a woman doesn't want her husband to gad about) (Ála kpo ñambéni kéké na li tì haricot tì mú kéké nì na ndûzû, si afono na sése pepe : they plant sticks above the bean plants to keep the stems up so they don't wander or drag over the ground) - tambéla is a more general synonym

franc** [frâ, frâŋka, farânga] N : a franc, the basic unit of money in the Central African Republic (lo vò tì vingt francs : she bought twenty francs' worth) - in counting francs, French numerals are usually used - in counting the pâta, or unit of five francs, the Sango numerals are usually used - most prices in retail commerce are multiples of five francs, and the one- and two-franc pieces are rarely used - as a result, money is frequently counted in pâta units - vingt francs is the same as pâta osiô, i.e. twenty francs is the same as four pâta's - see nginza, bon N, payer, fâta, mosaó, ngéré, all expressing financial concepts

fû V : to sew (mo vo vurú bongó, mo fû, lá ni só mo kûi álâ mú álû na mo : buy some white cloth and sew it, the day you die they will take and bury you in it)
fû V: 1. to smell - used of both good and bad odors, though unmodified it usually refers to a bad odor {lé ni afû fungô : the seeds have a strong odor} {yambo afû nzoni : perfume smells good}
2. by extension, to rot so as to smell bad, to decompose {kôa ni afû : the corpse was decomposed} {atûkû makongô da ayôro nzoni, ngbangatî âla fû : you dump in the caterpillars and fry them well, so as to prevent their rotting} - syn. foutu 4

fûfû N: lung, lungs

fû kôbe : to break off a piece of food, specifically the staple mush or dough, and give it to someone {asâra kôbe, afû ti i âmérângê : they made food, and broke off and gave us children ours}

fûku N: flour, meal, fine powder {fûku ti gozo : manioc flour} {mo pika fûku ti sindi nî : you pound the sesame meal} {mo pika kakô nî, mo sâra fûku nî : you pound the pods, you make the meal} - the term applies to European wheat flour, corn meal, etc., as well as to granulated sugar, face powder, etc. - mbiô refers to a special red cosmetic powder made from the bark of a certain tree and used to adorn the body in connection with certain dances - mbûlu is used to refer to gunpowder, and also to powdered ash used for medicinal purposes - mbutu is sand - pupu sése is dust

fûlu N: froth, foam, especially that coming from the mouth {mbi bâa fûlu asi gigi na yângâ tí lo : I saw froth coming out of his mouth}

fungô N: smell, odor, process of producing an odor - from fû

fûru V: to mix or work in water with the hands so as to produce a homogeneous mass or liquid - for syn. see tourner - mû kôbe means to mix ingredients with an implement

fûta V: to pay, as wages, price, pay for {lo fûta mbi ñko pêpê : he didn't pay me at all} {fadê mbi fûta na lo : I'll pay him} {akê kusâra tí fûtângô na nze : it's work to be paid by the month} {i mú kôngbâ na France, France afûta nî : we give goods to France, France pays for them} - syn. payer - see also vu, ká, nginza, ngéré
fûta-fûti

fûta N : 1. wages, salary, pay - ngéré means price or value
   2. by extension : recompense, retribution, consequences, results
      affecting the doer of something {tanstî sionî tî mo laâ, si fûta
      nî agâ na mo : it's because of your wickedness that the retribution
      is coming to you)

fûta kulâ V : to avenge, to retaliate - see kulâ

fûti V : see foutu
- G -

gâ V: 1. to come {álá gâ na târê tî mbi : come alongside me, on my side} {gâ na ndo só : come here} {álá gâ tî lâkâ kôtrô tî i : they have come to improve our country} - opp. goe 1 - used in gâ na, gâ na pekô

2. to arrive - often with awe following {tongâna mî gâ awe, mî sukúla ngû : when you have arrived, you wash up} - syn. si V - opp. goe 3, lôndô

3. to be about to do something {tongâna mî gâ tî tôngô nî ... : when you are about to cook it ...} {lé tî mbi agâ tî foutu : my eyes are about to go bad} {mâmâ tî mbi agâ tî goe : my mother was about to go} - syn. gâ nduru

4. to begin to do something {yâ tî mbi agâ, adîmînuer : my abdomen began to go down, i.e. after being swollen} - opp. zia tî

5. followed by a noun adjunctive or a noun designating a kind of person : to become {gâ ngangô : become strong} {gâ sînî : become bad} {gâ kôtâ : become big, grow up} {gâ kôli : become a man} {gâ tongâna kôli : become as a man} - cf. gâ nzonî, gâ ngû

6. with certain nouns denoting qualities or states, either gâ, wara, or mú can be used {agâ dé, awara dé, amû dé : it became cold} {agâ wâ, awara wâ, amû wâ : it became hot} - see gâ dé, gâ wâ, mú dé, mú wá, wara dé, wara wá

7. there are three structural degrees of closeness in the relationship of gâ to a following verb having the same subject: (a) the subject is repeated with each verb - (b) only the subject marker a- appears with the second verb - (c) the two verbs are immediately joined - these grammatical degrees, strongly modified by the semantic relationship of gâ and the other verb, determine whether the two verbs denote distinct actions, closely-related actions, a single complex action, or even a single simple action {lo gâ, lo bâa mbi : he came and saw me} {mbî gâ mbi tîngbi na lo : I came and joined him} {î gâ
gâ (cont.)-gâ na pêkô

1. pîka lo : we up and hit him) (mamâ agâ amû mbi : mother came and took me) (âwâle só kôé agâ asi : those women came—arrived) (lo na zo vokô agâ bongbi òko : he and the black man joined together) — see also goe 5

gâ dé V : to become cold — syn. mú dé, wara dé, dé V 1

gagner** [ganyée, gâyée] V : to win, to conquer, to vanquish, to beat, to defeat (lo gagner, lo òko, lo wara réponse ni : he won, he alone, he found the answer) (âla kpé lôrô, sí lo gagner : they ran, and he won) (lo eke gagner âita ti lo : he defeated his brothers) — syn. hê V 2

galâ N : 1. a market, a market-place (mbi goe tí gi kôbe na galâ : I'm going to look for food at the market) — syn. marché
2. a market town, a commercial center (lo goe na galâ na Bangui : he went to the commercial center in Bangui, i.e. downtown) (Bossangoa ake kôtâ galâ : Bossangoa is a big commercial town) (Sango tí galâ : urban standard Sango)

gâ na V : 1. with nouns denoting objects and sometimes persons : to bring (gâ na kôngbâ ni : bring the merchandise) (lo gâ na mbi na docteur : he brought me to the doctor) — opp. goe na 1 — see also kirî na
2. with nouns denoting persons : to accompany (agâ na mbënî camarade ti lo : he accompanied one of his friends) — it is not always easy to distinguish these two senses — the nature of the noun and the rest of the context will distinguish this verb from gâ 1 followed by a locative complement introduced by na — see also goe na 2 — see also kirî na

gana V : to stone someone or something, to pelt with stones (agana zo na témé : they pelted a man with stones) — bôlo implies the throwing of a single accurately-aimed stone

gâ na pêkô V : to follow (mbi eke gâ na pêkô tí mî : I'm following you) — gâ na pêkô emphasized the one being followed as the goal, while goe na pêkô emphasizes the point of departure — mú pêkô suggests a close
relationship between leader and follower - tomba suggests the pursuit of someone or something that is fleeing, or something that has no knowledge of being followed, so as to catch up.

gândá N : a wasp

gâ ndurû V : 1. to approach, to come near (mo gâ ndurû na ndo ti pont : you approach the place of the bridge)
2. to be about to do something (lo gâ ndurû ti kúi : he was about to die) - syn. gâ 3

Gângârâ [gângârâ, kângâlâ] N : the framework of a thatched roof, or the various components of it (mbi fâa gângârâ, mbi kânga na ndô ti kéké tì da : I cut (the parts of the roof) and tied them on top of the house poles) (âla kânga sosongo na da, si âla zia péré na ndô ni, âla dé éré nî gângârâ : they fasten a kind of reed on the house, before they put on the grass, and they call (the structure) gângârâ) - see li tì da

Gângô N : 1. arrival, coming of, act of coming - from gâ
2. used to reinforce gâ (mbi gâ gângô : I really came)

ganzâ N : circumcision, excision - also, the entire set of customs surrounding the rites of passage for both sexes, including special camps, a special dance, the physical operation, instruction in adult roles, and many other practices - this complex of ceremonies constitutes one of the most durable and functional current survivals of traditional ways (âla skê dô gânzâ : they dance the circumcision dance) - see also fâa gânzâ, gôdô

Gâ nzonî V : 1. to recover from illness (docteur azîa yorô na tère tì lo, sî agâ nzonî : the doctor put medicine on his body, so that he recovered) - syn. çà va, guérir, kobéla ... kâi
2. of a community or institution : to prosper, in a dynamic sense (kôtôrô ti i agâ nzonî awe : our village is prospering now) - dutî nzonî 1 is more passive
3. see bé ... gâ nzonî
gara-gbâgbâ

GARA V : to flow - said of blood flowing in the veins (mamá ti mérangé ni ayê tongasô, si mìnè agara lo míngi, têré tî lo awara ngangô, si ngû tî mb agá míngi : the infant's mother drinks this, so that much blood flows in her (veins), her body becomes strong, and much milk comes) - GÀ means to pour, Soa to flow as a river, and Yuru to leak or seep.

garde** [gárde] N : 1. the militia
2. a militiaman

Gà sóngó V : to make peace, to reconcile, to harmonize (ála gà sóngó : they made peace) (tênè tî ála agá sóngó : their speech was harmonized) - see Siriri, Sôngó, Sára Sôngó

Gati* N : the left hand - the left hand must not be used in giving or receiving gifts or in eating, but left-handed people manipulate tools in a left-handed manner without stigma - syn. Mabôko tî Wâle - see also Mabôko, Koti

Gà wé V : to become hot - see Mù Wà, Wara Wà

Gbá N : a bunch, a bundle (Gbá tî kokora : a bundle of arrows) (Gbá tî pèrè : a bundle of grass (for roofing)) (Gbá tî yorô tî dimanche ùko : a week's supply of medicine)

Gbá Av : in vain, futilely, without result (I bi gbànda gbá : we cast the nets in vain) (Mbi gi koa gbá : I've looked for work to no avail) (Mbi penser ténè ní gbá : I've thought over the matter without result)

Gbà V : to copulate, to have sexual relations - used only of humans, while for animals Uru 3 or Monter is used (Kôli agba wâle : the man had intercourse with the woman) (Wâle agba kôli : the woman had intercourse with the man) - more often, the euphemism Lângô na is used

Gbâgbá N : a hedge, a fence or other protective enclosure - hedges are often of sisal or other close-set or dense shrubbery - a common type of fence is made of coarse grass mats tied to upright poles (Ála kânga têré tî kéké sô na Gbâgbá : they enclosed this tree with a fence) - see Bâla
gbakó N: a gallery forest along a stream {dole ali na yá tí gbakó: the elephant entered into the gallery forest} {mbi gge na gbakó tí sûru kéké tí da: I'm going into the gallery forest to cut lumber for a house} - these forests are the only places, in the savanna country, where trees are to be found large enough for use as lumber - opp. péré - see also landó, ngonda

gbândá Av: easily, naturally, without difficulty or inconvenience - used pre-clausally {gbândá fadé mbi wara m: I'll find you easily} {tongasó gbândá France alîngbi titene, amú na î nginza mbéni pèpe: so France can quite naturally no longer give us money} - this is much more specific than séngé, which can refer to lack or absence of almost anything

gbánda N: any large net {âla gbóto gbánda: they drew in the nets} {gbánda asûru: the net split} {akânga gbánda tí fâa yçma: they fasten up nets to kill animals} - the peoples along the few large rivers use nets to fish, while in most of the country, which is savanna, nets are used for hunting - they are set up across an opening, and game is driven into them with fire or by beaters, and there killed with arrows or spears - see gi susu, gi yçma

gba ngu V: to play a game consisting of standing hip or waist deep in water and rhythmically beating or drumming on the surface of the water with the open palm of the hands

gbânza [gbânza, gbanza] N: corn, maize - corn is an important auxiliary crop throughout the Central African Republic, but nowhere does it assume the importance as a staple of mi or bándó - syn. nzá - see also láso

gbánzí V: to prevent, to hinder, to withhold {kobéla agbánzí mbi, sí mbi gá pèpe: sickness prevented me, so that I did not come} {mbi tara tí gá, mais lo gbánzí mbi: I tried to come, but he hindered me} {yí tí lo, alîngbi tí gbánzí na lo 5ko pèpe: his things cannot be withheld from him at all} - syn. to prevent, kânga lége

gbara, gbara bûba N: a frying pan - specifically, one made of the metal
from a gasoline drum, beaten into shape (gbara aṣẹ mbéni mará tí kọpo lâ àlækè nzônì na mabôko : the gbara is a kind of container made well with a handle) (gbara aṣẹ yí só ála yóro na kárákó só : the gbara is that thing in which they roast peanuts)

gbè N : the underpart of anything, the lower part (mbéni da na mbâge tí gbè ní ká ... : a certain house over on the lower side there ...)
(mérengè aṣẹ na gbè tí bàbá : a child is under its father) (mbi dutí na gbè tí kéké : I sat under a tree) (ngú aole na gbè tí susu : water dried up from under the fish) na gbè tí means under, underneath, below

gbè dé N : shade (lo dutí na gbè dé tí kéké : he sat in the shade of a tree)

gbè lè N : the presence of someone, especially someone important (mbi gá na gbè lè mo : I come into your presence) (lo sâra na gbè álà kóé : he did it in the presence of you all) - syn. devant can be used of inanimate objects also - see also lè N 1. 3

gbè ngú N : used with introductory na : in the rainy season - see ngú 5

gbè tí mabôko N : armpit - see mabôko

gbí V : to ignite, to catch fire, to burn (da agbi da ukú : five houses burned there) (kóá tí álà kóé kóé agbi : all their fuzz burns off) - zó adds an element of purpose of volition which is absent from gbí (wá agbí yí, zo azó yí : fire burns things, people burn things)

gbiá N : a king, an important ruler - specifically applied in former times to the ruler of the Zande, who were the only people in the area with a strongly centralized indigenous government - makunzi is the general term for chiefs of lesser rank, and kapita is a village headman

gbikí N : sweat, perspiration (gbikí asi gigí na téré tí mbi : sweat appeared on my body)

gbíma ndoko N : a foot race, a competition - see kpé lôrô

gbó V : 1. to take hold of, to grip, to grasp, to grab, to seize, to catch
(lo goe gbó kpóka tí yáká : she went and seized the garden hoe)
(sentinelle agbó mbi da lá kóé : the watchman caught me there all the
time) (ála gbó susu míngi : they caught many fish) (kíi ni agbó gó
tí mo : the prickers catch in your throat) - tomba means to pursue
so as to catch, kamáta and mú in similar contexts mean simply to
take
2. to be caught by a snare (yọma tí sése agbó kámbara na ndúzú pẹpẹ : 
a terrestrial animal does not get caught in a snare in the air)
3. to carry in the hand (lo sọ gbó kómbará na ázo : he carries loads
for people) - yá suggests carrying something on the shoulder or head
4. in figurative usage : to seize (mbito agbó lo : fear seized him)
(finóo agbó lo : suffering seized him) (kóatomba zo, sí agbó :
death pursues people, and seizes them) (mawa agbó mérangé só : pity
seized this youth) (Sango agbó yángá tí mbi mbírímírí pẹpẹ : Sango
has not seized my mouth properly, i.e. I don't speak it well)
5. to thicken, to set, to harden, to jell, to coagulate - syn. coller V
gbogbo N : 1. a mat, especially a sleeping mat about 30 x 60 inches made
of a soft split reed (ála zía yọrọ na ndúzú na li tí gbogbo tí ála :
they put charms above the head of their sleeping mat)
2. by extension, a bed - syn. tangé - see bambou 2
gbó kéké V : said of a bird : to alight on a branch
gbó ... na ndúzú V : to raise up, to hold up - syn. mú ... na ndúzú
gbó ndá V : to imitate, to follow - see mú pekó
gbó téré V : 1. to exercise self-control (mérangé tí mbi, mọ gbó téré
tí mo ngangó : my child, control yourself strongly)
2. to stick together, to cleave together (ála gbó téré : they cleaved
together)
gbọtọ V : to pull up, to pull out, to pull along, to drag (mọ gbọtọ téré
tí coton ní : you pull beside the cotton, i.e. you thin out the
sprouts) (ála gbọtọ gbánda ní : they dragged in the net) (lo gbọtọ
mérangé tí lo na yá tí géré tí lo : he dragged the child between his
legs) - kọso means only to drag along
gbo° gbo° gbo°-gengi* mé

\[ \text{gbo° gbo° gbo° Av : an ideophone indicative of the sound of boiling mush} \]
\[ \text{(gōzo sō akporo gbo° gbo° gbo° : the manioc (mush) was boiling gbo° gbo° gbo°)} \]

gbugburu V : 1. to shake up \{tongana mo pīka gōzo awe, mo eke gbugburu yēngere ti gōzo na lo : when you have finished pounding the manioc, you and she shake the manioc sieve\} - \text{yēngere V is the specific verb to sift}
2. to stir about so as to create disorder \{mo gbugburu yā ní : you stir it up into a mess\}

gbutu N : an edible wild leaf (Amarantus caudatus L.) - for a list of edible leaves, see kugbé

ge Av : here, in or to this place \{mbi sāra ngū òse ge : I've spent two years here\} \{mbi gá ge : I came here\} \{āla zía lo ge na hôpital : they put her here in the hospital\} - syn. na ndo só - opp. ká

gendarme** \[\text{[ządárm, zādráam]}\] N : a military policeman, a member of the national security police \{gendarme agá na lége ti wa nzi : the policeman comes on account of thieves\}

gêner** \[\text{[zenée]}\] V : to bother \{école agêner zo ngbangatì yângá ti Gbaya : school bothers people because it is in the Gbaya language (which has low prestige)\} - see also be V 1, mú yângá

genou** \[\text{[azenûu]}\] N : knee of a person - syn. kuní is much less common

gérant** \[\text{[zerâa, zerââ]}\] N : a person employed as the manager of a business owned by someone else - especially the manager of a small local branch of a chain of stores

gen N : a visitor, especially one from a distant or foreign place, a stranger or foreigner visiting or living temporarily away from home \{tongana ágene aekē gá na da tí mo, alîngbi mo bata amârêngé tí mo : when visitors come to your house, you must watch your children\} - see goe genè

ɡêngi* mé V : to pay attention, to listen, to give heed \{ɡêngi mé tí mo tí má : pay attention to hear\} - see mā 2
géré N: 1. a leg, a foot, a paw (afâa géré ti lo : he broke his leg) (âla yû pórô ti âla na géré ti âla : you should wear your shoes on your feet) (âla ti na géré ti lo : they fell at his feet) - kétâ géré is a toe, kôtâ géré a thigh
2. the leg of a piece of furniture
3. by extension: a wheel or a tire (géré ti vélo : the wheel of the bicycle)
4. by extension: a shoot for planting (goe lû géré ti café : go plant the coffee shoot) - this may be a result of the influence of French un pied de café
5. by extension: a wheel or a tire (géré ti da N : the foundation of a house - see koto N

gí Au: only, just, merely (ayi gí ngû : it wants just water) (lo ñka gí sëngé zo : he is just an ordinary person) (mû pîkâ gí na yâ ti kpu : you pound it just in the mortar) (mû dûtî gí tongasó : you sit there just like that) (babâ afâa gí yákâ : father just makes gardens) - (Grammar p. 62-63)
gí V: to hunt for, to look for, to search, to seek (mbi gá ti gí place ti lângó : I've come to look for a place to sleep) (mbi gî kôbe na galâ : I'm looking for food in the market) (mbi gî gbâ : I hunted in vain) - tomba suggests pursuing in order to catch - wara is to find - see also bâa 3 - used in gí bê, gí lége, gí nsalo, gí susu, gí tênê, gí yama, gí yângó

gí bê V: to search one's heart, to ponder, to meditate, to consider, to wonder about (sô mbi wara mbêtî pęp sô, mbi bî bê ti mbi da míngi : because I did not receive a letter, I wondered a great deal about it) - see penser

gigí N: the outside (lo goe na gigí na pckó ti da : he went outside behind the house) - most often found in the expression gigí na gigí is used "adverbially" to modify a verb, as above

gí lége V: to look for a way, to try, to attempt (fâdê mû gí lége ti sî na kôtôrâ : you will try to get to the village) (âmbêni agî lége ti
buba i : some try to make fools of us) - see also tara, yí, lége 2

gindi N : a bow - usually about four feet long, with a string made of a very flexible vine stripped and smoothed to size, or of rawhide, or of sisal fiber - the draw is quite short and weak, prohibiting using the bow at any distance - used most often to shoot small animals, as rats and rabbits, as they scurry past in fleeing hunting fires - boys often do this part of the hunting - kokora is the arrow - see zembe for a list of weapons

gingó N : 1. act of searching, search - from gí V
2. used to reinforce gí (mbi gí gingó : I am searching intensively)
gí ngolo N : provocation, taunt (mbi yí tí mbi gí ngolo pẹpe : as for me, I don't like provocation)
gí ó bé V : to sigh, gasp, or exhale audibly, especially in expiring
(Jésus agíó bé tí lo na kó : Jesus sighed out unto death) - see hú

mbóo
giriri Av : formerly, in the past, a long time ago (giriri ábabá tí i asára ngaragé : formerly, our fathers used to form the ngaragé society) (í sára tongasó giriri : we used to do it like that formerly) (lo commencer na ní kózo ní giriri : he began it first a long time ago) (áwále tí giriri : the women of the old days) - giriri denotes a more remote past than ândo, and lacks the ordinal element of kózo ní
girísa [grísa, glísa] V : 1. to lose, to mislay, to forget (mbi girísa nzoní yí só álá sára na mbi, ọko pẹpe : I will never forget the good things they did for me) (ála girísa lége tí wẹ : they lost the technique of iron) (lo girísa wále tí lo : he lost his wife) (mbi girísa kété franc kóé : I've lost all my small amount of money)
2. to be lost, mislaid, or forgotten (páta bale osió agirísa : two hundred francs was lost) (téní ní agirísa mbi : the matter has lost me, i.e. I've forgotten it) - this usage is more prevalent than 1 - that is, one more often says : It lost me, than : I lost it
gí susu V : to fish, to go fishing - this is not a major occupation or
source of food except along the Oubangui, Sangha, and Chari Rivers, where fishing is done with dugout canoes (ngô) and nets (gbándâ) or hooks (yângô) - also used are weirs (rgôlo), and in some cases a sort of ramp going up the shore, up which the water brings the fish which are caught when the water recedes - smaller streams are dammed (ngbingbi, éré ngû) and when the water recedes the fish are caught in scoops or baskets - see also kûrû
gi téné V: to pick a quarrel, to provoke someone (mbi yi gîngô téné pept : I don't like picking a quarrel) - see also gi ngolo - gi yângâ suggests simple teasing or taunting, while gi téné implies actively and gratuitously seeking for a quarrel
gi yâma V: to hunt, to go hunting (lo goe tí gi yâma na ngonda : he went hunting in the bush) - the traditional hunting party involved large parties of men and boys going out during the height of the dry season with nets, spears, and bows and arrows - they set up the nets in a long line, then burned the grass in a semi-circle to drive game into the net - as animals fled, they were trapped and killed - this method is no longer productive, and is practised for social rather than economic reasons - hunting with a shotgun and balls, or with an old muzzle-loader, is coming into style, though the price of a gun is prohibitive for most individuals and game is more and more scarce
gi yângâ V: to tease, to taunt, to provoke {ála gi yângâ tí mbi : they teased me} - see also gi téné
gôa ... te V: to begin to have labor pains {gôa ate lo : she has begun to have labor pains}

goe V: 1. to go (i mú kpôka tí goe na yâká : we took hoes to go to the garden) (lo goe tí sâra téné nî : he went to talk about it) - opp. kà 1
2. to proceed, to continue going (i goe jusqu'à, mbunzû awara dole : we went on for a while, and the White Men found an elephant) - see also fono; tambéla
3. to leave, to depart {i na lo î goe : he and I left} {tongana âla
goæ awe ... : when they had left ...} - opp. gâ 2
4. sometimes used in conjunction with other related verbs preceding
goæ {âla lôndô goæ : they arose and left, i.e. they left} - see
lôrdô, mú lége
5. there are three structural degrees of closeness between goæ and
a following verb having the same subject : (a) the subject is
repeated with each verb - (b) only the subject marker a- appears with
the second verb - (c) the two verbs are immediately joined - these
grammatical degrees, strongly modified by the semantic relationship
of goæ and the other verb, determine whether the two verbs denote
distinct actions, closely-related actions, a single complex action,
or even a single simple action (mô goæ mô vo makongô : go buy cater-
pillars) {âzo goæ, âla fââ yâma : the people went, and killed an
animal} {âla goæ atiri kâ ngbîi : they went and fought there a
while} {agoæ dô gérë tô lo : she up and stamped on her foot} {lo goæ
bââ mbakôro wâle sô : she went and saw this old woman} {kôli goæ si
na kôtôrô : the man went arriving to the village} - see also gâ 7

goæ berâ na li tô V : to attack, to make war against {âla goæ berâ na li
tô zo sô akamâta wâle tô ase : they went and attacked the man who had
taken the woman} - syn. pika berâ, tiri, tô na ndô

goæ genô V : to go visiting, especially to a foreign place - see goæ kôtôrô

goæ kôtôrô V : to go home - see goæ genô

goæ na V : 1. to take with, to take along {mamô goæ na mbi na docteur :
mother took me to the doctor} {lo goæ na nginza na wâle tô lo : he
took some money to his wife} - opp. gâ na 1 - see also kiri na
2. to accompany, to go with {mbi yi tô goæ na mô na Bangui : I want
to go with you to Bangui} - the context will distinguish this usage
from those cases where goæ na is followed by a locative or directional
complement - see also gâ na 2, kiri na

goæ na da tô kôli V : said of a girl or woman : to get married {mbi de
mbi goæ na da tô kôli pêpe : I haven't yet got married} - going to a
man's house signifies that all prerequisites to the marriage, including the bride price, have been cared for to the satisfaction of the bride's family - the marriage is thus made official - see mariage

goe (na) ngonda V: a euphemism for sára purú, to defecate, or sára íno, to urinate

goe na pekó V: to follow (lo goe na pekó tí Jésus: he followed Jesus) - the context will distinguish this expression from cases where na pekó is used in a locative sense - this expression, in opp. to gá na pekó, emphasizes the point of departure rather than the person followed, while mú pekó suggests a closer relationship between leader and follower - tomba implies a pursuit

góengó N: 1. the act of going, departure - from goe
2. used to reinforce goe (mbi goe góé ngó: I definitely departed)

goe nzoni V: go well, good luck - this is the parting salutation of the person who stays to the person who leaves - the response is dutí nzóní - see bara N

goigói [goygöy, goygöy, gwégwé] N: idleness, laziness, inertia (mo sára goigói na kusára tí mo pepe: don't be lazy in your work) (zo tí goigói: an idle, lazy person) - mbáná suggests an element of willful purpose sometimes tinged with malice, which is absent from goigói

gonda N: a certain poison used in trial by ordeal - the person suffering no ill effects from the swallowed poison is judged to be innocent

gondá N: the foot or base of a plant or tree, the stubble (mo mú ágondá tí péré só mo fáa: take the stubble of the grass and chop it up)
gonda V: to praise (aske nzóní aussi sí wâle agonda ándeko tí lo na kóli tí lo?: is it right also for a woman to praise her lovers to her husband?) - while gonda is used of praising human beings, sambéla and sepála are used of praising deity and of worshipping gouvernement** [guvernamè] N: 1. the government - the assemblée elects
gouvernement (cont.)-gôzo

the *président*, who appoints and directs the ministers and is assisted by the civil service

2. the president, as the head and personification of the government
(tongana gouvernement agâ abâa, anzerë na lé tî lo, tongana lo yî, lo aider mo : when the president comes and sees (what you are doing), if it pleases him, if he wants, he can help you)

gô N : 1. neck, throat (lo fâa kâmba na gô tô mbo : he cut the cord from the neck of the dog) (kii nî agbô gô tô mo : the prickers catch in your throat)

2. voice (î má gô tô mo nzoni : we heard your voice well) (sô gô tô âmakâko : that is the voice of the monkeys)

3. tune, melody (gô nî agoe tongasô : the tune goes like this)

gôgô N : a Cape buffalo - *syn. ngbââ*

gogoro N : a granary in which mil, maize, peanuts, sesame, etc. are stored - the prevalent model consists of a cylindrical hut with walls of coarse grass mat, a conical thatched roof, raised *several feet* from the ground on piles

gôro N : the cola nut - the habit of cola nut chewing is especially prevalent among West African traders, but some men in larger towns have also adopted it

gôzo N : manioc, the staple root crop which forms the basis of the diet of most of the population of the Central African Republic (*âwâle agoe tî sâra gôzo tî âla na yâ tî ngû : the women go to prepare their manioc in the water*) (tongana mo pika gôzo awa, mo yanguard na yanguard tî gôzo : when you have pounded the manioc, you sift it with the manioc sieve) (mo tourner gôzo na kéké tî gôzo : you stir the manioc (mush) with the manioc stick) - there are *several varieties* of manioc - the common kind is dug up as it is needed, peeled, cut into chunks, leached in water for two or three days to remove the prussic acid, dried, pounded on a large flat rock (*lakéré*) with a wooden mallet (*kôngo*), sifted with a special sieve (*V. and N. both yanguard*) - the resulting coarse, starchy meal is stirred into boiling water with a
special stick (*kéké ti gozo*) until a ball of stiff, sticky mush or dough is formed (the primary reference of *kóbe* is to this), which is broken off from the mass with the right hand, dipped into a sauce (*kása*) and carried to the mouth - other varieties, e.g. *coup-de-poing* 2, are simply boiled and eaten.

**guérir** [gerii] V : to recover from illness - ça va, gá nzonî 1, and *kobélé* ... kái are more common syn.

gugú N : mushroom - mushrooms are dried and fried, or salted and fried, and used as an ingredient in the making of many sauces - see *kása*.

gugúrú N : small fish, which are dried and pounded into fish meal which is one ingredient in the making of many sauces (apíka gugúrú, ayengère fúku ní, azía ngú da sì aska, ató, azía yingó da, sí atz : you pound the fish, sift the meal, put in water and crush it together, boil it, add salt, and so eat it) - see *kása*.

gúí N : an edible, large tuber - a type of large white-fleshed yam which is eaten boiled.

gúrú N : smoke, steam, vapor - *gúrú ti wá* refers specifically to smoke.

gúsá N : an edible leaf (*Corchorus* gen. ?) - see *kugbé* for a list of edible leaves.
hâ V 1 : to plait, to weave {ahâ kâmba tí coton : he plaited a cotton cord} - see pé kâmba, which refers more specifically to making rope

hâ V 2 : to open - used in hâ zembe, ndo ahâ

hâ [hâ, há] V : to ponder, to meditate, to cogitate {lo hâ gbâ : he pondered in vain} - syn. penser, b'anda

hâa V : to measure {ahâa yâká tí lo, alíngbi mètre pepe : he measured his field, it did not measure up to the required size}

hânda V : to attract and hold the attention, in either a pleasant or an unpleasant sense, to fascinate by holding out a hidden or deceptive prospect - hence, to tease, to kid, to amuse (as a baby), to tempt, to entice, to bluff {mo hânda mbi pepe, mo sâra na mbi taá téné : don't tease me, tell me the truth} {mo lôndô ma, mbi hânda mo séngé : get up, I was just kidding you} {zo ahânda mo séngé tí foutu nginza ti mo : people are just enticing you to waste your money} {mbéni íta askê hânda lo : some sister is tempting him} {âzo só askê sâra téné tí bûbá, ála só atânê ála askê hânda mbi sí mbi koê mbîto : the people are talking nonsense, those who say they will bluff me into being afraid} - Protestants use the expression we hânda to refer to a tempter, especially the devil

hânda N : temptation, deceptive enticement {nzala ahânda zo sî lo tí na hânda : desire tempts a person so that he falls into temptation}

hâra V : to creep, to crawl, to crawl in pursuit of {ngbo ahâra na sése : the snake crawls on the ground} {tongana awara yama, ahâra lo ngbii, allez, apîka lo : when he finds an animal, he crawls in pursuit of it and suddenly hits it}

hârâge N : a potent liquor made from manioc or mil crushed, steeped, fermented, and distilled - syn. ngbâgo - see also samba
hâ zembe V : to pull a knife out of its sheath

hé [hé, ʔé, é] V : 1. to laugh at, to make fun of, to mock, to ridicule
({ála hé pěmbé tí mbi pẹpẹ o : hey, don't laugh at my teeth!}) (áfamille só ahé mbi, mbi yì ála pẹpẹ : those members of the family who mocked me, I don't like them) - see also hé ngié
2. to sing (mbi hé tongasó : I sing (it) like this) - syn. hé biá

hé biá V : to sing {ála hé biá, asára ngié : they sang and had fun} -
syn. hé 2

hé ngié V : to laugh {ála bôngbi tí hé ngié na í, ála sára ngié na í : they gathered to laugh with us, to have fun with us} - see hé 1

heure** [léér, éér] N : 1. with French numerals : the specific time
 o'clock {ála sí na sept heures [sééér] : they arrived at seven o'clock} - see 5 below
 2. a unit of time, in the European sense {í wara heure [léér] míngi pẹpẹ : we didn't get many hours}
 3. time in a punctiliear or aoristic sense : the moment when, the
 season when {heure [léér] tí écèle asi : the time for school has
 moment to pour in water} {heure [léér] tí deux heures : the time to
 go back to work} {heure [léér] tí midi : noon-time}
 4. time in a durative sense : time during which {na heure [léér] só
 mbi sê na gouvernement ... : during my administration ...} {na heure [léér] só ngû apíka míngi, zía lo sukúla na ngû tí dé pẹpẹ : while
 it is raining a lot, i.e. in the middle of the rainy season, don't
 let him wash in cold water}
 5. the divisions and times of the day are as follows :
 ndá ade is before dawn
 ndo shé is sunrise
 ndá péréré is the early morning, after dawn
 midi, kóta lá refer to mid-day, noon
 deux heures is early afternoon, especially the time to go back to work
 after the noon break, regardless of the time o'clock
heure (cont.)—hingga li ti

lé kúi is the later afternoon and sunset
bí is the evening and night
bingo is specifically the time of darkness
bé bí, midi tí bí is the middle of the night, midnight

hingga [hingga, ˈinga, ˈinga] V : to know, to realize, to understand, to be aware, to know how {yí só kóé, fadé mbi hingga : all those things, I'll know} {í hingga așké yí tí mbito : we know it is a fearful thing} {í hingga, așké kótá kóțórò : we know it is a large village} {mbi yí tí hingga, na lége yɛ ála sára yí só : I want to know how they did this thing} {mbi hingga tí lᵉkɛ : I know how to fix it} {mbi hingga tí sáràngó ní : I know how to do it} {mbi hingga mbéni zo ká : I know someone over there} {lo hingga koa ní : he knows the work} {lo hingga manière tí kpíkara : he knew the cunning of kpíkara} - see the following entries for use in phrases - see also penser

hingga bé tí V : to know another profoundly, to discern another's thoughts and motives, to understand another thoroughly {așké nzóni mò hingga bé tí lo sì, ngbangatí ázo tí wátáká așké míngi : it is well for you to know him thoroughly, because there are many liars about} - hingga lé tí is a much more superficial acquaintance

hingga ... kóé V : to know thoroughly, to understand, to be familiar with, to be intimately aware of {ála hingga kóé, kobélá sò așké sioní míngi : you know perfectly that this illness is very bad} {mbi de mɛɛŋɛ, mbi hingga kóé pɛɛ : I was still a child, I did not really understand} {mbi hingga só kóé : I know this thoroughly} - see also penser

hingga lé tí V : to recognize another from the outward appearance, to be casually acquainted with another - hingga bé tí is a much more profound knowledge

hingga lége V : to know how {mbi hingga lége ní : I know how} {mbi hingga lége tí sára ta pɛɛ : I don't know how to make pots}

hingga li tí V : to know in one's mind, to understand {mbéni ténɛ așké só mbi hingga li tí mbi da pɛɛ : there is a matter which I don't understand} - see hingga, penser
hínga mbétí V: to know how to read

hínga pépe [hínga ape] C: perhaps, possibly, who knows whether (o íta hínga pépe mo sára koa ni mbirimbírí pépe: oh sister, perhaps you didn't do the work right) (lo tene, hínga pépe, fadé kótóró tì í akono: he said, who knows whether our village will get big) - syn. peut-être

hínga ... tene V: to be sure, to be confident, to consider (lo hínga atene ni ñe wále só aké sára koa tì da tì lo nzoni: she felt sure that she was a woman who did her housework well) - this is much more confident than báa ... tene

hínga téré V: to be mutually acquainted, to know one another (ázo tì lukundú ahínga téré nzoni: the witches know one another well) - see also hínga bé tì, hínga lé tì

híc Av: quickly, fast, in a hurry (mbi wara réponse híc pépe: I didn't get an answer quickly) - distinguished from fadé in lacking the element of a time lapse

histoire** [istwâar] N: a story, a tale, an anecdote (téné só mbi ñe téné, akè téné tì histoire tì babá na mamá tì mbi tì giriri: the matter which I am telling is a story of my father and mother long ago) - téné is the most general term for any sample of language, while isorô is restricted to speech and tere to fables - see sára téné

hônde V: to hide, to conceal (mbi língbi tì hônde yì tì Afrique na mò pépe: I cannot conceal from you matters relative to Africa) (lo hônde téré tì lo: he hid himself)

hôpitôal** [opitáal, lopitáal] N: a hospital

hó [hó, hó] N: the nose, specifically that part of the human or animal anatomy which serves for breathing - see dú hó

hó [hó] V: 1. to pass, to pass by, to pass on, to proceed (tongana dole ayí tì hó, likongó akpo lo: when the elephant wanted to pass on, the spear stabbed him) (áwâle míngi akè hó: many women were passing
by} {ála sâra kôbe, ála h$ na pkô ti pendere kôli sô : they made food and passed on after this young man, i.e. followed him} {woga afâa yá ti yâkâ ah$ tî lo : as for him, the antelope crossed the garden and passed on} {lége sô ah$ tî goe na Bangui : this road passed on to go to Bangui} {mo h$ Paoua, âa the vingt kilomètre tî goe na kôtôrô tî mbi : you pass Paoua, it's twenty kilometers to go to my village} {tongana ngû ah$ míngi ... : when many years had passed ...} 

2. to surpass, to excell, to defeat, to overcome, to overwhelm {tî bâa kôtâ yî na ndô sëse sô ah$ kôbe tî yâ : to see the great things on earth surpasses any kind of food} {lo ëke kôtâ kôtôrô míngi, ah$ tanga tî âmbâ tî lo kôé : it is a great country, it surpasses all its sister-countries} {lo h$ lo na berâ : he defeated him in war} {ngangô tî yorô nî agoe ah$ ngangô tî mo : the strength of the medicine went and overcame your strength} - in the sense of to defeat, syn. gagner, h$ ndô

3. used in various expressions of comparison and in "superlative" expressions {i yi míngi ah$ : we like it a great deal, it surpasses, i.e. we like it very much indeed} {mo sâra koa ah$ âmbëni wâle tî kôtôrô : you do work, it surpasses the other women of the village, i.e. you do more work than the other women} {ita sô sângé yî ah$ yî kôé : sister, that's the most insignificant thing of all} {agâ sionî, ah$ tî giriri : it has become bad, it surpasses that of formerly, i.e. it has become worse than formerly} {mbi yi tî kîrî na mo merci míngi ah$ : I want to return to you very many thanks}

h$ ndô V : 1. to overcome, to overwhelm {kobëla ah$ ndô tî lo : sickness has overwhelmed him} {ngunzâ nî ah$ ndô tî mbi : the greens are too much for me} {ngangô tî yorô nî ah$ ndô tî kobëla : the strength of the medicine has overcome the sickness} - syn. h$ 2, gagner

2. with nî : an expression of the superlative of any quantitative concept {i fâa mbëni kôtâ yâkâ, ah$ ndô nî : we cultivated a huge field, beyond measure} {ála gbô susu, ah$ ndô nî : they caught many fish, beyond belief} {kôngbâ tî mbunzû nî ah$ ndô nî : the load of the white man was much too heavy} - syn. lingbi peps
hôngô N : 1. the act of proceeding or passing on - from hô V
   2. used to reinforce hôngô V (lo hô hôngô : he definitely passed by)
hô tô [ô tô, ô tô] N : a hill, a mountain {ákôtarâ aske sambéla kô tô li
ti hô tô : the ancestors used to worship the high tops of hills)
hú [hú, wú] V 1 : 1. to spread (ázo ní acommencer tí hú míngi na yá tí
   kô tô rô : the people began to spread abroad widely in the village)
   2. by extension, to prosper, to become famous {érê tí kô tô rô só
   ahú míngi : the name of that village has spread, i.e. become famous)
hú [hú, wú] V 2 : to breathe - used also in hú mbôo, hú panâ, hú têrê
hú mbôo V : to breathe, to exhale, to blow with the mouth - see also gìô
bê, ùlu
hûnda [hûnda, ùnda] V : to ask, to request {lo hûnda mèrângê, lo tênê,
   kô tô rô aske ndûrû pépe : he asked the child, saying, isn't the
   village nearby?} {lo hûnda, ázo ô ké ayî tí mú carte tí lo : he asked,
   how many people want to take away his card?} {question só mo hûnda
   na mbi ... : the question which you asked me ...} {lo hûnda bon :
   he asked for a loan} - see also sâra tênê, ârê 3
hûngô N : fame, reputation, news {fadesô tênê ní acommencer tí â ré, ì mà
   hûngô ní míngi pépe : now the matter has begun to cool off, we don't
   hear the fame of it much any more)
hûnzi [hûnzi, wûnzi, ùnzi] V : 1. to finish, to exhaust the supply, to
   run out, to come to the end, to be finished or exhausted {ngangô tí
   lo ade ahûnzi pépe : his strength is not yet exhausted} {nze ahûnzi
   awe : the month is finished} {nğinza ní ahûnzi awe : the money has
   run out} {âla hûnzi tênê ní : they made an end to the matter} {ake
   nзони mô hûnzi yorô ní : you should finish your medicine} {lo hûnzi
   tí sâra tênê awe : he has finished talking)
   2. by extension, to disappear, to cause to disappear - hence, to
   conceal {âla hûnzi yâma ní, ì âla kîrî na kô tô rô : they concealed
   the animal, and then went to the village} - syn. hûnde, with which
   there seems to be some confusion in current usage
hûnzi berá-hû téré

hûnzi berá V : to ambush

hû ponô V : to suffer persecution, to be persecuted - sometimes, to suffer in general {ækê kusára tí Nzapá laá, sí mbi ngbá tí hû ponô da só : it's on account of the work of God that I'm still suffering persecution} - the element which distinguishes this from báa râsi, báa finôo is that the ill-will of a person is involved - see ponô, sáná

hû téré V : to rest from effort {mo zíá i hû téré kêté ma : won't you please let us rest a bit} - see also lângo N
- I -

í P : 1. first person plural pronoun (apousser í tîné ni sâra koa mingi : they urged us, so that we did much work) (sô da tí í : this is our house) (sô tí í : this is ours) - some of the Catholic literature uses *é for this, while using í in sense 2 below, but oral material does not justify this distinction - Protestant material uses âni in this sense

2. second person plural pronoun, mostly in missions literature (aekê têné na í tîné ti Nzapâ : it is telling you the word of God) - âla is general usage for this sense - see mbi for the pronoun system - (Grammar p. 135-138)

ía V : to blow, as the wind (pupu aîa ngangó : the wind blew hard)

ía N : the sky, the air - ndûzu means the upper regions, the sky, while vávú means heaven, both where the stars are, and where Christians go after death

il faut que** [ifô, fô, fôkä, ifôkä, ifôke, ifôk] V : it must be that

il faut que âla sâra koa só : you must do this work) (il faut que mbi goe na Bangui : I must go to Bangui) - syn. lîngbi

impôt** [lçpôo] N : taxes - for the greater part of the population, the prevalent form of taxes is the head tax, usually paid when the cotton crop is sold, since this is the only time when many people have enough cash - see coton

infirmier** [çfirmyée] N : a male nurse - the great majority of hospital employees of all categories are male

íno N : urine - sâra íno is to urinate - bozô íno is the bladder

isôrô N : any form of speech, as conversation or narrative (sô têrê na isôrô tî dimanche : these are the fables and talks (or speeches, or chats, etc.) for Sunday) - sâra isôrô means to converse - tîné is the
isoró (cont.)-ita

brodest term for any sample of the language, histoire refers to a story, a tale, or an anecdote, and tere is a fable - see also sára téné

ita N : 1. in a strict kinship sense, a member of one's clan in the same generation, in particular one's siblings, but including parallel cousins (ita tí mbi atene mbi goe na lo : my sibling told me to go with him) - kótá zo 2 is an older brother (kótá zo tí mbi : my older brother) - ngambe is a younger sibling - babá 5ko is used to distinguish a sibling from a cousin - mamá 5ko, when it is added to babá 5ko, distinguishes a full sibling from a half sibling
2. in a more general sense, a fellow-clansman- family obligations are very strong - a person whom can legitimately call one ita expects as his right one's support, material or moral, in any contingency, so that the term is itself an expression of claim upon an obligation mutually recognized
3. by extension, someone with whom one shares a significant social status or role, as membership in a secret society or age level (áita tí mbi  ámbéréngé wále ... : my fellow-girls...)
4. especially in direct address, a close friend or intimate comrade - camarade and ndeko are more general and less intimate, fó is a co-worker, mbá is a compatriot, and ndé is a person sharing one's personal name
jusqu'à ** [zuskâ] C : until {mo mú yoró jusqu'à ndá tì dimanche 3ko : take the medicine until the end of the week} {í kú jusqu'à lo dū awe : we waited until she had given birth} - this is a gallicism jusqu'à [zúska, zúsûka] Av : for a while, for a long time {aéké dé yáká na babá tì lo jusqu'à : he cultivated the field with his father for a while} - syn. ngbii - both of these synonyms can occur together in hybrid reinforcement {mbi du ká na íta tì mbi ngbii jusqu'à : I stayed there with my brother for a long, long time}
kâ V : to well {âwâle ake kâ yí tí ála na galá : the women are selling their goods in the market} - vo means both to buy and to sell, but it can be specifically contrasted with kâ - vo ngéré means to buy and sell, to do business - see also fûta, payer, nginza, masoro, ngéré

kâ Av : there, over there, then {aâkâ nàNice : they were there in Nice} {lo lôndó kâ : he departed from there} {tongana mò sî kà ... : when you arrive there ...} {í goe na mbâge kâ : we went to the side there, i.e. over there} {asâra berâ na lá nî kâ : he fought a war then on that day} {zo sò kâ : that man over there} - kâ is in contrast with ge, which means here - da Av is the anaphoric substitution for both

kâ N : an open wound, a sore, an ulcer {lo warâ kâ na zëmbé : he received a knife wound} {tongana mbi kpâka pëkó tí mò, fadê agá kâ : if I scrape your back, it will become a wound}

ka C : 1. then - used to introduce the apodosis of a condition contrary to fact, the protasis being introduced by tongana, âdu nî, or âdu titène, or being absent {âdu titène, mâle tí mbi âke na kôtèrâ, ka í causer : if my wife were in the village, then we would talk} {âdu nì ála, ka í língbi titène í bâa finóo míngi : if we were they, then we would be able to say we experienced much suffering} {tongana carte d'identité, ka mò hînga : if (I had) my identity card, then you would know} {ka mbi tène na mò : I would have told you}

2. used to add an element of emphasis or surprise to a negative sentence {mbi ekâ sukûla bongô na kòli sô, ka mbi warâ pendere bongô tongasô pëpë : I wash clothes for this man, and I still don't get beautiful clothes like that!} - (Grammar p. 66-67)

kâi N : a paddle for a canoe - see sâra kâi
ká i V: 1. to be or become quiet, to hush {pupu ní aká i : the wind became quiet} {ngonzo aká i na bë tì lò : anger quieted in his heart} {ká i, mërengë : hush, child} - see su P, ká nga 2
   2. to cure an illness {yorô ní aká i lò : the medicine cured it (the illness)} - syn. ká i ... kobéla - see also kobéla ... ká i

ká i ... kobéla V: 1. to heal, to cure an illness {í lingbi tì ká i kobéla na téré tì lò : we can cure the illness in his body} {fadé ála ká i na kobéla tì lò : they will cure his illness}
   2. more rarely : to recover {í yi lò ká i hí o na kobéla tì lò nì : we want him to recover quickly from his illness} - syn. kobéla ... ká i, ça va, guérir, gá nzoní are more common in this sense

kaká N: 1. ancestor - syn. kótará'
   2. grandfather {lo së kaká tí mbi : he is my grandfather} - see famille for the kinship system

kákéré N: a certain uncultivated tree (Amblygonocarpus Schweinfurthii Harms.) - also, its edible grain - pods drop from the tree to the ground, where they are gathered, broken up in a mortar, and the seeds enter into various edible sauces as a sort of condiment {lé tì kákéré agá fúku pepe, angbá gí lé nì : the kákéré seeds do not become a powder, they remain seeds} {kákéré afçì nzoní : kákéré is aromatic}

kakó N: the husks or pods which are discarded when edible grains or seeds are prepared {apíka bándó awe, alungûla kakó nì : when they have pounded the mil, they remove the husks} - see pé 2

kalá N: a snail - its shell is përó tì kalá

kamáta V: 1. to take, to take possession, to seize, to catch, to capture, {ála kamáta mbëni yì tì sàra na ngaânga : they took a certain thing with which to make a fetish} {ála kamáta, ála tì : they took and ate} {ála tiri berâ sì álâ kamáta ázo tì gâ na álâ na lò : they fought a war so as to capture people to bring to him} - mú includes both the idea of giving and that of receiving or taking - gbô means to grasp
   2. to adopt (a child) {lo kamáta mërengë tì íta tì lò só akúi : he adopted the child of his brother who died} - syn. bata 2
kamâta ... pôpô
kamâta ... na pôpô V : to choose, to select, to elect - syn. choisir.
mû ... na pôpô
kamâta kóli V : of a woman : to get married - see marier, mariage
kamâta wâle V : of a man : to get married - see marier, mariage
kâmba N : 1. a vine, a creeper - partially contrastive with kéké, a woody plant, and péré, grass or herb
2. a cord, a string, a rope (adu kété kété kâmba na gô tí mbo : he tied a very small cord to the neck of the dog) - see pé kâmba
3. a snare or noose made of cord and used to catch various small animals (kâmba tí kpíkara amû kótá yâma tí sése, na kâmba tí tere amû kété yâma tí ndûzû : kpíkara's snare caught a large land animal, while tere's snare caught a small aerial animal) - see also ngindi, sô
4. a belt (kâmba tí kânga na ngbundá tí lo : a belt to fasten about her waist)
kamelâ [kamelâ, kamerâ, kamarâ, kamnê] N : shame {tongana lo bâa na yâ tí lé tí zo vokó, kamelâ amû lo, ngbangatí sioní yî só giriri lo ērè sâra na zo vokó : when he looks into the face of a black man, shame seizes him because of the bad things he used to do to the black man} {kamelâ asâra mbi míngi : shame is affecting me greatly, i.e. I am very much ashamed} {mbi ērè ngbâ gi na ngbéré bongô, só ērè yî tí kamelâ pepe ? : isn't the fact that I remain in this old dress shameful?}
kanda* N : a dish made of pounded dried or fresh fish or meat with other ingredients {apîka fûku tí gugûrû, ayanggë, azía ngû da sí anâ kanda atô azía yîngô da sí ate : you pound fish meal, you sift it, you put water in and crush the kanda, you cook it, add salt, and eat}
kângá N : any of several closely-related antelopes, as the hartebeest and sassaby (genera Alcephalus and Damaliscus)
kânga V : 1. to fasten, to tie (akânga gbânda tí fâa yâma : he fastens the nets to kill animals) (kâmba tí kânga na ngbundá tí lo : a string
of beads to fasten about her waist} - du 1 means specifically to tie - opp. lungûla, zî 1 - see also tíngbi
2. to shut, to close, to cover with a lid (mo kânga yângâ tí da : close the door of the house) (kânga yângâ tí ta : cover the pot) (chrétien alingbi tí kânga lége na àzo pépé : a Christian cannot shut the way, i.e. create obstacles, for people) - opp. lungûla - see also gbânzi - kâi means specifically to hush
3. to be or become shut, closed, obstructed (kôté kôté ngû nî akânga awe : the small stream was obstructed) (yákâ tí cafè tí mbi akânga kôé : my coffee plantation is completely choked (with weeds)) (yângâ tí da akânga : the door of the house is shut)
4. to imprison, to jail, to incarcerate (ála gà na lo na commandant, álà kânga lo : they brought him to the district officer, they imprisoned him) - see kânga N

kânga N : jail, prison (agoe zìa álà na kânga : they went and put them in jail) - syn. dé tí kânga
kânga bê V : to persevere, to be patient, to overcome discouragement
{mo kânga bê tí mo, fadé na dimanche ti pêkô, mo mà séngê : just be patient, next Sunday you'll hear easily} - opp. bê ... nzé, wôkô - this is a subjective reaction, while the occasion of the discouragement is said to kara or be one
kânga lége V : to obstruct, to hinder, to prevent (chrétien alingbi tí kânga lége na zo pépé : a Christian cannot obstruct the way for a person) (lo kânga lége, sí mbi bâa ndo pépé : he obstructed the way, so I did not see) - syn. gbânzi - see also lége 1
kânga yângâ V : to make it impossible for someone to eat, specifically by preventing him from getting food (ngû Nzapâ aksè kânga yângâ tí álà : the rain shut their mouths, i.e. kept them from eating by keeping them from going to the gardens to get food)

kângba N : an old man - syn. kôtâ kôli - mbakâro can refer to either sex, as can kôtâ zo - kôtâ wâle is an old woman
kângbi V: to divide, to apportion, to partition (i kângbi yâma nî: we divided the meat) (âla mú wî nî, âla kângbi tî sâra na ngåfô: they took the iron and divided (it) to make into hoes)
2. to separate (âla sâra têné, sî âla kângbi: they talked, then they separated) - opp. bôngbi

kângbi yâ tî V: to divide, to partition, to separate into parts or components (lo kângbi yâ tî yâma nî: he divided the meat into portions) (âla gâ mingi, sî lo kângbi yâ tî âla: they came in great numbers, so that he divided them (into groups)) - fâa yâ tî necessitates the meaning of cutting into parts, while kângbi yâ tî does not specify the manner of the division

kângô N: 1. act of selling - from kâ V
2. used to reinforce kâ V (lo kâ kângô: he definitely sold it)

kangû N: a dipper or container made of a gourd, cut longitudinally into halves, sometimes decorated with a red-hot iron - a gourd cut open at the small end to form a bottle is ngângâ

kanguya N: palm wine - this is used mostly in the southern or forest zone of the Central African Republic - see samba for a list of alcoholic beverages

kapîta N: 1. a headman, a subordinate to a village or other chief (i mú mbéni yâma ngâ na kôzo kapîta, sô aeké na pekô tî makunzi: we give meat also to the first headman, who comes after the chief) - see makunzi, the general term for a chief
2. a foreman on a work project or in a factory, a supervisor of laborers (kusâra tî inspecteur aeké tî bata âzo tî kusâra tongana kapîta?: is it the work of an inspector to supervise laborers like a foreman?)

kara V: to overwhelm, to defeat, to discourage, to be too much for one (caisse nî ane ahô ndô nî, akara âbi na yâ tî nganda: the crate was much too heavy, it was too much for me in the bush) - syn. be, mú vângâ, hô ndô - bé ... nzé, wôko are the subjective reaction, and their opp. is kânga bé
káráko [káráko, kárko, kárákoro] N : the peanut plant and grains -
peanuts are an important auxiliary food - they are eaten raw,
boiled, or roasted, and a peanut paste (see kní) is an ingredient
of many sauces - peanut oil (see mafuta) is extensively used in
cooking

kásá N : 1. any edible sauce eaten with the staple mush or dough - the
kinds of ingredients used are extremely varied: fresh meat (yáma)
or fish (susu) when available, fish meal (gugúrú), dried meat or
fish (kúrú), caterpillars (makongó), termites (bobo), various kinds
of edible leaves and greens (kugbé), peanuts and other oleaginous
grains and seeds (kní), various kinds of mucilaginous ingredients
(dongó), tomatoes (tomate), onions (cignon), and condiments and
seasonings (yíngó, kákéré, ndóngé), and so forth - yabándá is a
sauce made of greens with or without the paste - see kóbé
2. sometimes, the name kásá is applied to the ingredients names above

kátá N : a small grey lizard - mbáráwárá is a monitor lizard

kate N : the chest, both in its external aspect and its internal anatomy
{kóbéla ti kate ti lo asára sánzó na yá tí kate tí lo : his chest
sickness has made pus inside his chest} {bóngó ake na kate tí lo
ño pépé : he had no clothes on his chest} - see téré

kawai [kawai, kawaya, kaiwaya] N : an edible leaf (Cucurbita Pepo L.)
{lo fáa yáká tí gbánza, lo lá kawai na yá ní : he made a corn field,
he planted kawai in it, i.e. between the corn stalks} {tongana mó
yí tí yá yáma pépé, mó vo kugbé tí kawai : if you don't want to cook
meat, you buy kawai leaves} - see kugbé for a list of edible leaves

kéké N : 1. a tree or other woody plant (ndakó adutí na li tí kéké :
the bird sat in the top of the tree) {mbi dutí na gbé tí kéké :
I sat under a tree} - péré, grass or herb, contrasts with kéké
2. the trunk or stem of a plant or part of a plant (mó fáa ngunzá
ní kéké, mó bi kéké ní na sése : you cut up the greens, you throw away
the stems)
3. a pole, a stick {mbi dé kéké tí da : I cut poles for a house}
(i dé kéké tí yó na yama ní : we cut a pole to carry the animal)
(kângba só amú kéké tí lo, akírí na kótârò : this old man took his
stick and returned to the village)
4. wood {zo aṣẹ kéké pẹ̀pẹ̀ : people aren't wood} {lo sára gbogbo ní
na kéké tí nzóní mìngi : he made the bed of very good wood)

kéké tí gọ̀ṣọ̀ N : a special stick, often of bamboo (bambou 2), about an
inch in diameter and three feet long, which is used to stir the
manioc mush or dough

kéké tí wá N : firewood

ké lé V : to blink {mbi ké lé mbi : I blinked}

kékéréke [kékéréke, kééréke] Av : tomorrow (mo kírí kékéréke : come back
tomorrow) - see lá for the dating system

kéngé N : penis, phallus - pító is the foreskin, korogbó is the scrotum -
see also fáa ranzá - see téré ṣ

kété An : 1. small, little, narrow, thin {kété mìrèngé : a small child)
{kété sèmbé : a little dish} {kété kété dola : a very small moth}
{kété kété kàmba : a thin string} {ngú ní aṣẹ kété : the stream is
narrow} - náùrù means short - opp. kótá
2. a small quantity, a small amount, a little {mọ mú yíngó kété : take
a small amount of salt} {mbi girísa mbéní kété ngingá : I lost a
small amount of money} {ála mú mbéní kété kóbe : they took along a
small quantity of food} {mbi díko Sango kété : I read a little Sango}
- opp. míngi, kótá 2
3. of short duration {mbéní kété tè̀rè : a certain short fable} - syn.
náùrù, opp. yàngóra
4. of lesser status, on a lower level {kété école : a lower-level
school} - opp. kótá
5. used to modify verbs, adjunctives, or phrases other than noun
phrases : a little, for a little while {i yí tí hò kété : we wanted
to go on a little} {zia i hú tèrè tí i kété : let us rest for a little
while} {mbi gá kótá kété : I became a little big, i.e. I grew up just
a bit} {na pícò ní kété : a little while afterwards} {àngbá kété,
ála fáa mbi : it remained a little more, and they would have
tungu mbi : it remained a little more, and they would have
kété babá N : one's father's younger brother - see famille for the
kinship system
kété bói N : a kitchen flunky, an apprentice in domestic service -
the kété bói has the lowest status and pay scale and the most
menial jobs among domestic employees - syn. marmiton - see also bói
kété géré N : a toe - see géré
kété mabóko N : a finger - see mabóko
kété mamá N : one's mother's younger sister - see famille for the
kinship system
kété pémbé N : an incisor tooth - the characteristic verb for biting with
the incisors is te - see also kótá pémbé, pémbé
ké V : see eke
kç [kç, kë] V : to refuse, to reject, to repudiate, to condemn (lo kç,
mbi yi pépe : he refused (saying), I don't want to) (akç, ti fúta
lo : he refused to pay him) (lo kç kóbe ti ála : he refused their
food) (mbi língbi ti kç áfamille ngbangati só pépe : I can't
repudiate the family because of that) (mbi kç place ti mamá ti mbi :
I rejected my mother's home) (commandant akç lége ni awe : the
district officer condemned that conduct) - dé kité means to object,
to express reservations or doubts - opp. vi, vi da, vi pekó
kç kóli V : to repudiate one's husband, i.e. to divorce him (mo língbi
ti kç kóli ti mo ngbangati bongó pépe : you can't divorce your
husband over clothes) - see marier, mariage - syn. kpé kóli
kç wâle V : to repudiate one's wife, i.e. to divorce her (kóli só akç
wâle ti lo awe : this man divorced his wife) - see marier, mariage-
syn. tomba wâle, zia wâle
kii [kii, ki] N : thorns or prickers (as on bushes or trees), bristles
or fuzz (as on caterpillars) (kii ni akpo mabóko ti lo : the thorn
pierced his hand} (mo kpaka kii tí makongó ngbangatí aghó gó tí mo : scrape off the fuzz of the caterpillars so it doesn't catch in your throat) - sisi refers to burrs, while kóá can mean fuzz or bristles
kinda V : to trip or knock down (mbi kinda lo na sése : I knocked him down)
kio* V : to shave (mú na mbi zembe, mbi kio kóá li tí mbi : give me the knife, I'll shave my hair)
kírí V : 1. to return, to go back (mbi kírí awe : I have returned) (mbi kírí na kótôrô : I have returned to the village) (lo língbi tí kírí na babá tí lo pépe : he cannot go back to his father) (lo kírí na koa : he returned to work)
2. to respond, to render, to return (mbi yi tí kírí na mo merci míngi : I want to render to you many thanks) (fadé mbi báa yi tí kírí na question tí mo : I'll find something to respond to your question) - see kírí téné
3. with another verb following : to do again (mbi kírí mbi téné, álá má mbírímbírí : I'll return and say it, i.e. say it again, so that you'll understand it correctly) (akírí agá koto lo : he up and scratched him again) - see encore, mbéni

kíríkiri [krikri, kirkir] An : 1. crooked, twisted, perverse, devious (kéké só ake kíríkiri míngi : that stick is very crooked) (bé tí lo ake kíríkiri : his character is perverse) (zo tí kíríkiri : a devious person) - while kíríkiri suggests multiple twists and bends, ba suggests a simple curvature - sioni is the general term for evil - opp. mbírímbírí
2. any, in the sense of a lack of selection or discrimination, i.e. in a pejorative sense (zo kíríkiri alingbi tí mú yoró pépe : not just any person can take medicine)
3. used in modifying a verb : disorderly, every which way, indiscriminately, perversely (zo só amú yoró kíríkiri ... : people who take medicine indiscriminately ...) (álá commencer tí kpo téré tí álá kíríkiri : they began to stab one another indiscriminately) (lo fáa kôngba tí yá da kíríkiri : he smashed the house utensils every which way) (lo
sára kíríkírì míngi : he did it very perversely) - opp. mbirimbiri
kírì na V : to bring back, to accompany back (mbi kírì na ní na kótáró : I brought it back to the village) (akírì na mbi na Bangui : he accompanied me back to Bangui) - see also gá na, gee na
kírì na pêkó V : to retrogress, to go back or backwards - stronger than kírì 1
kírìngó N : 1. a return (kírìngó tí mò na Bangui ... : your return to Bangui ...)
2. used to reinforce the verb kírì (mbi yí tí kírì kírìngó : I want to definitely return)
kírì téné V : to answer, to reply, to respond (mbi sára téné gbá, lo kírì téné pêpe : I spoke in vain, he didn't answer) (lo kírì téné na mbi : he answered me) - when the context indicates in some way a semantic object of the verb, kírì 2 may be used
kísi N : a string of beads worn by women and girls about the hips to adorn themselves and to support the skirt, apron, or loincloth - today, though dresses are worn almost universally, beads are often still worn underneath - lenge refers to beads in general - yí tí mè and ngbéréná are other personal adornments
kité N : objection, doubt, expostulation - used especially in dé kité
kó V : to germinate, to sprout (bóndó aékè kó na sése : the mil has germinated in the ground)
kò V : to alight, especially to embark or disembark (lo kó na yá tí mbéní ngó : he embarked in another boat) (lo kó na sése : he alighted, he disembarked)
kóbê [kóbe, kóbc] N : 1. food in general, whatever is eaten - hence the meanings below
2. food crops, seed for food crops (só kóbê kóbe tí yáká : this is all garden food, i.e. crops) (lé tí kóbê ndé ndé aékè : there are various kinds of food seeds) (yáká tí kóbê : a food garden or field) (aékè lú kóbê só na yáká : they planted all this food in the field)
kôbe (cont.)-kobéla tí kate

3. prepared dishes in general {sô ake mbéni mará tí kôbe, ala dé éré ni kanda : this is a certain kind of food, they call it kanda} (kôbe ni akpí, anzeré pepe : the dish was sour, it didn't taste good) - kpúngba kôbe is solid food, adults' food - lekë kôbe or sâra mean very generally to prepare food, me kôbe is a more specific term meaning to prepare the dough - tô means to boil, to cook, yóro means to fry, te means to eat

4. specifically, the staple mush or dough - this is made of manioc flour (fâku tí gozo) in most of the country, but in the north mil (bôngó, zuru) is used {mbéni kôbe tí yóro na gbé tí ngunzâ ni ake pepe : there is no dough to dip into the greens} - it is in this sense that a person who has eaten various things during the day can say in the evening that he has not eaten : he has had no dough - in this sense, kôbe contrasts with kasa, which is the sauce made to accompany the dough

kobéla [kobéla, kobéla, kobéra] N : sickness, illness, disease, ailment in general {lo tí na kutukutu, ní laâ sî lo âke na kobéla : he fell (i.e. had an accident) in a car, that is why he is ailing} (sô ake kobéla tí sioní míngi : that is a very bad sickness) {kobéla asâra mbi ngangô : sickness is affecting me greatly, i.e. I am very sick} - the names of specific diseases include : buruma or ngiba leprosy, ndaveke syphilis, kobéla tí kate any chest or lung ailment, kobéla tí vá fever, kobéla tí vá any abdominal complaint, kórâ a cold, ngbâlo a kind of head ailment, ngé lángó sleeping sickness - sâra is the itch sâra purû na méné means to have dysentery, yuru 2 means to have diarrhea - see also ça va, guérir, kái ... kobéla, kobéla ... kái, gá nzoni, which mean to heal or to recover - malade is a syn. interchangeable with kobéla in all usages and environments

kobéla ... kái V : to recover from illness {kobéla ake kái gi na lángó tongasô : the illness will get well only in that many days} - see also kái ... kobéla, ça va, guérir, gá nzoni

kobéla tí kate N : any chest or lung ailment, including tuberculosis, pneumonia, pleurisy, bronchitis, and asthma - see kobéla
kobéla tí wá N : fever - see kobéla
kobéla tí yá N : any abdominal pain or ailment, including colic, indigestion, intestinal or urinary parasites, and so forth - see kobéla

kóé [kwé, kwé] An : 1. all, every, whole, entire {mafuta ní acommencer sí gígi kóé : all the oil began to render out} {mbi leke yí kóé : I have prepared everything} {ázo tí sése kóé : the people of the whole earth, or all the people of the earth} {áíta tí i kóé : all our brothers} {mbi bara ála kóé : I greet you all} {mbi yí óse kóé : I want all two i.e. both} - used in lá kóé - (Grammar, p. 55) - can be reinforced with syn. tout
2. everything {mbi leke kóé awe : I've fixed everything} {kózo ní kóé ... : before everything ...}
3. also, too {fádé mbi kóé mbi sára : I also will do this} {sáké bába tí i na mó kóé : he is the father of me and you too, lit. of us and you too} {mó zía kpi da kóé : put in paste also} - syn. ngá
4. entirely, wholly, altogether {mó píka yá ní ngbii kóé : pound it for a while, entirely, i.e. until it is done} {atourner kóé awe : it is entirely stirred} {ndo avókô na ála kóé : the surroundings were entirely dark around them}

kógará [kógará, kógalá, kógeré] N : a term used mutually among male in-laws - hence, father-in-law, brother-in-law (i.e. wife's brother), son-in-law - see famille for the kinship system

kóli N : a cushion, a pillow

kólo N : a giraffe - the giraffe is known only in the extreme north and east of the Central African Republic

kolóngó N : a broad flat platter or basin - traditionally made of carved wood {azía na yá tí kolóngó, na kótoró tí mbi i híngá sembé pípe : we put it onto a wooden platter, in my village we didn't know about dishes} - today, it includes any sort of broad flat container, in contrast to kopo, which designates a smaller and deeper container - see also ta
kombá-kótá

kombá N : a guinea fowl, a highly-prized game bird

kombá ámbá N : a bachelor - masié is the feminine counterpart

kóngbá [kóngbá, kóngbá, kóngbá, kumbá] N : 1. goods, possessions, merchandise (lo goe tí ká kóngbá tí lo na galá : she went to sell her goods in the market) (kóli ní atènè na wále tí lo, lo lákè kóngbá tí ní : the man told his wife to pack up his possessions)
2. a load, a burden, a bundle, a package (lo eke gbó kóngbá na ązo : he carries packages for people) (kóngbá tí mbunzú ní ahọ ndó ní : the white man's load was too heavy) (goe zía kóngbá na yá auto : go put the load into the car) - specifically, kóngbá means as much as one person can carry, a porter's load
3. by extension : a container, as a basket, a pot (lo fóa kóngbá tí yá da kíríkírí : he smashed the household containers, i.e. pots, every which way) - see also sakpá, ta

kóngo N : 1. a mallet for pounding manioc - it is usually L-shaped, with a heavy head, and carved out of a single piece of hard wood
2. a hoe handle, either L-shaped and about eighteen inches long, or T-shaped and about ten inches long, and carved out of a single piece of hard wood

korogbó N : the scrotum - kénge is the penis - lungúla korogbó means to castrate - see téré 1

kopo* N : a container, usually relatively small and deep, in contrast with kolóngo which is broad and flat - see also kangú, ta

koróngo N : a type of fan palm (Borassus aethiopum Mart.) - the nut is eaten, and from various parts a kind of salt is made (sá) - from the leaves coarse mats and baskets are made

kóso V : to drag, to pull along - see also gbóta

kótá [kótá, kútá, kótá] An : 1. big, large, great, wide, broad, thick (kótá caisse só ahọ ndó ní : that big crate was too much) (yí só ake kótá yí : this is a big thing) (asára kótá wá da : they made a great fire there) (kótá ta : a large pot) (mbéni kótá ngú : a certain
kótá-kótá wâle

broad river) {kótá lége : a wide road} {Bangui aëke kótá kôtôrô :
Bangui is a big city} {kótá bôngbi ti âla : their large gathering}
- opp. kété 1 - vongoro means long, tall
2. a large amount, a large quantity (kótá nginza ti mo abuba awe :
your large amount of money has been wasted) - syn. mingi, opp kété 2
3. important, outstanding, significant, great, superior (só kótá
gbiá ti í : this is our great king) (lo éke kótá zo ti nži : he is
a great thief) (sbi fa na âla kótá koa ti inspecteur : I will show
you the important work of the inspector) (só kótá yí ahô kéré : that
is the most important thing of all) (só aëke kótá école : that is a
superior, i.e. higher-level school) (ála sâra kótá wâtákâ : they made
a great lie) (sbi goe na kótá yorô : I went to the great fetish)
- opp. kété 4

ekótá babá N : one's father's older brother - see famille for the kinship
system

ekótá géré N : thigh - see géré

ekótá íta N : an older sibling (kótá íla ti mérangé wâle ni alondó kâ :
the older sibling of this girl departed from there) - kótá zo 2
specifies an older brother - see famille for the kinship system

ekótá kôli N : an old man - syn. kângba - kótá wâle is an old woman,
while mbakôro and kótá zo include both sexes

ekótá lá : noon, mid-day - syn. midi - see heure for the divisions of the
day

kótá mabôko N : a thumb - see mabôko - not clearly distinguished in
pre-literate usage, the distinction came through French

kótá mamâ N : one's mother's older sister - see famille for the kinship
system

kótá pémbé N : a molar tooth - the characteristic verb for biting with
the molars is ngé, to crush - see also kété pémbé, pémbé

kótá wâle N : an old woman - mbakôro is a sexless term for an old person,
as is kótá zo, while kângba or kótá kâli refer to old men
kôtá zo N : 1. an older person, an elder, a member of a former generation, a dignitary (amú ngbéréná tiákótá zo só : he took the brass ornament of the older people) (ákótá zo aske na mbáge aussi ti té ngá : the elders were also on one side to eat) (ákótá zo tí kótáró : the elders or dignitaries of the village) - syn. mbakáro - see also kótará
2. one's older brother - see famille for the kinship system

dótará N : ancestor in general - frequently used in the plural (lége tíákótárá tí i adiminuer awe : the ways of our ancestors are now dwindling) (yí tí giriri só, kótárá tí i asára ... : those former things, which our ancestors used to do ...) (mbéni kótá kótárá tí i ... : a certain great ancestor of ours ...) - kótárá is less specific than báhá 2 or káká

koti* N : the right hand - the right hand is used for eating and for giving gifts - both hands must be used in receiving a gift - syn. mabóko tí kóli, opp. mabóko tí wále or gati - see mabóko

kôzo An : 1. first (kôzo masia tí mbi ... : my first, i.e. oldest, unmarried daughter ...)
2. also used as a syn. of kâzo ní (tene na mbi kôzo : tell me first)

kôzo ni Av : first, formerly - can occur before or after a verb or be joined to a noun by tí (kôzo ni ábabá tí i asára só : formerly our fathers did this) (mbi hinga lo kôzo ni : I knew him first) (yí tí kôzo ni : the former things) - kôzo ni is distinguished from giriri and ânde in expressing an ordinal idea

kó V : to pluck, as fruit or leaves (akó kugbé aléké na ndó ní : they plucked the leaves and arranged them on top of it)

kôá [kwá] N 1 : hair, bristle, fur, fuzz, feather (kôá tí lo avurú kôé : his hair is all white) (kôá tí makongó só kôé agbé : the fuzz of the caterpillars is all burned off) - see also kôá lí, kôá lë, kôá ngbagba, kôá tí téré, kôá vángá, kôá tí ndéké

kôá [kwá] N 2 : 1. death, in the global or general sense (kôá agá amú lo : death came and took him) (mbité tí kôá amú mbi pçé, ngbangatí mbi
ekè zo tí kòá : the fear of death does not seize me, because I am a man of death, i.e. mortal - kúí N 1 refers to an instance or act of death - see also toto kòá

2. a human corpse, a cadaver (álá mú kòá tí mérèngé só, ála lú lo : they took the corpse of this child and buried him) - kúí N 2 refers to the dead bodies of animals - a living human body is téré

kòa [kwá] N 1 : work, job, task, employment (álá sára kòa tí yáká : they did agricultural work) (álá manda kòa ní : they learned the job) (lo lóndó na kòa lo kírí na da : he left the job and returned home) (kòa tí mbunzú aso zo mingi : employment with a white man hurts people a lot) - syn. kusára

kòa [kwá] N 2 : a message - used in the expression to kòa - Protestants sometimes use the neologism wa kòa to speak of a messenger, i.e. a preacher

kòá lé N : an eye lash - tí can intervene - see also ngéki lé

kòá li N : hair of the head - tí can intervene (tongana mo mérèngé mo má yángá tí babá tí mo pèpè, lá ñko kòá li tí mo agá vurú pèpè : if you as a child don't obey your father, your hair will never become white, i.e. you will never live to an old age)

kòá ngbagba N : the beard - most African men have a sparse beard, which they shave - mature men sometimes wear chin beards

kòá tí ndékè N : a feather

kòá tí téré N : body hair

kòá yángá N : whiskers, moustache - a few men wear moustaches (tongana mérèngé akpíngba kóli awe, kòá yángá tí lo acommencer tí sì gígi : when a boy becomes a mature man, then his whiskers begin to grow out)

kóda N : a debt, an obligation of a material nature, often arising out of social relationships - debt incurred through credit purchase or the taking of a loan is called bon N

koko N : a kind of edible leaf (Cnetum africanum Welw.) (mó zía da kpí
tì sindì, na mafuta na kòkò na oignon, si mò ìlà̀ kòzonì mò tè : you put in sesame paste, and oil and kòkò greens and onions, so as to make it good to eat) - see kugbé for a list of edible leaves

kokora N : an arrow (gbà tì kokora : a bundle of arrows) - the shaft of the arrow is usually made of a special thin straight reed - the tip, barbed or unbarbed, is of iron or hard wood, fastened to the shaft by means of wound strips of raw latex - no feather is used - sindì is the bow - see zembe for a list of weapons

kòli [kòli, kòri, kòli, kòri] N : 1. a man, as opposed to a woman or child (mbì gà kòli : I have become a man) (kobéla só asàra kòli, asàra wàle, asàra mèrèngé kòé : this sickness affects men, it affects women, it affects children also) (fadesò áwàle afàa yákà lège ọkọ tongana kòli : nowadays women make fields just like men) - opp. wàle 1, mèrèngé 2. a husband (ála tèn ála eke mù kòli gi na kétè yorò tì bata tèré : they are saying that they get husbands just with the little charm that protects their bodies) (ámbèni wàle ayí títìns, ákòli ti ála afònọ pèpè : some women don't want their husbands to roam around) (aṣàṣà kòzonì wàle agonda ndéko tì lo na kòli tì lo ? : is it proper for a woman to praise her lover before her husband?) - opp. wàle 2 - see also mariage, marier 3. a male, human or animal, usually used to qualify some other noun (mèrèngé tì kòli, mèrèngé kòli : a male child, a boy) (ìta tí mbi tì kòli : my male sibling, my brother) (kòli dole, kòli tì dole : a male elephant) (kòli kòndo : a rooster) - opp. wàle 3

kòli pendere N : a young man, a youth, a male adolescent - used especially in songs - the more generally used syn. is pendere kòli - see also for contrast kpìngba kòli, pendere wàle

kòndo N : a domestic chicken - chickens are universally domesticated, but eggs are rarely used as food and chickens are killed for food only on ceremonial or important occasions - they are rather a form of wealth, like goats, and are used for gifts to important people and for sacrifices - they are not fed, but forage for themselves during the day and are kept either in the house or in a special coop at night -
wále kóndo is a hen, kóli kóndo a rooster, mérangé kóndo a chick, párâ kóndó an egg

kóngba N 1: a frog - syn. bianga

kóngó [kóngó, kóngó] N: a rainbow (kóngó asi gigí na devant tì mbínda: the rainbow appeared in front of the cloud)

kóngó N 2: a shout, a yell - usually used in dé kóngó

konó N: a hippopotamus - found in the Oubangui, the Sangha, and a few other large rivers

kono [kono, kono, kono] V: to be or become big, to grow in size, to grow up (yá tí mbi asûku, akono tongana ballon: my stomach swelled up, it became big like a balloon) (mérangé tí mbi akono tongana só ká: my child is as big as that one there) (mbi kono na Bangassou: I grew up in Bangassou) (mo gá zo só m kono mbiriambiri: you have become a person who grew properly, i.e. who developed normally) (fadé kótóró tí Bangui ake kono ánde: the city of Bangui will get big soon) - opp. nge - súku means to swell

kónóngó N: size, growth - also big (só kónóngó ní: that is a big one) - see kótá - from kono

kóró N: a cold, especially one accompanied by a running nose and/or sneezing - see kobéla

kóro V: to dig into so as to make a hole, to pierce, to bore (mbi kóro dú: I dug a hole) - ní emphasizes the digging action rather than the resulting hole, while kpo is to puncture rather than to dig or bore

kóso N: 1. any of several plants cultivated for their oily edible seeds (Citrullus vulgaris Schrad., Lagenaria vulgaris L., or Cucumeropsis Manii Nand.) - mbéréké also refers to at least one of these
2. the seeds of any of these plants (mo gá na kóso, mo yóro mo píka na yá tí kpu: you bring the kóso seeds, you fry them and pound them in the mortar) - kóso may be extension be used to refer to any edible oily seed, syn. kpi N 1
koto N: a foundation of beaten earth about a foot high on which some peoples, e.g. the Kârê, traditionally built their houses - see da - the more general term for a foundation is géré ti da

koto V: to scratch, as with the fingernails (lo koto mbi na nzene ti mabôko: he scratched me with his fingernails) - ñsa means to dig in, kpaka to scrape with an instrument

kôtôrô [kôtôrô, kôdôrô, kôtrô, kôdồ] N: any organized and settled human community which inspires loyalty and a feeling of belonging: a homestead, a village, a town, a city, a tribal community, a nation - especially one's own home community (kôtôrô ayô mingi: the village is far away) (makanzi veni acommander kôtôrô: it is the chief who rules the village) (mbi kiri na kôtôrô: I returned to my home community) (Bangui ake kótâ kôtôrô: Bangui is a big city) (kôtôrô ti République Centrafricaine ake gá ânde kótâ kôtôrô: the Central African Republic nation will soon become a great nation) (ála girisa yi ti kôtôrô awe: they have forgotten the things of the community, i.e. the traditional customs) (na kôtôrô ti i na Gbanu, ake tongasô: in our community the Gbanu (a tribal unit), it is like this) - in contrast with sése, the land, and ngonda, the bush or wilderness - see goe kôtôrô, zo ti kôtôrô

kôya [kôya, kwîya] N: 1. an uncle, especially one's mother's brother - syn. âû 1 - see famille for the kinship system 2. used as a term of respect in addressing an older man - syn. âû 2

kpa V: to resemble (mô kpa babâ ti mó: you resemble your father)

kpaka V: to scrape with a tool or instrument (mô kpaka kii ti makongô ngbangâtî agbô gô ti mó: scrape the fuzz off the caterpillars so it doesn't catch in your throat) - ñsa means to dig in with the hands, koto to scratch as with the fingernails

kpalakongo* N: a scorpion - see voma for a list of insects and arachnids

kpangba* N: a temporary structure of poles supporting a thatched roof, a shed such as is used to shelter mourners and the corpse at a funeral
kpángbálá ñn : flat - applied to dishes and to land (kpángbálá sëmbé : a flat plate) (kpángbálá sëse : flat land, a plain) - for a flat dish, see also kolóngoe

kpángbala n : a machete - syn. coupe-coupe, nzenze

kpángbi* n : the wing of a bird (kóndo abóngbi âmérângé tì lo na kpángbi tì lo : the hen gathers her chicks under her wings)

kpé [kpé, kpê] v : to run, to run away, to run away from, to flee (lo ekê kpé na gáré : he is running on foot) (lo kpé na vélo mëgë : he ran fast on a bicycle) (i tomba pekô tì âdole ngbii, âla kpé awe : we chased after the elephants for a while, but they had run away) (âBambinga akpé dole pëpë : the Pygmies don't run away from elephants) (lo kpé tì goe bâa kâmba tì lo : he ran to go see his snare) (auto ní akpé alíngbi pëpë : the car ran too fast, or very fast) - see also kpé lórô, kpé mbîto - used in li ...

kpé kóli v : of a woman : to run away from her husband, to divorce him - if she takes the initiative, she leaves - if he does, he chases her away, tomba wâle - syn. kp kóli, zìa kóli - see also mariage, marier

kpé lórô v : to race, to run fast (mbi na ála, i sâra ngiá, i kpé lórô : they and I, we had fun, we raced) (mo hînga tì kpé lórô pëpë : you don't know how to run fast) - see also gbîma ndoko

kpé mbîto v : to fear, to be afraid, to flee for fear, to respect, to reverence (âzo tì kôtôrô akpé mbîto tì lukundù mìngi : the villagers fear witch spirits greatly) (kózo ní mbi kpé mbîto tì ambunzû : formerly, I used to fear white men)

kpere* n : a kind of antelope of the genus Cephalophus - see yìmà tì ngonda

kpí [kpí, kpê] v : to be or become sour, to ferment (âla fûru bëndô, sì tongana akpé awe, sì âla sâra hárâge : they mixed the mil with water, and when it had fermented, they made a distilled liquor of it) (kôbe ní akpé, tìtënë anzërë pëpë : the food is sour, that is it doesn't taste good) - së means to be bitter, nzërë to taste good or sweet
kpi}

1. any oily edible grain or seed (só mafuta aṣẹ da, tongana mọ ẹka, só kpi : whatever has oil when you crush it, that's kpi) - the most common grains so designated are kárako peanuts, koso and mbéréké the seeds of various kinds of squash-like plants, and sindi sesame

2. a paste made of any of these seeds and used as an ingredient in many sauces (mọ ọkẹ kpi tí sindi na kpu na yíngó tí basáńze : you pound the sesame paste in the mortar with home-made salt) - see kása, yabándá

kpikara N : a pangolin or scaly ant-eater (genus Manis) - with tere, the spider, a frequent character in fables (tongana zo andú kpikara, lo sára manière, alángó tongana lo kúi : when people touch the pangolin, he uses guile, and plays dead)

kpingba V : 1. to harden, to be or become hard, solid, firm (mbení kóbe só akpingba na yángá tí kpu aṣẹ pẹpẹ : there is no kind of food that can harden itself against the mouth of the mortar, i.e. that is hard enough to resist grinding in the mortar) (lo tẹ kpingba kóbe : he ate solid food) (pọpọto ní akpingba awe : the mud has hardened) - see gbọ 5, collér V, ngangó

2. to mature, as a person, animal, or plant (mọ kpingba awe : you have matured) (tongana kása akpingba awe, sí fadé i fáá : when the food plants mature, then we will harvest them) - see also kpingba kóli, ló ... kpingba, li ... kpingba - mọj speaks of the whole organism in the process of developing, while kpingba speaks of the end result or fruit

kpingba kóli N : a mature man (aṣẹ tí mú wále fadé fadé na mérängé ní pẹpẹ, mais abata lo jusqu'â, tongana mérängé ní agá kpingba kóli awe : it is not (done) to give the woman immediately to the boy, but we keep her for a while, until the boy has become a mature man) - opp. pendere kóli

kpingbángó N : hard, mature (mbi yi kpingbángó ní : I want a hard one) - from kpingba
kpíngba wále N : an adult woman - opp. pendere wále

kpíngba zo N : a mature adult, in opp. to pendere adolescent, mérenge a child, and mbakóro an old person - see zo

kpítíkpíti Av : an ideophone used to intensify the verb vókó (ndó avókó kpítíkpíti : the place became pitch black)

kpó [kpó, kpó] Av : quiet, quietly, at rest, at peace (lo dutí kpó na kótóró : he remained quietly in the village) (mo zía mbi kpó : leave me in peace) - this last may be a gallicism on the model of laissez-moi tranquille - used usually with dutí

kpókpó N : a pipe for smoking - the traditional pipe has a baked clay bowl and a hollowed wooden stem, and is shaped somewhat like a Meerschaum pipe - mángá is the tobacco

kpoto N : a hat - syn. chapeau

kpo V : 1. to pierce, to puncture, to stab (ála kpo téré tí ála : they stabbed themselves (or each other)) (mbí kpo yáma na likongó : I pierced the animal with a spear) - kóró means to bore or dig through, zí 2 means to dig, and fáa means to cut
2. to plant cuttings by poking them into the ground - this is how manioc is planted
3. to poke small bundles of grass into place prior to tying them down to the framework of a roof (mbí fáa péré, mbi goe mbi kpo na ní kóé : I cut grass, and I went and poked it all in)
4. to string tobacco leaves before hanging them to dry - see mángá

kpóka N : a hoe - there are three types of traditional hoes : two have identical iron blades of roughly trapezoid shape, about seven inches long and four wide, with a socket into which a wooden handle is fitted, while the other has a narrower and thicker blade fitted onto a long handle and is used for digging holes - the first two are distinguished in that one has an L-shaped handle about eighteen inches long and is used with a chopping motion as person bends over while the other has a T-shaped handle ten inches long and is used with a shoving motion as person squats - see kóngó 2 - syn. ngáfó
kpo mo ngangó-kuí

kpo mo ngangó N : a kind of burr – see also sisi

kporo [kporo, kpolo] V : to bubble, to boil (ngú só aké na wá só, aké kporo : the water which is on the fire is boiling) (na ndá ní mo kporo lo, jusqu'à : in the end you boil it a while) – the same word describes the bubbling of carbonated beverages – tô means to cook by boiling

kpórôngó ngú N : boiled or boiling water – see ngú 1, ngú ti wá – opp. ngú tì dé

kpu N : a mortar, in which food is pounded (kárákô, gozo, ngunzá, café, yi só kòe mo píka gi na yá tí kpu : peanuts, manioc, greens, coffee, all these things you pound in the mortar) – the mortar is carved out of a single block of hardwood, and is shaped like a thick hourglass about fifteen inches high or more and twelve inches in maximum diameter – a pestle is used to crush grain and other foods in the mortar

kpu? Av : an ideophone expressing an explosive sound, as of a gun (ngombe ní atoto, kpu? : the gun sounded out, kpu?)

kú V : to wait, to wait for (ála língbi tí kú : you can wait) (ázo aké kú koa tí álá : the people are waiting for their jobs) (mbi ngbá tí kú tí má ndá ní : I remained to wait to hear the end of it) (mo goe kú mbi na lége : go wait for me on the road)

kugbé [kugbé, kukpé] N : 1. any kind of leaf from a plant – edible leaves or greens include gúsa, gbútú, koko, kawai, ngunzá, ngágo – see yabándé, kása
   2. by extension, a sheet of paper, a page (mo sára mbéti na ndó tí kugbé tí mbéti só : write on this sheet of paper)

kúi [kwí] V : to die (babá na mamá akúi awe : father and mother have both died) – used in lâ kúi – see also kúi N, kóá N 2

kúi [kwí, kwíi] N : 1. death, a specific instance of death (kúi aké da míngi : there are many deaths there) (mbi sára téné tí kúi tí lo : I spoke about his death) (lo payer kúi tí wále ní : he paid (damages) for the death of the woman) – kóá N 2.1 means death in general
2. the dead body of an animal - kóá N 2.2 means a human corpse
3. a wreck, as of a bicycle or automobile (kúi tí vélo : the wreck of a bicycle)

kúi nzala V : to be very hungry, to starve - see nzala ... fáa

kuku* V : to kneel - see also ba, dénge, zuku

kulá N : revenge, retaliation - used especially in fúta kulá, to avenge, to retaliate - in traditional custom, every injury occasioned resentment (vundú), which could not be appeased until vengeance had been made, by curse, by death, or by the payment of damages - a form of lex talionis was in operation

kúma N : a python - ngbó is any snake

kunde N : a sort of traditional guitar - see píka biá

kúngbi V : 1. to fold (kúngbi yá ní : fold it in the middle) - syn. ngombi
2. to break by bending, as a stick (kéké ní akúngbi : the stick broke)
{kúngbi kéké ní : break the stick} - see fáa for various related terms

kuní N : knee - less commonly used than genou

kúrú N : something thoroughly dried (kúrú tí susu : dried fish) {kúrú tí yçma : dried meat} {kúrú sése : arid land, desert} - see also ole, óléngó

kusára [kusára, kosára, kosára, kusála, kosála, kosála, gosára] N : work, job, task, employment {mbi ské zo tí kusára : I am a work (ing) man} {mo ské fúta lo kusára só lo ské sára na mo ngú otá só : you will pay him for the work he has done for you these three years} - syn. koa N

kutu N : a thousand - see óko for the number system

kutukutu N : an automobile {kutukutu akpé lóró : the automobile is running fast} - auto is sometimes restricted to passenger cars, while camion is a truck and autocar is a bus
lâ N : "the sun (âkôtarâ ti i asambéla kéké, na péré, na nzz, na lâ : our ancestors worshipped trees, and grass, and the moon, and the sun) (na lâ kûi, lâ tongasô, i goe : ix the late afternoon, the sun (being) like this (pointing), we went) — see kôtâ lâ, lâ kûi, lâ ... kûi, lâ ... lôndô
2. a day, 24-hour period, daylight, a date, the time when something happens (lâ ti dimanche : the Sunday-day, i.e. Sunday) (lâ ti vingt juin mil-neuf cent soixante-deux : the twentieth of June 1962) (lâ ti voter : election day) (lâ ti kôtâ bôngbi ti âla : the time of their great meeting) (mbi tenè lá ni na âla kôé ... : I said that day to you all ...) (lâ ni so mbi goe na kôtôrô ... : that day when I went home ...) — see lângô N 2 — the dating system includes the following terms:
bíri, yesterday
mbéni bíri, day before yesterday
kékéréke, tomorrow
mbéni kékéréke, day after tomorrow
lâ só, today
mbéni lá, lá 5ko, a certain day, one day
lá kôé, every day, always
in addition, the entire French dating system, including the names of the days of the week and months of the year and the French numeral system — see 5ko
laâ SP : emphatic and explanatory particle (nî laâ lo ëkë sâra matânga só : that's why he is making this celebration) (lo lângô na ndô ti sése míngi laâ : he has lived long on this earth, that's why) (gi téñé nî laâ : that's the matter right there) — (Grammar p. 152-155)
lait** [lës, dulé] N : milk, especially animal milk, canned milk or powdered milk as used in human nutrition — human mother's milk is


ngú tí me

lakérè N: a lateritic plateau - hence, any large flat rock, especially one on which manioc is pounded (wále ane fúku na lakérè: women pound flour on the flat rock) - these special rocks are community property

lá kóé N: daily, every day, always - reduplicated, it can simply emphasize the daily element, or it can mean forever (lá kóé, mbi te gli ngunzá: every day, I eat just greens) (lo toto ngbangatí mo lá kóé: he cries for you all the time) (lo eks changer bongó lá kóé lá kóé: he changes clothes every single day) (mo eks zo só mo eks na kobéla lá kóé lá kóé pepe: you're not the sort of person who's forever sick) - see lá 2 for the dating system

lá kúí N: late afternoon, sunset (lo eks sára na mo na ndá péréré, así na lá kúí: he works for you from early morning until sunset) - see heure for the divisions of the day

lá ... kúí V: sun ... set (lá akúí awe: the sun has already set) - opp. lá ... lóndó - see also lá 1, lá kúí - see heure for the divisions of the day

lá ... lóndó V: sun ... rise (lá alóndó awe: the sun has already risen) - see ndá ade, ndá péréré - opp. lá ... kúí - see heure for the divisions of the day

lampe** [lámpe] N: a lamp, especially a kerosene or gasoline pressure lamp or a wick lamp

lando [lando, lando] N: a grassy somewhat marshy or sometimes flooded plain, such as is frequented by herbivorous game - see ngonda, a general term for wilderness, péré, a grassy plain, and gbako, meaning a gallery forest

lángó V: 1. to sleep, to go to sleep, to lie down to sleep (na Takorongo, zo tí lángó na kótá lá tongasó aks pepe: in Takorongo, there is no one who sleeps at noon like that) (mamá até, mo toto pepe, mo lángó: mother says, don't cry, go to sleep) (lo sára manière, alángó tongana lo kúí: he used cunning, he lay down as if he had died) ( na
bí, mo eké lángó : at night, you sleep - sé téré means to recline - zìngó is to awaken
2. of things : to lie, to remain (mo zìa kóbe ní alángó : let the food remain there)
3. to live, to dwell, to reside, to remain (mbi lángó da, mbi sára ngû óko na Grimari : I lived there, I spent one year at Grimari) - see also du 2, dutí 2

lángó N : 1. sleep, rest, nap (lángó asára lé tí mbi : sleep affects my eyes, i.e. I'm sleepy) {só lángó tí koa laú pêpe ? : isn't that the rest (period) from work?} - see also hú téré
2. a day - used especially in counting the number of days {tèrè adutí na pêkó tì lo gi lángó óko sèngé : tèrè remained after he (left) just one day} {asára ká lángó míngi : he spent many days there}
{yoró óko na lángó tì lo : each (dose of) medicine on its day} - see lá 2

lá óko N : one day, a certain day, ever (lá óko, mbi tó ngunzô lége otá : on one day, I cooked greens three times) {mbení lá óko, aké tì fûta lo ? : has he ever refused to pay him?}

lá óko ... pêpe N : never (lá óko mo mú na mbi kóbe pêpe : never have you given me food) {akáí na kobéla só lá óko pêpe : they never cure this sickness}

lá só N : today (ála má éré tì álà lá só pêpe : you didn't hear your names today) - see lá 2 for the dating system

lángó na V : a euphemism : to have sexual intercourse with {káli alángó na wâle : the man slept, i.e. had intercourse, with the woman} - syn. gba

langue** [lânggar] N : the tongue - syn. méngá

lavû N : a bee - bees are kept in large, bullet-shaped hives, about six or seven feet long and over a foot in diameter, made of straw, in the forks of bush trees - the honey (ngû lavû, mafuta tî wôtoro) and the wax (mafuta tî wôtoro) are gathered and used or sold, as well as those
from wild bees - a kind of mead (duma) is made of the honey - syn. wótoro - see vóma for a list of insects

lá wa N : 1. what day, when (lo gá lá wa : when did he come?) - syn.

lá yë N : when, what day - syn. lá wa

lé [lé, lé, ré, ré] N 1 : 1. eye (lé ti lo óse kóé assó lo : both his eyes hurt him) (Bangui agá kótá kótó� na lé ti í : Bangui has become a big city in our eyes) - used in báa na lé, ngú lé, vókó lé, lé ... yì - see téré ¹

2. face (lo sukúla lé ti lo : he washed his face) (nzálá assára mbi tí báa lé ti mó : desire to see your face affects me i.e. I miss you) - used in nó lé, lé na lé, bínga lé ti, lé ... kpíngba, lé ndúzú - see téré ¹

3. presence (mbi eké ténè, na lé ti álà kóé ... : I'm saying, in the presence of you all ...) - na lé ti means in the presence of, befo ré - see na 3 - syn. gbé lé, devant

4. surface (lo sára mbétí na nó lé ti mbétí só : he wrote on the surface of the paper) - see also lé ti ngó

5. flat of the blade (lé ti zembe : the flat of a knife blade) - vángá is the edge of the blade

lé N 2 : seed, fruit (lé ti kóbe ndé ndé ake : there are various kinds of edible seeds (or fruits)) - see lé V - this term includes all of the edible grains and seeds, as well as all edible fruits : mil (bóndo, zuru), maize (nzó, gbánza), peanuts (kárako), sesame (sindi), various squash seeds (kóso, mbéréké), mango (mángó), etc. - most edible fruits are known by their French names (oranges, pineapples, papayas, etc.) - see lé ti kéké
lé [lé, lí] V : to bear fruit or seed (sé se ní aṣẹ nṣoni pèpè, alé pèpè : the soil is not good, it does not produce fruit) (kòkè tí sioní alé sioní : a bad tree bears bad fruit) - see lé N 2, lèngò

lége [lége, lége, rége, rége] N : 1. a path, a road (lége tí Paoua : the road to Paoua) (mò kù mbi na lége : wait for me on the path) (í gòe fàa lége : we crossed the road) (lo sí na yongóro lége : he arrived on a long (i.e. faraway) road) (í sára kótá lége : we made a wide road) (lo hündà lége tí Takorongo : he asked for the road to Takorongo) (mbéti tí lo angbá na lége : his letter is still on the road) (lo zìa likóngò na lége tí dole : he put a spear in the path of the elephant) - see kànga lége, mù lége, zìa ... na lége

2. manner, way, custom (yí só álá sára aṣẹ lége ní pèpè : what they have done is not the (right) way) (só lége ní laá : that's the (right) way there) (álá zìa lége tí ákótaará : they have left the customs of the ancestors) (álá girísa lége tí lèkè ta awe : they have lost the manner of making pots) (commandant akì lége ní awe : the district officer condemned this manner) - na lége tí/ní is a "prepositional expression" of means, manner, cause, and topic (abata lo gí na lége tí mè : she kept him (i.e. fed him) just by means of the breast) (í sára kóbe na lége ní pèpè : we did not make the food in the right way) (gendarme agá na lége tí zo tí nzí : the policeman comes on account of the thief) (na lége tí ákótaará tí í ... : concerning our ancestors ...) - see na 3 - see gí lége, kíŋga lége, fa lége, wara lége - of malin, manière, ndaráa

3. with a numeral : times (mbi báa lo lége otá : I saw him three times) - see lége 5ko

lége 5ko Av : 1. once, one time - see lége 3

2. together, the same, alike, in the same manner, at the same time

(abóngbi lége 5ko na ngunzá : you put it together with the greens) (wále afáa yáká lége 5ko tongana kóli : women make gardens in the same way as men) (í duti kóé lége 5ko : we stayed together) (Sango na Banda aṣẹ lége 5ko : Sango and Banda are alike)

lekpa [lekpa, rekpa] N : a small antelope, a sitatunga (Strepsiceros spekei)
lé ... kpingba-lé ... yí

lé ... kpingba V: to be or become mature, to mature (lé ti mbi acommencer)
kpingba awe: I had begun to mature - see kpingba

lélé N: a donkey, an ass - used primarily by Muslim ambulant traders and
herdsmen

lele N: a bush-tailed porcupine (genus Atherurus)

lé na lé Av: face to face (mbi tens na lo, lé na lé ...: I told him,
face to face ... ) - see lé N 1.2

lé ndüzú N: the sky - syn. ndüzú

lengé N: a certain dance for girls among the Yakoma, at which time their
front teeth are knocked out - this is a sort of initiatory rite (tongana
mo zi pëmbé ti mo sí mo lungúla pape, zo tì lengé apika li tì mo:
if you don't loosen your teeth so that they come out, the lengé
participants will hit you on the head) - see dòdò

lengé N 1: beads, especially a string of beads - kisi is the special
term for a string of beads to be worn about the hips - ngbéréná and
yì tì mé are other personal adornments

lengé* N 2: a type of creeping vine which is planted by the house and
used medicinally

léngô N: fruit, harvest increase, yield - from lé V - syn. lé N 2

lé tì kéké: any fleshy fruit grown on a tree, as the mango, etc. - see
lé N 2

lé tì ngú N: the surface of the water (bi ngú tì mo na lé tì ngú:
thrust your boat out on the surface of the water) (lé tì ngú ni asekē
kété: the surface of the river is narrow) - see lé N 1.4

lé tì wá N: a glowing coal (ndao agbé wé ni na lé tì wá: the smith
took hold of the iron in the coals) - pindiri refers to embers

lé ... yí V: to desire in a transitory and casual way (lé tì lo ayí
bongó só: he wants this garment) - bò ... yí is a much stronger
desire or love
leke \([\text{leke}, \text{leke}, \text{reke}, \text{rake}]\) \(V\) : 1. to make, especially in the sense of manufacture of fabricate \(\text{fadesò âwâle azía lége tì lêke tÀ : now the women have abandoned the manner of making pots}\) - \(\text{sàra}^1\) is a much broader term

2. to arrange, to organize, to set in order \(\{\text{mbi lêke yì kôé pendere : I arranged everything beautifully}\}\) \(\{\text{âmënî wâle ahînga tì lêke yà tì da tì ála : some women know how to organize the inside of their houses}\}\) \(\{\text{kàa tì mbi akë tì lêke ngbangà tì ázo tì kusàра na ámbunzà : my job is to fix up the problems of workingmen and white men}\}\) \(\{\text{i bôngbi na ála lége 5ko tì lêke kôtërò tì i : we get together with them to organize our country}\) - an extension of this sense is found in \(\text{lêke kôbe}\)

3. to repair, to fix \(\{\text{wè nì afàа sì ndao alêke : the iron broke, so the smith repaired it}\}\)

leke bê \(V\) : to change the mind, to repent \(\{\text{lo lêke bê tì lo : he changed his mind, he repented}\}\)

leke kôbe \(V\) : to prepare food - a more specific term meaning to prepare dough is \(\text{më kôbe}\) - see \(\text{leke}^2\)

leke na kàmba nì \(V\) : to arrange in a row, to set in order - see \(\text{leke}^2\)

leke téné \(V\) : to compose differences, to bring a disagreement or dispute to an end, to reconcile - see \(\text{sàra sóngò}\)

li \(V\) : to enter \(\{\text{î li na yà tì gbakò nì : we entered the gallery forest}\}\) \(\{\text{ngusú ali na têrë tì mbi kirikiri : chiggers entered into my body all over}\}\) - \(\text{si}\) means to arrive, \(\text{linda}\) to go down into - see also \(\text{gà}, \text{goe}\)

li \([\text{li}, \text{ri}]\) \(N\) : 1. head \(\{\text{âla pîka li tì mëränge sò : they beat the head of this child}\}\) \(\{\text{mò yù kpoto na li tì mò : wear a hat on your head}\}\) \(\{\text{âla yò kôngbà na li tì ála : they bore loads on their heads}\}\) \(\{\text{li tì ála akë mîngi pëpe : their heads (i.e. they) are not many}\}\) - see \(\text{bëа li}, \text{bôngbi li tì, hînga li tì, li ngà, li ... eke nrangò, li ... tìrë}^1\)

2. top \(\{\text{mbi tambéla na li tì bôngò sò : I walked on top of this cloth}\}\)
li-

{li ti hótó : the top of a hill} {li ti kéké : the top of a tree} -
na li ti means on top of, at the head of, in front of {mbi kék na
li ti gouvernement : I am at the head of the government} {mbi tambéla
na li ní : I walked out in front} - see na 3 - see li ti da, nó
li bé N : the part of the chest including the breasts - kate is the chest,
me the breast
li ... (kék) ngangó V : to be obdurate or stupid (ambéné só li ti álal
(a kék) ngangó, ála ngbá ti fáa zo : some who remain obdurate, they
are still killing people) - opp. li ... wóko
likongó N : a spear - usually about six feet long, with a hardwood shaft
(kéké) and a triangular iron blade (wé), either barbed or unbarbed -
the spear was traditionally used for big game, in conjunction with
nets (gbánda), while bows and arrows (gindi, kokora) were used for
small game - see gí yama - see zembe for a list of weapons
li ... kpé V : to be astonished {li ti álal akpé : they were astonished}
lí ... kpingba V : to be proud {li ti lo akpingba : he is proud} - see
also fandara, baba
linda [linda, lenda] V : to descend into, to enter, to be deep {álal
linda na yá ti ngú : they descended into the water} {zo tí lukundú
alinda na yá da tí camarade tí lo : the witch enters the house of
his comrade} {dí ní alinda míngi : the hole is very deep}
língbi [língbi, ríngbi, lénbi, límbi] V : 1. to suffice, to be adequate,
to attain the precisely exact measure {mbi tè, alíngbi na mbi péps :
I ate, it did not suffice for me} {tongana lo vô ti páta osió,
alíngbi lo : if she buys twenty francs' worth, it suffices her} {tongana
heure tí kiringó alíngbi awe ... : when the hour to return has arrived
precisely ...} {midi alíngbi awe : noon has come exactly} {kusára ake
míngi, mais âzo ní alíngbi péps : there is much work, but the people
do not suffice, i.e. there are not enough people} {alíngbi awe :
that's just enough} - see língbi péps
2. by extension : to be able, to be capable, can - sometimes, to be
lingbi (cont.)-li ... wóko

 obrigated {gí Nzapá ọko alíngbi tí sára só : only God can do that} (yoró ní alíngbi tí lingbi pẹpẹ : the medicine cannot be enough) {mbi língbi tí sára búbá da pẹpẹ : I cannot (or, I must not, I dare not) play the fool in it} {ála língbi tí kú : you can wait} {kóbe ní akpí, alíngbi tí títẹn anzẹrẹ pẹpẹ : the food is sour, it cannot be said to taste good} {fádé i língbi tí títẹn, i lekẹ kótóró tí í : we will be able, so to speak, to organize our nation} - in Protestant usage, a sort of pseudo-impersonal expression of obligation preceding the main clause has been formed with this verb, which is not standard usage {alíngbi mo sára : you must do it}

língbi pẹpẹ V : to fail to attain the precise and exact measure, either by insufficiency or by excess - hence, to be insufficient, to exceed - in the latter sense, this is used as a sort of strongly superlative expression {da ní agbí ká, alíngbi pẹpẹ : houses burned there, beyond measure, i.e. a great many houses} {ála goe tiri ká ngbíi, alíngbi pẹpẹ : they went and fought there a while, with great excess} - see also hí ndó

li ngú N : a spring of water

li tí da N : the roof of a building - two models are common : the conical and the hip roof - both consist of poles (kéké) resting either on the wall poles only or on these and special center poles, tied at the top either to each other or to a ridgepole - between the sloping poles, at intervals of about eight inches, are bamboo poles (bambou 2) - across all these, at four-inch intervals, are tied long flexible reeds (sosongo), and to these are tied the small bundles of grass (péré, bebé) - the framework is called gágárá

li tí mabóko N : shoulder - syn. ndó tí mabóko - see mabóko

li ... tourner** [turnée] V : to go crazy, to become demented {li tí lo atourner : he has become demented}

li ... wóko V : to be smart, to be capable of learning, to be open to learning {li tí lo awóko : he is smart} - opp. li ... (ẹkẹ) ngangó
io9 lo-lukundû

lo P : third person singular pronoun, predominantly for animate beings

(Grammar p. 135-137) (lo pousser ngó na le tí ngú : he (or she)
propelled the boat on the surface of the water) (babá aténé na lo ... :
father told him (or her)) (da tí lo : his (or her) house) (só tí lo :
this is his (or hers)) - see mbi for the pronominal system

lógo N : a taste, a sample {mû na mbi lógo, mbi tara mbi bâa : give me
a taste, I'll try it and see} - see tara

lombé N : a conqueror, a hero in combat, a valiant man

lóndó [lóndó, lúndú] V : 1. to rise, to arise, to get up (kóya, mo lóndó :
uncle, get up) - opp. lângó V 1, sé - see lá ... lóndó
2. to depart, to leave - used only in a locative sense (mbi tomba
Kamara lá wa, lo lóndó, lo vení : I did not drive away Kamara, he left,
himself) (lo lóndó na koa : he left work) (lo lóndó tí goe na berá :
he departed to go to war) (mo pîka mbérêkê, pérô ní alóndó : you pound
the squash seeds, and the husks leave (i.e. loosen)) - syn. quitter,
zia 2 - see goe 3 - opp. gá. sí

lo* V : to gather up, to pick up one by one, to select {tongana káráko
atúku na sése, mo lo na place ní : when the peanuts spill on the ground,
you gather them up} (lo nzoni ní : select the good ones)

lokpoto N : a kind of beer made of sprouted corn - see samba for a list
of alcoholic beverages

lóró N : speed - used in kpé lóró, zia lóró da

lósù [lósù, lóso, rósù, rósò] N : rice - a kind of mountain rice is
cultivated as a secondary crop in a few parts of the Central African
Republic, but rice does not constitute a significant part of the
indigenous diet

lú V : to plant, to bury (lo lú káráko : he planted peanuts) (ála lú
kóá tí mérêngé ní : they buried the body of the child)

lukundû [lukundû, rukundû, likundû] N : a witch spirit (lukundû ake

lukundû, ála sí gigí, ála goe tí te méné tí zo : the witch spirit
is like a very small animal, it is inside a person, so that at night, the person and his body and the spirit, they go to eat the blood of people) {lo mú kéké, lo dé bá da mingi, lo tæn æzo tî lukundû, tongana álà si gígí na bì, fadé kéké só afáa álà : he takes a stick, he swears over it a great deal, he tells the witches that if they go out at night, this stick will kill them} {tongana mo ekâ na lukundû pépe, mo lîngbi tî hînga zo tî lukundû pépe : if you do not have a witch spirit, you cannot know (i.e. recognize) a witch} - the witch spirit is conceived of as possessing and controlling an individual without his consent, so that he is in a real sense not responsible for the actions of the witch spirit - the lukundû is thought to cause many illnesses and deaths by eating either the liver or the blood of the victims - the witch is zo tî lukundû

lungúla [lungúla, lungéla, longéla] V : to remove, to take away, to open, to demolish {álà lungúla kii nî : they removed the thorns} {mbi lungúla pémbé tî mbi : I removed my teeth} {álà yî tî lungúla gouvernement na mabôko tî mbi : they want to take the government away from my hands} {lo lungúla lé tî kóli só : he opened the eyes of this man} {álà lungúla ngbéré da nî na sése : they demolished the old building}

lungúla korogbô V : to castrate

lutí V : to stand, to stand up - see also lónó r - opp. dutí, långó V
má [má, máá, mé] V : 1. to hear {mbi má téné tê yí só ngâ : I have heard the report of this matter also} {mo má gô tî âmakâko ni : you hear the voices of the monkeys} {mbi má atene mo ekô na méréngé : I have heard it said that you have a child} {mbi má álâ awe : I have heard you} - bâa 1.2 is another verb of sense perception of much broader scope
2. to listen, to give heed, to pay attention {álâ má fadesô terê ni : listen now to the fable} {álâ má mbi fadesô : pay attention to me now} - syn. gengi mé - see also má yângâ
3. to understand, to comprehend {mo má awe ? : do you understand?} {mbi má awe, Monsieur : I understand, sir} {mbi má Sango mbirimbirî pepe : I don't understand Sango thoroughly} - see má ndâ, bâa 5

ma SP : particle of emphasis and insistence (Grammar p. 147-148) {ni laâ ma : that's it, precisely!} {mo tûku mbéni na lo ma : pour him some, why don't you} {kôli ti mo ayi mo pepe ma : your husband doesn't love you, undoubtedly} {mo diminuer ngéré ni na mbi ma : come on, bring down the price for me!}

má ... bé V : expression coined by the Protestant missions and used in their Bible translations to denote believe, have faith - thus, má bé becomes faith, ma na bé means to believe, wa má bé is a believer - this is not consistent with Sango word and phrase formation and is not part of standard Sango - zía bé is the standard equivalent

mabóko [mabóko, mabóko, mabóko] N : 1. hand, wrist, arm, wing (of bird) {fadé mbi gbô mabóko tî lo : I will grip his hand} {lo mú kpôka na mabóko tî lo : he took the hoe in his hand} {yîro mabóko na ndûzu : hold up your hand} {asára taâ na mabóko tî lo : he did it with his own hands} {azia gouvernement na mabóko tî lo : they put the government into his hands} {mbi tê kôbe na mabóko tî lo : I eat food from his hand, i.e. through his kindness} {tongana mabóko tî lo ayí da pepe
fadé asára yę : if his hand (i.e. he) does not agree (to do it), what will be done?) (asáru mabóko ti lo : he cut open (i.e. vaccinated) his arm) (mabóko ti ndake ní afáa : the wing of the bird is broken) -
syn. ti - kpéngbi is a more specific word for the wing of a bird - see also ndó ti mabóko, li ti mabóko, mabóko ti kóli, mabóko ti wále, gbá ti mabóko, kétá mabóko, kétá mabóko, nzené ti mabóko, vá ti mabóko - see téré.

2. a handle (gbara aké mbéni mará ti kopo só mabóko ní aké da : the frying pan is a kind of container which has a handle)

mabóko ti kóli N : the right hand - syn. koti - see also mabóko, mbáge ti kóli
mabóko ti wále N : the left hand - syn. gati - see also mabóko, mbáge ti wále

machine** [masiin] N : any kind of machine - the term is used most frequently in referring to sewing machines, typewriters and spring traps, which are otherwise called by their full French names

madame** [madâam] N : lady, madam, Mrs. (madame só ahínga ti lókè yá da ti lo nzoni : this lady knows how to fix up the inside of her house) - see monsieur

mademoiselle** [madamwazétl] N : a single lady, Miss

máfuta [máfuta, mafota, mafata] N : oil, fat, grease (mo zía máfuta na kóko na oignon da kóé, sí mo te : you put in fat and greens and onions, then you eat it) {lo gà na lá kúi, bongó ti lo gí máfuta : he comes (home) in the evening, his clothes are greasy all over} {so só aké máfuta wíngi : this person is very fat} - the most common cooking oil is máfuta ti káráko, peanut oil - in the southern forest zone, bingbá máfuta, palm oil, is often used, while in the north máfuta ti báláwá or shea butter is used

máfuta ti báláwá N : a buttery fat made from shea nuts and used as a cooking fat, especially by Muslims and West Africans and those who have been influenced by them (mo vo máfuta ti báláwá, mo tuku na yá
ngunza ni, mo to na ni ngbi n ko : you buy shea butter, you put into the greens, and you cook it all together for a while}

mafuta ti kara ko N : peanut oil - the most common cooking oil in the Central African Republic - the Kar of the Bozoum area, among others, have developed a fairly important commerce in peanut oil made by traditional methods.

mafuta ti wotoro N : 1. honey - syn. ngu lavu
2. beeswax

magasin** [magazin] N : a store, a storehouse, a warehouse (kozo ni mbi ke gerant ti magasin : formerly I was the manager of a store) - syn. da ti magasin

mai [mai, mai] V : to grow, to develop - used primarily of plants (tongana se se ni aske nzoni ti lu ko be da si, ko be ni alingbi ti mai : when the soil is good for planting food, then the food can grow) - kpingba 2 refers primarily to the end result of the growth process, and more specifically to the fruit rather than to the whole plant

maire** [meir] N : the mayor of an organized city - in colonial days, an appointed official, now elected - see ville, also republique

mais** [me] C : and, but - used only to join clauses or sentences (Grammar p. 68-69), where it is syn. with na (m人都 asara mbana na lo, mais lo kpé : the youth was being idle for him, and then he ran away) (lo sara tené sioni mingi na li ti mo, mais mo hinga pepe : he says many evil things about you, but you don't know) - et, et puis are syn. but much less common

makako [makako, nakako] N : any kind of monkey (superfamily Cercopithecoidea) - ngu is a colobus monkey, baková a baboon, makako ti bingba a red or patas monkey, and vuru makako another kind, unidentified

makako ti bingba N : a red monkey, a patas monkey (Erythrocebus patas)

makala N : a kind of fritter made of European wheat flour fried in deep fat, filled with either hot pepper or sugar, and sold as a snack in
makala (cont.)-malin

markets all over the Central African Republic

makongô [makongô, makongô] N : a caterpillar - some kinds are used in making a number of sauces {âmamá agoe na ngonda tí gi makongô : the mothers go into the bush to hunt for caterpillars} {ála zía makongô na yá tí sakpá, ála túku lè tí wá na ndó ní, kíí ní agbí kóé : they put the caterpillars into a basket, and dump in glowing coals, and the fuzz is all burned off} - see kága, kóbe - see vomr for a list of insects

makorô N : slander, betrayal - see sára makorô

makunzi [makunzi, makanzi, mokonzi] N : 1. a chief, especially a village chief or the chief of a petty administrative unit {tongana í faa yáma ave, í mú mbéni, í mú na makunzi : when we've killed an animal, we take some (meat) and give it to the chief} - gbiá refers to a king, kapita to a subordinate chief, the headman of a settlement or homestead - because in colonial times the administration selected village chiefs with little understanding of traditional power structures and the mechanisms of power transfer, and because the chiefs became often little more than flunkies of the alien administration, they were often despised by the people - in some cases, the real traditional chiefs concealed their identity to avoid serving in this demeaning role - as a result, the institution of chieftainship is moribund, especially since independence
2. by extension, a leader or chief in any domain, a political boss {mbí ské fadesó makunzi tí áfonctionnaire : I am now the boss of the civil service}

malade** [maláde, maráde] N : illness, sickness, disease {malade aaké na undo só míngi : there is much sickness here} - kobéla and malade are syn. to such an extent that they are interchangeable in all usages and environments

malin** [malée] N : cunning, skill {mo híngga malin ní pepe, sí mo sára samba : you don't know the skill to make beer} - syn. ndaráa, manière, lége 2
malínga N: any dance of European origin or in the European style (lo dô malínga: he danced a European dance) - syn. nylon 1 - coller N refers especially to the close physical contact between the sexes in the European dance - dôdô is a general term for all dances

mamá N: mother, in a biological and social sense - usually accompanied by a specifying complement (mamá tí mbi akúi: my mother has died) (mamá agá amú mbi akirí na kótórí tí aú tí lo: mother came and got me and returned to her uncle's village) - see babá 1, famille 2, usually plural: collectively, the members of the mother's clan, including maternal ancestors (fadé ámamá tí mbi aténé mbi eké zo tí búbá: my maternal clansmen will say I am a fool) - see babá 2

3. usually with some specifying complement: a member of one's mother's clan, especially one's mother's sisters - kété mamá is her younger sister, kótá mamá is her older sister - see babá 3

4. used honorifically of an older woman, especially one's hostess (tongana méc fonc na mbéni zo méc éré lo mamá tí gonda lo, mais taá mamá pepe: when you are visiting someone, you call her mother to honor her, but (she is) not a real mother) - see also áta 3, babá 4, aú 2, kóva 2

mamá ... (eké) ndé An: added to babá śko, specifies a half-sibling (íta tí mbi, babá śko, mamá (aeké) ndé: a sibling, one father but the mother (is) different, i.e. a half-sibling) - cf. mamá śko

mamá śko An: added to babá śko, specifies a full sibling (íta tí mbi, babá śko, mamá śko: my full sibling) - cf. mamá ... (eké) ndé

mamá tí clé N: a lock - mérengé tí clé is a key - see also clé

mamá tí mápa N: yeast, of the kind used in baking bread - sái is the kind used in brewing bíríbíri, a kind of beer

mamá tí ngo N: a pregnant woman

má ndá V: to understand fully {zia mbi má ndá ni bíání: let me understand it fully} {fadesó mbi má ndá ni awe: now I understand it fully} - this means to get the essence of a matter - see also má 3, bâa 5
manda V : to learn (tongâna mbunzû asi na lége ti coton, wâle acommencer ti sâra yákâ, acommencer ti manda : when white men came with the practice of cotton, women began to make fields, they began to learn) {âla manda koa nî : they learned the job} - see also gi lége, hînga lége, hînga

mânga N : 1. tobacco, cigarette - tobacco is grown locally in small family fields, and is cured by traditional methods and smoked in a pipe, or made into cigarettes in a factory (zo só ayî mânga : this person is smoking (lit. sucking) tobacco) - see kpô 4, kpôkpô, yô

mangbéré N : a portion of manioc crushed with water, wrapped in leaves, and roasted or boiled - mangbéré are sold as snacks in markets all over the Central African Republic

mângo N : a mango tree or fruit - mangoes are one of the commonest of all fruits in the Central African Republic

manièère** [manyêér, maniyêr, moniyêr, monyêr, mayêr, moniyêre, mayêre] N : way, manner, skill, ability, cunning, guile, wiles (kôli ayî tí dutî, manière aekê pêpê : the man wanted to stay, but there was no way) {mo fa na mbi manièère ti koa só : show me the skill of this job} {lo hînga manièère ti kpîkara nî kózo pêpê : he did not know before the pangolin's manner (of acting)} {zo wa si aekê na manièère ahî ita nî lo ? : which one had more cunning than his comrade?} {fadê mbêni zo agâ na manièère, atene nî eke taâ zo tî Nzapâ : some people will come with guile, claiming to be really God's people} {lo gi manièère tî nzi : he sought the cunning to steal} {mo hînga manièère ti wâle aksa ndé ndé pêpê ? : don't you know that the wiles of women are various?}
- syn. lége 2, malin, ndarâa - see also sâra manière

manceuvre** [manâvre, manivâre] N : a laborer, an unskilled workman

manquer** [mâkê, mañkêe] V : to fail, to be missing, lacking, or absent, to overlook (yî amanquer i na ndo só pêpê : nothing is lacking for us here) {i mú wângô ni titene âla manquer pêpê : we give you this notice so that you won't be absent} {âla manquer mbi na sambéla tî
mápa [mápa, mämpa] N : bread - used also of some local approximations of bread made from manioc - see also mangbéré, makala

mará N : a classificatory term: kind, sort, type, clan, tribe, nationality

marier** [mariyée] V : to marry - more common expressions are: for the man, mû wâle, for the woman, mû kâli, goe na da tí kâli - expressions meaning to divorce are: zîa wâle, zîa kâli, kë wâle, kë kâli, tomba wâle, kpé kâli (the last two reflecting virilocal residence) - divorce is a complicated and disruptive procedure, because proper arrangements must be made regarding repaying the bride-price, and also regarding the children

marmiton** [marmitôp] N : a kitchen flunky, usually a young boy who does
the menial and subordinate kitchen tasks - he is the lowest ranking
and the lowest paid domestic employee - syn. kéte bôi - see also bôi
másarâgba N: a rhinoceros - rare in the Central African Republic
masía N: an unmarried girl, a bachelor girl, especially a young one
(mbi ngbá kéte masía, mbi yí tì goe na école: I remained a young
unmarried girl, I wanted to go to school) - kombâmba is a male
bachelor, but the specific indication of youth is absent - pendere
wâle is a general term for a young girl, a female adolescent
matabísi N: a gift, a gratuity, a tip, a bribe (só mbi vo yâma awe só,
mo zìa da mbèni kéte matabísi ma; now that I've bought the meat,
throw in a little gift, won't you)
matânga N: a celebration, a holiday (matânga só ngbangatí lo sâra ngú
bale otá na ndó tì sése: this celebration is because he has lived
thirty years on the earth) - fête refers more specifically to a
religious or legal holiday, while matânga emphasizes the festive and
gay atmosphere and speaks often of personal or family celebrations
mawa N: 1. suffering, specifically misery (zo tì mawa: a miserable
person, a pitiable person) (kobéla só asâra mawa míngi: this sickness
causes much misery) - see also finôo, nàsi, sànà
2. pity, compassion, mercy (mawa agbó mèrèngè só: pity seized this
youth) - see bè nzonì, mawa ... gbô
mawa ... gbô V: to have pity, to pity, to be merciful, to have compassion
(mawa agbó lo: pity seized him, i.e. he pitied) - see also sâra mawa 2
má yângâ V: to obey (tongana mo eke mèrèngè, ake tènè tì mo tì mà yângâ
ti babá tì mo, na tì mâ yângâ tì mamá tì mo: when you are a child,
it is your business to obey your father and to obey your mother)
mbá N: a compatriot, a fellow-citizen (âmbéni mbunzû, âla sâra kusâra
na i, ngbangatí só âla ngá, âla eke mbá tì i: some white men, they
work with us, because they too are our compatriots) - by extension,
anyone with whom one may have a cordial working relationship -
camarade and ndêko suggest intimacy, fô is a co-worker, ndôé is
someone having the same name as oneself

mbadì N: divination - see bâa mbadì, sâra mbade - zéké is the act of telling fortunes, as with cards

mbâge N: side, direction - used with na 3: beside, on the side, at the side, toward, at {zìa mbéni yama nì na mbâge: put some of the meat to one side} {ámérêngé akè na mbâge tì te: the children were to one side to eat} {mo dénge gò ti mo na mbâge tongasô: you bend your neck to one side like that} {na mbâge kà: in that direction, over there} {mbi lângô na mbâge tì mamà tì mbi: I lived over at my mother's} {na mbâge tì ngú kà: over toward the river} {na mbâge tì i akè tongasô: at our (place) it is like that} - téré suggests a closer and more intimate relationship

mbâge tì kóli N: the right side - see also mabôko tì kóli

mbâge tì wàle N: the left side - see also mabôko tì wàle

mbakôro N: an old person - syn. kótà zo - kóli or wàle can be added to specify sex - kângba is an old man - age confers prestige, authority, and dignity - see also vieux, zo

mbamba N: 1. oysters, which are found in the larger rivers, but not eaten 2. lime made by roasting oyster shells and used to whitewash buildings {zìa mbamba na da.: put whitewash on the house} - vurú sâse is a white clay which is also used to whitewash buildings

mbânâ [mbânà, mbâlâ] N: deliberate or malicious idleness or laziness, malingering, featherbedding, avoiding work on a false pretext, lack of integrity {mérêngé nì asára mbânà na lo, lo kpé awe: the youth had been purposely idle for him, and then he ran away} {lo te kôbe tì mbi gî na mbânà: he eats my food in an idle, unappreciative way} - goigói lacks the element of purpose or malice

mbândako N: a canoe race - see ngô

mbângbâ N: cheek - lé N 1.2 is the whole face

mbângbâ N: cheek - lé N 1.2 is the whole face

mbange* N: marijuana {lo yî mbange: he smoked marijuana} - the use of
marijuana is almost entirely an urban phenomenon, predominantly among the youth

mbéni A11: 1. certain, a certain, some, other, another, any (mbéni sioni kobéla : a certain bad disease) (mbi má gi na yángá ti mbéni zo ti kótóro : I heard it just from a certain villager) (i hínga mbéni yí 5ko té sára pèpè : we don't know any one (i.e. a single) thing to do) (lo mú mbéni nginza ti kóbe : he took some of the food money) (Ambéni vàle ayí kíli ti álá afônó pèpè : certain women don't want their husbands to roam about) (afáa mbéni zo ti kótóro, ákóá otá tongasó : it killed certain villagers, (there) were about three deaths) (mo goe na mbéni náo : you went to another place) (Nzapá amú na mbi mbéni fini mérengé : God gave me a new child) - ndé means different - the two can co-occur, with the meaning another (mbéni yí ndé : another, different thing)
2. with verbs : again, any more (mbéni, mo mú kóbe ní : again, you
take the food} (papa aëkë mbéni pëpe : there are not any (i.e. no)
more quarrels) (mbi goe ká mbéni : I went there again) - syn. encore
has in addition the meanings of still, yet - the two can co-occur
{mbi yí lo encore mbéni pëpe : I no longer like him}

mbéni bðí N : day before yesterday - see lá for the dating system
mbéni kékéréke N : day after tomorrow - see lá for the dating system
mbéni lá N : a certain day, one day, some day (tongasó mbéni lá mbi
goe tì te mbéni mará tì kòbe : so one day (or, on a certain day) I
went to eat another kind of food) - syn. lá 5ko - the two can be
telescoped (mbéni lá 5ko, lé tì lo óse kòé aëkë so lo : one day, both
her eyes hurt her)
mbéreké N : an oily edible seed - syn. kísà - see kpi N, the collective
term for such seeds
papier ¹
  2. a letter, a document of any sort (álà toka mbéti na í ge : you all
  send us letters here) - syn. papier 2 means a document
  3. a book, a magazine, etc.
  4. used in dikò mbéti to read, sàra mbéti to write, and pika mbéti,
     to print
mbéti tì Nzapà N : the Bible

mbi P : first person singular pronoun (í mú pëkò tì mbi : follow me)
{mbi hínga kòé : I know it well} (da tì mbi : my house) (só tì mbi :
this is mine) - the pronominal system is as follows (Grammar p. 135-138)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>mbi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>mo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>lo (animate beings)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

mbi eke I : I am (all right) - response to the interrogation mo eke ? -
see bara N for the greeting formulas
mbinda N : a cloud, fog (mbinda akânga lé ndúzú : a cloud (or fog) is obstructing the sky)

mbiô N : a red cosmetic powder made from the bark of a certain tree and used to adorn the body in connection with the ngbângârêngû dance - see fûku for other terms denoting powders

mbirimbíri [mbirimbíri, mbî limbîli, mbîmbîli, mbrîmbîri] An : 1. straight, physically and morally - right, just, upright, righteous {bé ti ála akê mbirimbíri : their characters are upright} (kéké ni akê mbirimbíri : the pole is straight) (zo ti mbirimbíri : a just person) - syn. nzonî means good in general - opp. kirikiri, sionî
2. with a verb : right, justly, properly, correctly {lo sâra mbirimbíri awe : he has done it right} (mbi hînga lége ni mbirimbíri : I know the way properly) (mbi tené ála má mbirimbíri : I'll tell it so you understand it correctly) - syn. nzonî - opp. kirikiri

mbîto [mbîto, mbeto] N : fear, apprehension, fright, terror (yî ti mbîto : a fearful thing) (mbîto asâra lo : fear affected him, i.e. he was afraid) (mbîto ti kôâ amù mbi ọkọ pepe : the fear of death does not seize me at all) (mbîto agbô lo : fear gripped him, i.e. he was terrified) - kpê mbîto is to fear, to respect, to reverence

mbo N : domesticated dog {lo dára mbo ni, lo tené, ãa? : he sicked on the dog, saying, ãa?} - dogs are commonly raised, and are used for hunting, but for the most part they forage for themselves rather than being fed by their owners - sônzô is a wild dog

mbo V : to wipe, to erase by wiping {babâ ambo ngû lé tí mérêngé : the father wiped the tears of the child} (lo mbo lé ti tableau : he erased the surface of the blackboard)

mbôngî N : a deaf person

mbôo N : breath - see hû mbôo

mbôko V : 1. to be bruised or ulcerated, to be disfigured {lé ti lo ambôko kôé : her face was all disfigured}
2. to be bald {li ti ambôko : he is bald}
mboso N: lead, solder - syn. tungu

mbulú N: 1. gunpowder

2. powdered ashes used for medicinal purposes - fúku is a general term for powder

mbuma* V: to bud, as a newly planted slip or shoot, or as a branch (kéké tí gozo ambuma: the manioc shoot budded) - syn. tó

mbunzú [mbunzú, munzú, bunzú, bunzû, mûzû] N: a white person (mbi tæ na âmbunzú só kóé, ake nzoní i na âla kóé i bôngbi tóé lége ñko: I say to these white men, it would be a good thing for them and us to join together) - vokó zo is a black man

mbunzú vokó N: a clerical worker, especially a civil servant or bureaucrat

mbùru N: the oil palm (Elaeis guineense Jacq.), grown or wild especially in the southern forest zone - the fruit gives a rich red oil (bingbá mafuta) which is widely used in cooking - the kernel is exported as a source of fat - the fronds are used for various purposes, especially for roofing

mbutu N: sand - for other terms referring to powdered or granulated substances, see fúku

mélanger** [melânze, melaqgâ] V: to mix, to stir (mo mélanger tongasô, sî mo te: you stir it like that, then you eat) (mo mélanger susu na yá ní wala: do you mix fish in it, or not?) - tourner means to stir - fûru is a related term

membre** [mâmbre] N: a member - used especially by Protestants to refer to members in good standing in a Christian congregation - this term is more restrictive than chrétien or mèresgê ti Nzapâ

mème** [mêm, même, mêmô] C: even, even if (mêmê, lo yî kékéréke mbi êke kírí na koa: even if he should want, tomorrow I would return to work) (mêmê, mbi aussi, mbi wóko: even I also am weary) - syn. quand même

merci** [mersii, mersé, mêsii, mersî] N: 1. thanks (mbi mú na mò merci
merci (cont.): mérengé

mingi: I give you many thanks)

2. used as an interjection: thanks, thank you - also used as a
general expression of pleasure of gratification, e.g. as a response
to good news or in receiving a greeting or message

mé N: the ear, the lobe of the ear - the ear hole is dů tì mé - see téré
me N: the breast, the nipple - breast milk is ngú tì me - see téré

mé kôbe V: to prepare food, especially to stir or mix with an implement
(e.g. kéké tì gozo), to mix ingredients together (tongana ngú tì lôbe
akporò awe, sí lo mé kôbe ní: when the water for the food has boiled,
then she stirs in the food (i.e. the flour to make the dough)) (fadesò
amé gozo da asìa na sëse: now she stirs in the manioc and sets it
aside) - tourner, mélanger are more general terms for stirring or
mixing - fûru means to mix with the hands - still more general terms
are lèke kôbe, sàra kôbe - see also kôbe

méné N: blood, as opposed to mi flesh and bió bone - see téré
mènce V: to swallow, to gulp {susu amènce yângó: the fish swallowed the
hook} - tè is to bite or chew

mèngá N: the tongue - syn. langue - see téré, yângá the mouth
mé ngo V: to conceive, to become pregnant - mamá tì ngo is a pregnant
woman

mèrdée V: see emmerder

mérengé [mérengé, mélengé, mérengé, mélengé, mórèngé, mórengé, móélengé,
mârèngé, mâlengé, mârengé, mâlengé] N: 1. a child, a baby, an infant,
a youth {mbì sàra sò giriri na mèrengé: I did this a long time ago
as a child} {lo de kétè kétè mèrańgē: he remained a very small child,
i.e. a baby} (mèrengé tì mo asâra kôa tì yè: what kind of work does
your child do?) (mérengé sò usâra mawa na wàlé ní: this youth had
pity on the woman) - mèrengé (tì) kôli is a boy, a son - mèrengé (tì)
wàlé is a girl, a daughter - mèrengé tì mîa, mèrengé tì ngbô are two
ways of referring to twins - see also pendere, pendere kôli, pendere
wàlé, famille - see zo
mérèngé (cont.)-mingo

2. the young of animals {kôndo abata amérèngé tî lo : the hen protects her chicks}

mérèngé tî clé N : a key - mamá tî clé is a lock - see also clé
mérèngé (tî) kôli N : a boy, a son
mérèngé tî mía, mérèngé tî ngbo N : twins
mérèngé tî ngú N : a feeder stream
mérèngé tî Nzapâ N : a Christian - syn. chrétien
mérèngé (tî) wâle : a girl, a daughter

mi N : flesh, as opposed to biô bone or méné blood - used in mi téré - see téré

mía N : see mérèngé tî mía

midi** [midii] N : mid-day, noon - somewhat more precise than syn. kôté lâ - see heure for the divisions of the day
midi tî bî N : midnight - syn. bé bî - see heure for the divisions of the day

milieu** [milyée, milée] N : the middle, the midst - used with na 3
{mo gâ na milieu tî dole nî : you came in the midst of the elephants} - syn. bé, pépé

míngi An : much, many, very {li tî álâ míngi : they (were) many} {kôtóró ade yongóro míngi : the village was still very far away} {móngi aekè goe tî bâa kôtá ngú só : many are going to see this big river} {lo penser kpikara aekè na famille míngi : he thought the pangolin had many relatives} {déma tongaso míngi pépé : don't carry on like that so much} {awôko nzoni míngi : it was very nicely softened} {mbi ñkè na ngiâ míngi : I have much joy} - emphasized by reduplication {álá gâ míngi míngi : they came, very many} - (Grammar p. 56)

mingo [mingo, mingo, ménço] V : to extinguish {amíngo wâ nî : he extinguished the fire} {álá míngo da : they extinguished the (burning) house} - opp. tîngâ wâ - see also zô and gbi
miombe-mosûmá

miombe [miombe, myombe, meombe, mombe, moyembe, meyembe, myembe, mwembe]
An : eight - see âko for the numeral system

mission** [misyô] N : 1. a religious or other mission, a mission station
2. among less acculturated speakers : a church edifice, a chapel -
syn. da tí Nzará, chapelle, église 2

mi téré N : flesh - syn. mi

mois** [mwâa] N : a month - syn. nze 2

moitié** [motyée] N : half, halfway point (mbi sí na moitié : I reached the halfway point)

monganga [monganga, monganga] N : a medicine man, whose function is to
treat illness and to divine the cause of death (ála commencer tí sâra na monganga tí ála, tí soigner téré tí ála : they began to
cooperate with their medicine man, to care for their bodies) - see
nganga

moniteur** [monitéer] N : an instructor, a teacher of a lower echelon
and lower qualifications and who teaches in the lower grades

monsieur** [môsyô, mesyô, misyô, mesô, mesé, mesé, misyé] N : sir, Mr.
{mbi bara madame tí monsieur ngâ : I also greet the lady (i.e. the
wife) of Mr. also} - see madame

monter** [monté] V : 1. to climb, to ascend (mbi monter na ndûzú : I
ascended into the air) (lo monter hótó ní : he climbed the hill -
opp. descendre
2. of animals : to copulate (mbo amonter na ndô wâle ní : the dog
copulated with the female) - syn. uru 2 - for humans see gba

mon vieux** [môvyô, mové, mvé] I : an exclamation of surprise, of aston-
ishment, of disappointment, of disgust (mon vieux, yí tí sése akek
tongasô : welî, the ways of this earth are like that) (mon vieux, só yâkâ tí kóbe sì akek na aû só : wow, is that ever a food garden that
uncle has there!) - syn. babâ 5

mosûmá N : a dream, a vision - syn. sûmá - see also bâa li
moule** [múul] N: sun-dried mud brick – made near the building site by digging into the best available soil (termite hill clay is favored), tramping in water until the mud is the right consistency, and packing into a wooden mold about 6 x 5 x 12 inches, after which the blocks are dried in the sun and used for building – see téré tì da

moyen** [mweg̣, mẉ] N: means {i èke na moyen tîme i mú dole, i goe na ní, acké pëpe : we had no means of taking the elephant and carrying it away} – manière, lége, etc. emphasize rather the skill, ability, or manner, while moyen emphasizes the physical means

mò [mò, mo] P: second person singular pronoun {mò píka gí na yà tì kpu : you pound it just in a mortar} {babá atène na mò : father told you} {téré tì mò : your body} {sò tì mò : this is yours} – see mbi for the pronominal system (Grammar p. 155-158)

moa* N: a flood

mo èke I: how are you? (lit. are you?) – in the greeting procedure, this immediately follows the exchange of bara N – the response is mbi èke

mosoro* N: wealth, especially the bride-price – see also ẉ 2, te nginza, nginza, vo, kà, fûta, paver

mú V: 1. to give {mú na mbi nginza : give me money} {álà èke mú na mò yorò : they give you medicine} {piqûre só amú na zo : injections which they give to people} {mbi yi tì mú wângô só na áita : I want to give this advice to (our) friends}
2. to take, to get, to receive {ayi tì mú mbéni mérangé tì kótórò : he wants to take some of the children of the village} {mò mú papa tì fûku ško : you take one spoonful of flour} {mò mú piqûre nì kòé : you receive all the injections} {mamá amú mbi na docteur : mother took me to the doctor} {kòa alingbi tì mú mo : death can get you} – kamátá means more specifically to take, gbó to grasp, to seize, goe na to take with, wara to receive, to obtain

mú lége V: to take to the road, to start off, to begin a trip {lo mú lége tì goe na Bangui : he started off for Bangui} – see lége
mû lége na ... tí

mû lége na ... tí V : to allow, to permit (mbi mû lége na lo tí goe na Bangui : I allowed him to go to Bangui) - also said zîa lége na ... tí

mû ... na pópô V : to choose - syn. choisir, kamâta ... na pópô

mû ngiâ na bé tí V : to give pleasure or joy (yî amû ngiâ na bé tí mbi mingi : this thing gave me much pleasure) - syn. zîa ngiâ na bé tí - see bé, ngiâ

mû pardon V : to apologize - see pardon

mû pêkô V : to follow (mû pêkô tí mbi : follow me) - this expression implies often a close personal relationship between the persons involved, while gâ na pêkô emphasizes as the goal the person being followed and goe na pêkô emphasizes the point of departure or the relative detachment of the speaker

mû yângâ V : to discourage, to get one down (koa sô amû yângâ tí mbi mingi : this job really has me discouraged) - be, kara are a syn. - emmerder means to annoy, to bother, as does gêner

mû susu V : to catch fish (î bi gbânda tí mû susu : we cast the net to catch fish) - see also gi susu
Dîna C! (Grammar p. 69-88) 1. a general coordinating connective joining two units of the same class: words, phrases, clauses, sentences: and, but {mô na lo : you and he} {lo na zo vokô : he and a black man} {babà na mamá : father and mother} {álá sambéla kéké, na péré, na nze, na lá : they worshipped trees, and grass, and the moon, and the sun} {askè téné tì mó tì má yângá tì babà tì mó na tì má yângá tì mamá tì mó : it is your business to obey your father and to obey your mother} {mbi wara yîngô tì zia da, na mbi wara mbéni kpî tì zia da : I got some salt to put in, and I got some paste to put in} - et is a syn. used predominantly in French numerals or between sentences - et puis and mais are syn. used only to join clauses and sentences - et and mais may be used together with na, preceding na 2. a general subordinating connective, uniting complements other than "genitive" types to their head: with, at, in, to, from, etc. {mbi sâra na kpî : I made paste with it} {mbi dutí na Bangui : I remained at Bangui} {lo lángó na da : he slept in the house} {lo goe na kôtórô : he went to the village} {lo lóndô na tangé : he got up from the bed} {lo gá na mó : he came to you, or he came with you (i.e. he brought or accompanied you)} {lo mú na mó : he gave it to you} {lo sâra só na mó : he did this to you} {lo hûnda na mó : he asked it of you} {lo gá na lâ kûi : he came in the afternoon} {lo wara nginza tì vo na yî tî lo : he obtained money to buy something for himself with} {ázo kôé na sése só : everyone on the earth} {gî kusâra na nginza sî atambéla : only work for money "goes"} - tì is the other major subordinating connective, expressing most of the "genitive" type relationships, while na is used for locative, temporal, instrumental, attributive, and "circumstantial" relationships - other subordinating connectives are: ka, ngbangáti, tenéti, tongana 3. na is used to introduce many "prepositional" (or adverbial) expressions (Grammar p. 76-79, 105-106) with the structure na + noun
na (cont.)-ndá péréré

(+ tî/nî) - the nouns so used are primarily bé, ndá, devant, gbé, gîgî, lé, lége, li, mbâge, milieu, ndô, ndôô, pekô, pérô, sése, téré, vâ, vângâ - the meanings of these expressions are listed under the respective nouns - in general, they are more specific and precise than na alone

ndá N : 1. the lower back, the hips, the buttocks - syn. ngbundâ - see also pekô, gbô ndá
   2. the end of something (ndá tí kâmba nî : the end of the rope) - this suggests the far end, while vângâ is used of the near edge or end
   3. the essence or ultimate meaning of something, a reason (mbî mâ ndá nî awe : I've understood the end, i.e. the essence of it) (ndá tí têné só yê : what is the meaning of this?) (mbî hînga ndá nî : I understand it thoroughly) (ndá nî só, sî sése tî í atî : that is the reason why our land fell) - used in ndá nî - see na 3

ndá ade V : to be before sunrise - hence, the early morning before sunrise (ndá ade, lo gâ : before sunrise, he came) - see heure for the divisions of the day

ndakôro N : a kind of plant - the skin of the fruit is dried and used as a washcloth

ndámbu N : a remainder, a portion left over (mbî lângô kâ nze otâ na ndámbu : I lived there three months and some over) - syn. tanga

ndá nî N : after, afterwards (na ndá nî, ãla mû mbêni : afterwards, they took more) - syn. pekô nî - both of these expressions can be used with or without introducing na

ndao N : a blacksmith - traditionally, the smith smelted the iron ore in a clay furnace, using charcoal (charbon), and then forged the iron (wâ) to make tools and weapons, as well as ornaments and the bars used in paying bride-price - see zembe, rîge, likongô, kpôka, ngáfô - the smiths belonged to special clans

ndá péréré [ndá péréré, ndá pêfê, ndá prêlé, ndá péfê, ndá pêfê] N : morning, after sunrise (lo duti na da na ndá péréré, asî na lá kûî :
he sat in the house from morning until sunset - see heure for the divisions of the day

ndarâa N: ingenuity, skill, cleverness (wâle ní aekâ wâle tí ndarâa: this woman is an ingenious woman) - closely related meanings are expressed by manière, malin, lére 2

ndarangba N: a hare, a domestic or wild rabbit

ndâ táá mo: a very serious curse, a very gross insult - apparently making some reference to the anatomy of the victim's mother - see zonga

ndavêkâ N: syphilis - see kobéla

ndé An: different - repeated it has a distributive meaning (marâ tí dâdâ ndé ndé: many different kinds of dances) (mbéni yí ndé: another different thing, a certain different thing) - (Grammar p. 56-57) - see also mbéni, which among other things means other - but while ndé stresses a different kind, mbéni usually refers to another of the same kind

ndeko [ndeko, ndêko] N: an intimate friend of either sex, hence: a mistress, a lover, a paramour (aekâ nzoní wâle agonda ândeko tí lo na kóli tí lo?: is it proper for a woman to praise her lovers before her husband?) (izo tí lukundû atambêla na bí tí gí ândeko tí âla: witches go about at night to seek their comrades) - camarade refers to friends of the same sex, fô is a co-worker, mbâ is a compatriot, ndoê is a person having the same name as oneself, itâ is a relative or someone whose friendship is so intimate as to warrant a sort of honorary inclusion in the family - wato is an enemy

ndembû N: cured rubber, or that which is made of it, as a rubber ball (asâra balle na ndembû: they make balls out of rubber) - bângâ is primarily raw rubber or latex - see also piâ ndembû

ndêkê [ndêkê, nêkê] N: any kind of bird

ndêkê tí ngebâa N: a buffalo bird, i.e. a bird which follows the herd of buffalo and feeds on insects aroused by their movements
ndiâ N: a law, an ordinance, a rule, a decree - lu ndiâ means to promulgate or enact a law

ndô N: the top of something (so ndô ti table: that is the top of the table) - ndô suggests a surface, while li 2 suggests the top part or portion of something - used in ndô bé, ndô gô, ndô lé, ndô tí, ndô (ti) mabôko, hô ndô - na ndô tí means on top of - see na 3

ndo N: a place, an environment {mbi te kôbe na ndo tí lo: I ate at his place} {ndo avôkô awe: the place was dark} {lo goe na ndo yongôro: he went to a far-off place} {alôndô agoe na mbënî ndo: he left and went to another place} - syn. place - used as an "empty" object in expressions such as in bâa ndo, éré ndo, yî tí bâa ndo, ndo sô, ndo wa

ndo ahâ [ndo ahâ, ahâ] V: of the sun: to rise (ndo ahâ awe: the sun has risen) - see heure for the divisions of the day

ndô bé N: the center of something (eh bien mo mû kokô fadesô, mo tûku na ndô bé nî: well then you take some greens and dump them right in the middle of it) - bé means the middle, and ndô adds the idea of approaching the middle from above

ndoé [ndoé, ndoé, ndoyé, ndoyé, ndoyé] N: 1. a person having the same name as oneself, a bosom friend {lo ekê ndoé tí mbi: he's my intimate friend, my other self} - see ndeko for a list of related terms 2. among persons who learned Sango through Protestant missions, ndoé is used to mean love, both V and N, which in standard Sango are expressed by bé ... yî

ndô gô N: the nape of the neck - see gô

ndô lé N: the forehead - see lé N 1

ndôndô li N: the brain - see li

ndôngé [ndôngé, ndôngé] N: small red pepper (Capsicum annum L. or Capsicum fruticosum L.), used as a condiment {na pekô tí kârâko mbi tô ndôngé na yâ nî, sí i te yâ tí i aâo pepe: after the peanuts, I boil red peppers in it, so that when we eat our stomachs won't hurt)
ndôo N: clay for making pots - see ta

ndo só N: here, this place - used usually with na 3 (mbi gá na ndo só: I came here) (na ndo só, na Bangui ... : here, in Bangui ...) (ála sára sioní mingi ndo só: they did much wrong here) - syn. ge - see ndo wa

ndo ti N: used with na: 1. on top of, above, over, in addition to {atüku kpi ti sindi na ndô ti makongó: you dump the sesame paste on top of the caterpillars} {í zo gí na ndô ti wá: we just roast it over the fire} {lége ti yó na ndô ti caisse aeké pepe: there was no way of carrying it in addition to the crate} {í dé bá na ndô ní ngá: let's swear upon it also} - syn. li 2 - see also ndúzu 2

2. in numbers, joins units of one order to the next higher order of units in the decimal system {bale 5ko na ndô ní 0se: one ten plus two, i.e. twelve} - see 5ko for the number system

ndo (ti) mabóko N: the shoulder {agoe ti sûru ndô ti mabóko ti mo: they are going to cut open (i.e. vaccinate) your shoulder} - syn. li ti mabóko

ndo wa N: what place, where - usually used with na (mo wara pendere bongó só na ndo wa: where did you get that beautiful dress?) - see also ndo só

ndókó N: a flower - sára ndókó means to bloom

ndú V: to touch {tongana zo andú kpíkara, lo lángó tongana lo kúi: when someone touches the pangolin, he lies down and plays dead} - syn. toucher

ndunda* N: sisal - grown locally in plantations started through French initiative

ndurú [ndurú, ndulú] An: 1. short {kéké ní aeké ndurú ndurú: the stick is very short} (mo sára ngá ndurú téné: make your talk short) - opp. yöngóra

2. with verbs: near, nearby, close (mo gá ndurú: come near) (kótóró aeké ndurú pepe?: isn't the village nearby?) - see gá ndurú
ndurû gozo-ngá

ndurû gozo N : a small remnant of manioc - see ndâmbu

ndurû mápa N : a small remnant of bread - see ndâmbu

ndú téré tí ... vení na mbáná V : to masturbate

ndûzû N : 1. the sky, the air {yama ti ndûzû : an aerial animal} {lo eke na ndûzû, na lo gá na sése" : he was in the sky, and he came to the earth} {ádola só aurú na ndûzû : moths which fly in the air} - ia emphasizes the air, yáyu means heaven

2. with na 3 : up, upwards, up in the air {yôro mabôko na ndûzû : put up your hand} {mbi monter na ndûzû : I climbed up} {lo kânga kâmba ti lo na ndûzû : he fastened his snare up in the air}

ne V : 1. to bear down hard - hence the following meanings

2. to be heavy {caisse ní ans, alíngbi pêpê : the crate was much too heavy}

3. to crush or roll out, as paste {lo ne kpi tí kârâko : she crushed peanut paste} - this is done with some kind of roller, e.g. a bottle - syn. neka - pête means to crush by pounding - ri means to be thoroughly crushed

4. to bite with the molars, to chew - te means to bite with the incisors

neka [neka, nakpâ] V : to crush {mamá aneka kpi mingi, azia na téré tí susu : mother crushed a lot of paste and put it with the fish} - syn. ne 3 - pête means to crush by pounding, ri means to be thoroughly crushed

nêngô N : 1. weight, heaviness {mbi mú nêngô ní : I took the heavy one} - from ne 2

2. thickness {nêngô tí kéké ake tois centimètres : the thickness of the board was three centimeters}

ngá An : also, too {mo yi tí vo nga yi só : you want to buy this also} {babá akúi nga : father died too} {ázo só nga ake wara kobéla : these people also get sick} - syn. aussi - both can be used together - (Grammar p. 57)
ngaânga N : a fetish - see yorô

ngâfô N : a hoe (ngâfô aekë kpôka, mais ngâfô aekë yângá tì Banda : a ngâfô is a hoe, but ngâfô is in the Banda language) - both ngâfô and kpôka are used extensively - see zembe for a list of tools

ngâgo N : a kind of spinach-like edible greens (Solanum aethiopicum L.) grown for food (tongana mò yi tî tô kûrû tì yama na kugbê tì ngâgo, mò tô : if you want to cook dried meat with ngâgo leaves, you do) - for a list of edible leaves, see kurbê

ngambe [ngambe, ngambi] N : a younger sibling (mbëni ngambe tì mbi ... : a certain younger sibling of mine ...) - ëta is any sibling, while kôta zo is an older brother - see famille for the kinship system

ngângâ N : a gourd, cut open at the small end so as to form a kind of bottle - syn. bouteille - kangu is a gourd cut longitudinally so as to form a dipper

nganga N : a kind of medicine which is put on a dead man or on his grave, when the person responsible for the death is not known, to kill the culprit

ngangô [ngangô, ngangu] N : hardness, difficulty, strength, power, severity, force, violence (mò sâra kôa na ngangô tî téré tî mò : work with the strength of your body) (zo tî ngangô : a strong man) (ngangô tî yorô ahô ndô tî ngangô tî téré tî mò : the strength of the medicine overcame the strength of your body) (tongana mò zia na wâ jusqu'â, fadé kôkô nî agâ ngangô : if you leave them on the fire for a long time, the greens will get hard, i.e. tough) (mô dé kôngô na li tî lo ngangô mingi : you shout after him with much force, i.e. loudly) (âla tomba âzo tî sâra kôa na ngangô : they drive out people by force to work) (ngû tî Gbutu sô aekë tî na ngangô : the water of Gbutu (Falls) which falls with violence) (nginza tî wâlë aekë ngangô mingi : the cost of a wife is very hard, i.e. expensive) (mô yi tî vo na ngangô ? : do you want to buy by force?) (kôa tî lo aekë ngangô : his work is difficult) (pasteur awa âla ngangô : the pastor admonished them severely) (yi fadesô ngangô mingi : things
are tough now) (mbéni téné ti ngangô na téné ti pâsi aâke da mingi: there is much difficulty and pain in it) - see sâra ngangô, yi ti ngangô - wôko is a verb expressing an opposite idea

ngâsa N: a goat - universally kept, goats are not milked and are eaten only on ceremonial or festive occasions - like chickens, they are a form of wealth and are used primarily as gifts and to pay the bride-price

ngasá [ngasá, ngásá] N: a wild yam (Dioscorea sagittifolia Pax ?) found in the bush and eaten when better food is not available

ngâsa Ngbaka N: Protestant word for sheep - see taba

ngbâ V: to remain (from the past), to be left over, to survive, to continue (tongana tanga ní angbâ, i vo: when there is some left, we sell it) (mbi ngbâ: I remained) (tongana mo bâa kóá na lé ti mo, mo lingbi titên mo ngbâ pâpe: if you see death (from smallpox), you won't be able to survive) (mbi ngbâ na ngbéré bongô: I remain with just an old garment) (mbi ngbâ na ndo sô: I remain here) (angbâ saleté: it is still dirty) (mbi ngbâ tí tambéla: I'm still walking) - syn. continuer - de is oriented to the future, with the idea of "not yet" - du V 2 and duti 2 are more static

ngbâ kété V: used pre-clausally: just a little more, just a little longer (angbâ kété, âla fâa mbi: just a little more, and they would have killed me)

ngbâá [ngbáá, ngbáá] N: a slave - in traditional society, slaves could be either captured or bought - as long as they caused no trouble, they had certain rights and were treated as junior members of their master's household - in some cases there was a slave caste (awara lo, amú lo tongana ngbâá: he found him and took him as a slave) (yí só álâ skê vo na wâle na lá ni kâ, aâke tî fûta na mbéni ngbâá: what they used in those days to buy wives, was to pay (for them) with some slaves) - bôi is a servant or domestic employee in a more modern sense and context

ngbâa [ngbâa, ngbâá] N: a Cape buffalo - syn. gôgâá, and rarely bâgâra 2
ngbagba N: the lower mandible, the lower jaw, the chin - see lé the face
ngbágo N: 1. a distilled alcoholic beverage, syn. háráge - see samba for a list of alcoholic beverages
2. by extension: various forms of commercial or medical alcohol, e.g. methyl, ethyl, isopropyl

ngbálo N: a kind of head disease, possibly apoplexy (lo kúí na kobéla tí ngbálo: he died of apoplexy) - see kobéla

ngbangatí [ngbangatí, mbangatí, mgaq(a)tí, ngbatí, mbatí, ngbatí, mbatí] C: a connective of cause, reason, or purpose: for, because of, on account of, to, in order to {aeka ngbangatí nginza: it is on account of money} {mo língbi tí kq lo ngbangatí bongó lá wa: how can you reject him because of clothes} {í fono ngbangatí gí dole: we walked about in order to hunt elephants} {lo mú na mbi ngbangatí mo: he gave it to me for you} - (Grammar p. 88-91) - syn. teneti

ngbangáti yq Av: used either pre-clausally or post-verbally: for what reason, why {mo dé éré tí lo ngbangatí yq: why did you say his name?} {ngbangatí yq mo dé éré tí lo: why did you say his name?} - syn. teneti yq

ngbangbu N: a hundred (ngbangbu óse na ndó ní bale 5ko: one hundred and ten) - see 5ko for the number system

ngbángéréngú N: a cult and dance characterized by prolonged manifestations of frenzy or violent (spirit) possession (mbi dó ngbángéréngú: I
danced the ngbângérêngû - the possession lasts for several months and culminates in a dance during which initiates paint their bodies with a red powder called mbiô - persons looking on from outside sometimes consider this a sickness, a form of unbalance

ngbéré [ngbéré, ngbéré] : old - used of objects {ngbéré da : an old house} {ngbéré têné : an old matter} {ngbéré bongó : old clothes} - mbakôro is used of old people

ngbéréna N : 1. brass coiled bracelets and anklets - kisi, lence, and yî ti mè
2. a brass bell tied to a dog's neck

ngbii Av : an ideophone : for a while, for a long time - can be reduplicated for emphasis, or used together with its syn. jusqu'à (Grammar p. 60-61) {téré tî lo aso lo ngbii : his body hurt him for a while} {mo pîka yâ nî ngbii kôé : you pound it for a while until (it is) done} {mo goe na nî ngbii ngbii ngbii : you should continue it for a long, long time} {î yî ti leke jusqu'à ngbii : we want to (keep on) organizing it for a very long time} - ngbii tends to have a future or time-neutral orientation, while depuis has a distinctly past perfective orientation

ngbingbi N : a dam, built to catch fish {lo eke zia ngbingbi tî lo na ngû tî mû susu : he put his dam across the stream to catch fish} - see éré ngû, zî susu

ngbô N : a snake - kûma is a python

ngbôkô N : sugar cane - cultivated mostly in the southern zone of the Central African Republic

ngbundâ [ngbundâ, mbundâ] N : the lower back, the hips, the buttocks {âla fâa mbèni kugbé só âwâle akânga na ngbundâ tî âla kôzo nî : they cut some of those leaves which women used to tie about their hips} - syn. ndâ 1 - see téré 1

ngbûru V : to embroil, to enmesh (ayî tî ngbûru zo na yâ tî têné nî : he wants to embroil someone in the affair)
ngeki lé N : eyebrow - see lé

ngé lângó N : sleeping sickness (trypanosomiasis) - formerly endemic in the Central African Republic - a form of curse is to wish the sleeping sickness upon someone (lo éré ngé lângó na li ti mbéni zo : he called down sleeping sickness upon someone) - see kobéla

ngéré [ngéré, ngérè] N : cost, price, value (ngéré ni akê ngangó : the cost is high) (ngéré ni awôko : the cost is reasonable) (ngéré ni ôko ôko : how much are they apiece?) - see also fûta, payer, nginza, vo ngéré

ngé V : to be or become thin, to waste away - used only of living beings (mo ngé mingi : you have become very thin) - kété is used for things - opp. konô, mafuta

ngiâ N : cordiality, amiability, sociability, joy, happiness, gladness, fun, amusement, fellowship (âla bâa mbi na ngiâ : they looked upon me cordially) (mbi akê na ngiâ mingi : I am very happy) (akê yî ti ngiâ pepe : it's not a laughing matter) (akê téné ti ngiâ pepe : it's not a laughing matter) - ngiâ arises from the prior condition of good interpersonal relationships, free of guile, rancor, suspicion, or envy - bé ôko is a closely related idea - see also ngiâ ... sî bé, mú ngiâ na bé ti, zîa ngiâ na bé ti, hé ngiâ, sâra ngiâ

ngiâ ... sî bé V : to rejoice greatly, to be very happy (ngiâ asi bé ti mbi : I am very happy) - the expression can also be inverted (bé ti mbi asi na ngiâ : my heart is full of joy)

ngiba* N : leprosy - syn. buruma - see kobéla

ngindi N : a rat snare made of a cord noose stretched by a spring made of flexible stick - larger models are used to catch other animals such as the ratel (zari) - perhaps the same as gindi - kâmba 3 is a more general term - see also sô

nginza N : money (lo wara nginza ôko pepe : he has obtained no money) (i vo na nginza : we bought it for money, i.e. cash) (nginza ti boîte sô akê ngangó mingi : the cost of a can is very high) (âla
lingbi ti te nginza ti mo pepe : they cannot receive the bride-price for you} - see pata, franc, te nginza, vo, ká V, mosoro, ngéré, fúta, payer, vo ngéré, par jour, which all express financial or commercial concepts

ngobo N : a fist (lo píka kate ti lo na ngobo ti lo : he hit his chest with his fist) - syn. coup de poing - mabóko is the hand and arm

ngói N : a season, a time characterized by some event or activity {ngói ti lú káráko : the season for planting peanuts}

ngómbá N : an indigenous xylophone - see píka bía

ngombáyá* An : nine - see șko for the number system

ngombe N : a gun - few Africans have guns, and most of those in use are either shotguns or muzzle-loaders (piston) - see gi yama - see zembe for a list of weapons

ngombi V : to fold, as clothes (mo ngombi bongó si mo zía na sandúku : fold the clothes before putting them into the box) - syn. kúngbi

ngonda N : the bush, the wilderness - in most parts of the Central African Republic, this is savanna (mo fáa ngunzá na ngonda : you cut greens in the bush) - péré is a more specific term for savanna, while lando refers to a low-lying, sometimes marshy plain - gbakó is a gallery forest along a stream - opp. kótóró - sése is the most general term for land - see also goe (na) ngonda, bi na ngonda, yama tí ngonda

ngóngóâ [ngóngóâ, ngóngóâ] N : that which is impure or defiled as the result of death, e.g. a house, a garden where death has occurred

ngongoa N : seed of animals (tongana lo wara yáma, fadé lo fáa ngongoa tí yáma ní kóé ahúnzi : if he finds animals, he will wipe out the seed (i.e. posterity) of the animal, and all will disappear)

ngonzo [ngonzo, ngonzo] N : 1. the bile - bozó tí ngonzo is the gall bladder

2. anger {téné tí ngonzo : angry words} (ngonzo alóndó na lé ti lo :
anger rose in his face} - see also ngonzo ... sâra, ngonzo ... gbô, sâra ngonzo - vundû is rather resentment and a desire for retaliation for an injury - for other emotions, see bé

ngonzo ... gbô : to be very angry, to be controlled by anger (ngonzo agbô lo : he was very angry) - this is stronger than ngonzo ... sâra, sâra ngonzo

ngonzo ... sâra V : to be angry (ngonzo asâra mbi : I was angry) - syn. sâra ngonzo - ngonzo ... gbô is stronger

ngóro N : a cheetah?

ngô N : a boat, especially a dugout canoe made from the trunk of a tree - dugouts are used extensively for transport and for fishing by all the peoples living near larger rivers (na kótóró tí Yakoma giriri, ála tambéla na géré pepe, gi ngô na lé tí ngú : in Yakoma country formerly, they didn't travel on foot, only by canoe on the water) - for larger boats or ships of European origin, French bateau is used

ngo N 1 : a drum or gong - there are two models of indigenous drums, both basically carved out of a section of a large log hollowed out - the gong, used especially in transmitting messages and "announcements", is laid on its side and has uppermost a longitudinal slit, and is beat upon either with the hand or fist or with a stick - the drum proper, used mainly for dances, stands upright and has a rawhide drumhead, and is played primarily with the hands - see píka bia

ngo N 2 : a fetus (wâle tí mbi ase na ngo : my wife is pregnant) (lo kúi na ngo : she died in childbirth) - ìẹ ngo is to conceive, mêmâ tí ngo is a pregnant woman, ngo ... buba means to abort or have a miscarriage, dú V means to give birth

ngo ... buba V : to abort, to have a miscarriage (ngo ní abuba awe : she had a miscarriage, lit. the fetus was destroyed)

ngólo N : a wicker fish-trap or weir - see gí susu for a description of fishing

ngólo N : a palaver, a quarrel - used only in gí ngólo - more general syn.
ngolo (cont.)-ngunzâ

are ngbanga, téné 2

ngâro [ngóro, ngôro, ngûro] V : to surround, to circle, to go around

{í ngôro kótôró : we circled the village} {gbágbá angôro bála : the fence surrounds the enclosure}

ngû N : 1. water {mô mû na lo ngû, lo sukula lé tî lo : give him water to wash his face} {zia ngû na wá akporo : put water on the fire to boil} - see sukûla ngû, òû ngû, ngû tî vâ, ngû tî dé, koórôngó ngû
2. by extension : any liquid - see ngûlavû, ngû lé, ngû tî bãngâ, "ngû tî mbéti, ngû tî me, ngû vûrê, ngû tî kôli
3. a stream, a river, a lake, a pond, a sea, etc. {place sô ngû asoa da : the place where the stream flows} {í fáa ngû : we crossed the stream} {ngû tî Gbutu sô aakâ tî na ngangó sô : those waterfalls of Gbutu which fall with such violence} {mbéni kótá ngû : a certain wide river} - see lé tî ngû, vánâ tî ngû, éré ngû, li ngû
4. rain, rainfall - see ngû ... pîka, ngû (tî) Nzapâ
5. rainy season - hence, because the passage of time is reckoned in terms of the passage of rainy seasons, a year {ngû tî mbî ade tîtâne mbi mû wâle : my years remain (i.e. I am not old enough) to take a wife} {na ngû sô : this year} {ngû na ngû : every year, year by year} {ngû otâ : three years} - gbé ngû means in the rainy season - buru, vûrû ndo refer to the dry season - nda is a month

ngui [ngûi, ngwîi, wiil] N : a colobus monkey (Colobus abyssinicus) - the black and white pelt of this monkey is made into a kind of hat the wearing of which is culturally restricted - see makâko, the general term for monkey

ngûlavû N : honey - syn. mafuta tî wôtoro

ngû lé N : tears, weeping - see lé N

ngundé N : a crocodile - found in the larger rivers only

ngungu* N : a mosquito - see voma for a list of insects

ngunzâ [ngunzâ, ngonzâ] N : greens, either manioc leaves or certain wild edible leaves - the most common green vegetables, an ingredient in
various sauces (kāsa) {mō goe ti fāa ngunzâ na ngonda : you go cut greens in the bush} {mō fāa ngunzâ ni, mō bi kēkē ni na sēse, mō zīa na yā ti ngū si akporo, mō tourner, mō zīa na yā ti kpu, mō pīka : you cut up the greens, you throw away the stems, you put them into water to boil, you stir them, you put them into a mortar, and you pound them} - see kugbé for a list of edible leaves

ngū ... pīka V : to rain {ngū apīka mīngi lā só : it rained hard today} - see ngū (ti) Nzapâ

ngusū N : 1. a chigger, a small six-legged larval mite (family Trombiculidae) that burrows into the skin, usually around the toenails, and lays eggs in a sac - especially common in the south, where people's toes are often deformed - see vōma for a list of insects and arachnids
2. a maggot {vōma adū ngusū na yəma : flies lay maggots in meat} - see vōma

ngū ti dé N : cold water - see ngū 1 - opp. ngū ti wā

ngū ti bāngā N : raw rubber, latex - syn. bāngā

ngū ti kōli N : semen - syn. ngū vurū

ngū ti mbēti N : ink - the French encre is much more common

ngū ti mē N : breast milk, mother's milk - canned or powdered milk is lait

ngū (ti) Nzapâ N : rain {ngū Nzapâ aeke kânga yāngā ti āla : rain shut their mouths, i.e. made it impossible for them to eat by preventing them from going to the fields to get food} - syn. ngū 4 - see also ngū ... pīka

ngū ti wā N : hot water - see ngū 1, also kpōrōngō ngū - opp. ngū ti dé

ngū vurū N : any thick, milky discharge from the body, as pus, semen - sāngō is a term for pus - ngū ti kōli is a syn. for semen

nī An : 1. with nouns : a restrictive and/or anaphoric determinant (Grammar p. 38-45) : the, the one {mū na mbi yəma nī : give me the animal (previously referred to or present to sight)} {mō zīa kpī, kpī nī ake kōsō : you put in paste, the paste is of squash seed} -
ni (cont.) - nzanza

used often to replace a complement consisting of a phrase introduced by tì {li tì hótó : the top of the hill} (li nì : the top of it)
2. used alone : mainly in indirect discourse as a pronoun referring to the person speaking (tère atene, lo mú na nì mbo tì nì : tère said that he (another person) should give him (tère) his (tère's) dog)

nỳanga V : to hold back, to stop short, to refrain from, to last a long time {àwàle tì giriri, anìngà na nì míngì : women formerly held back (ì.e. were very reluctant) from it much} {kobéla anìngà tì fâa zo pèpe : this disease does not stop short of killing people} - see also pèkó nì anìngà pèpe

non** [nɔ, no] I : no (non, mbi èkè na wàle pèpe : no, I am not married) - opp. oui - pèpe is the corresponding sentence particle

numéro** [nìmeròo] N : number, especially in an ordinal set {numéro bale 5ko : number ten} - see 5ko for the number system

nylon** [nilòq] N : 1. nylon
2. a European dance {àla kè tì dò ngaragé, gi nylon èko, àla hìnga : they refuse to dance the ngaragé, they know only the nylon}
3. anything which is modern, stylish, up to date, chic {èkè nylon : it's the latest!}

nzá N : horn of an animal - syn. dede

nzala [nzala, nzara] N : appetite, hunger, desire, craving, urge, lust, {nzala ahànda zo : appetite tempts a person} {heure tì nzala : a time of hunger, i.e. famine} {nzala tì mo àsàà mbi míngì : a desire for you affects me very much, i.e. I want badly to see you} - see nzala ... fâa, kùì nzala

nzala ... fâa V : to be very hungry, to starve (nzala afâa lo : he was very hungry, he was starving) - syn. kùì nzala

nzanza* N : a kind of grass which grows near water and which is used to make large, strong baskets in which raw cotton is carried to market, and also for making woven granary walls and fences - see péré for a
list of grasses and reeds

Nzapá N: 1. originally, probably a kind of sky-god - this is the name adopted by Christian missions to refer to the God of the Bible

(sambéla Nzapá ṕko : worship God only) \{lo hûnda Nzapá ṕabá ... \: he asked God the father \(\ldots\) \{Nzapá aṣekọ : God is, i.e. you can depend on Him to set things right and to avenge wrongs done to you\)

-sambéla, díko mean to pray, to worship, sepála means to praise God - du tí Nzapá is a church edifice, ṣẹbí tí Nzapá is the Bible, ténu tí Nzapá is the word of God, YINGO tí Nzapá is the Spirit of God, mérẹnẹ tí Nzapá is a Christian, ngû (tí) Nzapá is rain

2. an oath attesting one's truthfulness \{Nzapá ! : I swear it's true!\}

nzére yí N: different kinds of things usually small

nzé V: to get weary or discouraged, to give up, to fail to persevere

\{quand même álá kọ lo, bé tí lo anzé pepe : even though they rejected him, he did not give up\} - used in bé ... nzé - wóko

emphasizes physical weakness - see also bé 1, gêner

nže N: 1. the moon \{mo líntí tí báá nže pepe, lé tí nže ní avókọ : you can't see the moon, the face of the moon is completely dark\}

\{ákótará asambéla kéké, na péré, na nže, na lá : the ancestors worshipped trees, and grass, and the moon, and the sun\}

2. a month \{mo fítá lo na nže : pay him by the month\} \{nže na nže : month by month, every month\} \{í lángó ká nže otá : we stayed there three months\} - syn. moja - ngû 5 is a year - see also báá nže, báŋó nže

nzné, nzné tí mabóko N: a fingernail, a claw - see mabóko

nzenze N: a machete - syn. coupé-coupe, kpargbala - see zemba for a list of tools

nzere \(\text{[nzere, nzere]}\) V: to please, to give or receive pleasure, to taste sweet, to taste good \{kóbe ní aŋpí, anzeré pepe : the food was sour, it didn't taste good\} \{tongama anzeré na lé tí mo, mo sára : if it pleases you, you do it\} \{yí ní anzeré na mbi míngi : the thing pleases me greatly\} - see bé ... nzere, nzere na bé
nzere na bé-nzoni

nzere na bé V : to please, to give pleasure {yí só anzere na bé tí mbi : this thing pleases me}

nzí V : to steal {lo véní, lo nzí : he's the one who stole} {mbi nzí bulée tí sentinelle : I stole the bananas of the watchman} - see also zo tí nzí, wa nzí, which are terms for a thief

nzinga* N : poverty, poor - wa nzinga is a poor person

nzó N : corn, maize - syn. gbánza

nzoní [nzoní, nzoní, nゾンí, nゾンí, nゾン, nゾ, nゾ] An : 1. good, in the most general sense, nice {lo mú nzoní yí na í míngi : he gave us many good things} {í goe tí báa nzoní manièere só ála sára na koa tí yáká : we went to see the good manner in which they worked the fields} {kótôrô ní aekè nzoní pèpe : the village is no good} {ála sára na mbi nzoní téné míngi : they said many nice things to me} {mo fa na ála lége tí nzoní : show them a good way} {ndo aekè nzoní : the place is good, i.e. we are having good weather} - see bé nzoní - see also mbíirímbírí, which means straight or upright, nzere, meaning to please or to taste good - opp. sioni - see also eke nzoní

2. with verbs : well, nicely {mo sukûla ní nzoní : wash it well} {ála sára koa nzoní pèpe : they didn't do the work well} {vekè awòko nzoní : the okra was nicely tender} {lo sára nzoní míngi na mbi : he acted very well toward me} {mbi bara mo nzoní : I greet you cordially} - see gá nzoní, goe nzoní, dutí nzoní
s SP : a particle expressing politeness, endearment, supplication, etc.

(Exercise p. 147-148) (alla hé pémbé tī mbi pēpē s : please don't make
fun of my teeth!) (bara s : greetings!)

oignon** [onyôô, qyôô, ziq] N : an onion - some are grown locally, some
are imported from the Chad - they are used to season sauces

ole [ole, woli, wore, hure] V : to dry (tongana ndo acommencer tī ole,
mo bāa atongóro omānā sō : when the place begins to dry up, you can
see those six stars) (ngū nī aole : the stream dried up) - see kūrū

ôlēngô N : dried (ôlēngô susu : dried fish) - syn. kūrū

omanā [omanā, omâné] An : six - see ôko for the number system

omba [omba, wombâ] N : father's sister, aunt - see famille for the
kinship system

ôse [ôse, ûse, ôsi, ôsi, ôse] An : two - used in sāra na mabâko ôse - see
ôko for the number system

osiô [osiô, osyô, usio, usyô] An : four - see ôko for the number system

otâ An : three - see ôko for the number system

oui** [wii] I : yes (oui, mo hinga ake tongasô : yes, you know it is like
that) - opp. non
ôke [ôke, ôke] An : how many, how much {âzo ôke ayi ti sâra : how many people want to do it?} {ngéré ni ôke : how much is it?} {ngéré ni ôke ôke : how much are they apiece?} - (Grammar p. 57)

ôko : [ôko, ôko, ôko] An : one, only, alone, a certain, each, together {préavis aske nze ôko : notice is one month} {mbéní alú gi ôko : some planted only one} {mariage ni gi ôko awe : there is only one marriage, that's all} {mù mû yorô ôko na lá tí lo : take each (dose of) medicine on its day} {gi koa tì da tí kóli ôko awe : just the work of your husband's house only, that's all} {mbi bâa mïïïïë kóli ôko ... : I saw a certain youth ...} {mbi ôko awe : only me} {lo goe lo ôko na li tì hôtô : he went alone to the top of a hill} {i yâ samba ôko : we drank beer together} - see also bé ôko, lá ôko, lége ôko, óko ôko, ôko pepe, yi ôko - the number system is as follows (Grammar p. 45-47):

ôko - one omanâ - six bale ôko na nô ni ôko - eleven
ôse - two mbåsåmbårâ - seven bale ôse - twenty
otâ - three miombe - eight ngbangbu ôko - one hundred
osiô - four ngombâyâ - nine ngbangbu ôko na (nô ni) bale ôko - one hundred and ten
ukú - five bale ôko - ten kutu ôko - one thousand

the Sango numbers are used in counting most things, especially traditional things - they are used in counting money by pâta's (five-franc units) - French numerals are used in counting units of the metric system, in dates, and in most cases for counting money in francs - there is a large area of fluctuation between the two systems, but they are never mixed

ôko ôko [ôkoôko, kôkôkô] An : each and every one {zo ôko ôko aske gá : each and every person is coming}
ọko pepe An: not at all, not a single one (lo kọ ti fūta lo awe? ọko pepe: did he refuse to pay him? not at all) (zo alíngbi ti gbánzi na lo ọko pepe: one can withhold it from him not at all) (awara susu ọko pepe: they found not a single fish)
pâ éré V: to slander, to accuse on suspicion, to destroy someone's reputation (zo ní apâ éré tí lo: the man slandered him) - see also réclamer, which suggests accusation on more substantial grounds - sára makoró is to betray

paire** [pɛər] N: 1. sometimes, used as in French to mean a pair of anything
2. more commonly: a pair of shoes (lo vo paires óko: he bought one pair of shoes) - this refers especially to European style shoes, while pâpa is a sandal or thong and póró 3 and póró tí géré are general terms for any kind of shoe - French soulier is also used

pandé N: a pattern, a model, an image to be copied (mo sára na lége tí pandé ní: do it according to the pattern) - the model can be concrete, verbal, or ideal - photo suggests the image of the model in some contexts, though the two terms are not precisely correlated

pâpa N: sandals, thongs - the traditional sandals had soles of rawhide and a simple leather thong passing between the toes - since the arrival of European goods, many have soles made of pieces of automobile tire casings and thongs of inner tube rubber - the term is also applied to imported plastic thongs - póró 3 and póró tí géré are general terms for shoes, while paires 2 is a pair of European shoes

papa V: to quarrel, to argue passionately and with bitter feelings
{ála papa ngangó míngi: they quarreled bitterly} - dé kité means to object, to express doubts or reservations - tiri means to fight

papa N 1: a quarrel, a bitter argument, a dispute (papa ake mbéni pape: there is no more quarrel) - this is more specific than mbanga or téné, which can also refer to purely abstract or dispassionate matters
papa N 2 : a spoon, a spoonful (mo mú papa tí fûku 5ko : take one spoonful of flour)
papier** [papyée] N : 1. paper - syn. mbètì 1  
2. a document - syn. mbètì 2
pârâ N : an egg
pârâ (ti) kândo N : a chicken egg
pardon** [pardôç] N : 1. an apology, an excuse - by extension, any expression of a humble recognition of dependence or obligation (mbi mú pardon mingi na mo : I humbly apologize to you) (mbi mú pardon mingi na Nzapá : I express my humble and unworthy dependence upon God)
2. used as an interjection : a placating, apologetic, or ingratiating expression (pardon ita, i sâra téné só na pópó tí i pêpe ? : pardon me, brother, but didn't we agree to this thing between ourselves?)
pardonner** [pardonée] V : to forgive, to pardon, to excuse (mbi pardonner mbi monsieur : please forgive me, sir)
par jour** [parzuur] N : 1. a daily wage, as of a laborer (par jour tí álà askę ndé : their daily wage is different) - see nginzá, payer, fúta
2. also used, as in French, as a complement to the verb : by the day (amé na mbi nginzá gi par jour : they just pay me by the day)
pâsi N : suffering, especially that occasioned by burdensome toil (pâsi tí ýe só mbi eké bâa só. koa tí mbi ahé ndé tí mbi : what suffering I am experiencing! my work is too much for me) - used mostly in the expression bâa pâsi, to experience suffering (i bâa pâsi na bí ngbii, ndá adé, i wara ýi pêpe : we toiled all night, and at dawn we hadn't caught anything) - finéé means pain, ponó and sàna suggest suffering caused by the ill-will or malice of others, and mawa means misery
passer** [pasée] V : 1. to pass, to pass by, to pass through, to happen (mbi bâa ýi só apasser : I watch what happens) (álà passer na yâ tí
**passer (cont.)-pendere**

kôtôrô: they passed through the village (mbi passer concours ti mbi: I passed my examination) - si V means to happen, hâ V means to pass or pass on, wara can mean to pass an examination

2. to sift, to strain through a lieve, a colander, or a strainer, to drain (mo pîka, mo passer ngu nî kôé: you pound it and drain out the water (i.e. in a strainer)) (mo mû yangere mo passer na fûku nî: you take the sieve and sift the flour with it) - yangere V means to sift

3. a shortened form of repasser: to press clothes, to iron (mbi sâra koa ti passer bongô: I did the work of pressing clothes)

**pasteur** [pastêr] N: among Protestants, an ordained minister, a pastor - an ordained Catholic priest is père, while in both communions an unordained leader or catechist is catéchiste

pâta N: a unit of five francs - most retail prices are in multiples of five francs, and smaller pieces of money are very rarely used - money is often counted in pâta's, usually with Sango numerals (pâta osié: four pâta's, i.e. twenty francs - see franc, bon N, fûta, payer, nginza, ngéré, vo, ká V, vo ngéré, which all express financial concepts

**pâtârâ** N: a die for gambling (lo nzi nginza na pâtârâ: he stole money with dice) - see pika pâtârâ

**payer** [peyée] V: to pay, as for work or goods, to recompense for services or damages (lo payer nginza na ãzo ti kusâra: he paid money to the workmen) (lo payer impôt: he paid taxes) - syn. fûta - see also nginza, franc, pâta, bon, par jour, vo, ká, vo ngéré, ngéré, which express financial concepts

pé kâmba V: to twist rope, to make rope by twisting fibers - há is a more general verb, including the notions of weaving and plaiting

**pendère [pendere, pêndere]** An: 1. young, youth (âpendere agâ: the young (people) came) - used especially in pendere kôli, pendere wâle

2. beautiful, beauty (pendere bongô: beautiful clothes) (âla bâa pendere ti kôtôrô: they saw the beauty of the village) (pendere biá:
a beautiful song (mbiùng pendere mingi : I am very beautiful) - ngonî is a much less specific partial synonym - see zo

pendere kôli N : a young man, a youth, a male adolescent - in songs, sometimes kôli pendere - kpingba kôli is a mature man, pendere wâle is a young girl, mërengé is a child

pendere wâle N : a young girl, a young woman, a female adolescent
(âpendere wâle asâra kôbe : the young girls made food) - masia means specifically an unmarried girl of marriageable age - pendere kôli is a young man, mërengé is a child, kótá wâle is an old woman

penser** [pəsée, panzée] V : to think, to consider, to meditate (mbi penser mo əkə na téné ti tene : I think you have something to say) (mo penser tongana yç : what do you think?) (mbi penser mbi tene ... : I think ...) (mbi penser téné ni gbá : I considered the matter in vain) (lo penser ngbii : he meditated for a while) - syn. b'anda, bâa ?, báa ... tene, bâa tongana, hâ, gi bé

péré N : a generic term for grass (tongana coton ni asungba awe, mo goe na yâ ti ngonda ti gi pére ti sakpâ ni : when the cotton bolls burst, you go into the bush to hunt for grass for the baskets) - various kinds of grass have specific uses :
bebé is a grass used as a roofing material
nzanza is a coarse, tough grass used to make large heavy-duty baskets, fences, and granary walls
sosongo is a kind of reed used in making the framework of a roof before tying on the bébé

père** [pér, lepér] N : 1. a Catholic ordained priest - most priests are European, but a few are Africans - Protestant ordained leaders are called pasteur, and lay leaders in both churches are called catéchiste
2. by extension : the Catholic church or mission (mbi sâra écôle na père : I went to school at the Catholic mission)

peut-êtêre** [petêtre, pôtêtre] C : perhaps, possibly (peut-êtêre, tongana mbi kúi na deux heures ... : perhaps, if I die in the early afternoon ...)
peut-être (cont.)-pekô ...yô

{peut-être bé tí lo ayí no pepe : possibly he doesn't love you} -
syn. hînga pepe

pé V : 1. to wave the hand, to beckon or signal with the hand {mbi pé
ti tí mbi sí ázo aînîgá mbi sâra tîné pepe : I signal with my hand
so that people will realize I can't talk}
2. to winnow grain and other kinds of food {lo pé saleté tí sindì :
he winnowed the chaff of the sesame} {lo pé kôá tí bobo : he winnowed
the wings of the termites} - diki is a syn. - the winnowing is done
by letting the grain fall into the wind from a broad woven scoop -
sosa means to thresh, to pound the grain before winnowing

pekô [pekô, pekô, pekô, pikô, pikô, pokô, pokô] N : 1. the back, as a
part of the anatomy {lo kpaka pekô tí lo : he scraped his back} -
gbundâ and ndâ refer to the lower back, the hips, the buttocks - see
téré 1
2. the rest, the following portion, the follow-up of a communication
{lo sâra pekô tí mbi nî : he wrote the rest of the letter} {mamâ
asâra pekô nî : mother followed it (i.e. the letter) up} - cf. ndâ 3
which refers to the meaning of the communication
3. used in a tí phrase, as the complement of a noun : following,
ext, subsequent {dimanche tí pekô : the following Sunday, next
Sunday}

pekô (nî/tí) N : used frequently in a na 3 phrase : after, afterwards,
behind, in back of {na pekô nî, mbi sâra koa : afterwards, I worked)
{mamâ asâra tîné na pekô (nî) : mother spoke afterwards} {âlé ti lo
âsi na pekô tí i : his wife arrived after us} {ârî nô na pekô tí
lo : they called out after him} {kapîta só aekò na pekô tí makunzi : the
headman who is after the chief} {mbi dutí na pekô tí écôle : I
stayed behind the school} - see kiri na pekô, mû pekô, kà na pekô,
soe na pekô, tomba pekô - syn. ndâ nî - opp. devant, gbé lé

pekô nî anînga pepe Av : used pre-clausally soon afterwards - see nînga
pekô ... yô Av : used pre-clausally : a while later {pekô nî ayô kété ... :
some time later ...}
pémbé N: a tooth - kété pémbé is a molar, kété pémbé is an incisor - see yängá the mouth

pémbé tí dole N: an elephant tusk

pepe [pepe, pepe, ap, æpe] SP: the negative sentence particle (Grammar p. 148-152) - used generally at the end of the sentence, though a few particles can follow it (ála hé pémbé tí mbi pepe o: please don't laugh at my teeth) (mbi wara bongó pepe wa: I don't receive clothes) (gí ní laa pepe?: isn't that just it?) (tougasó pepe, ka mbi mú: if it were not for that, I would have taken it) - see also ōko pepe, hingga pepe, língbi pepe, pekó ní sním nga pepe

pète V: to pound, to crush by pounding, to crush (mbi mú ló tí káráko, mó zó kóé awe, mó mú kugbé tí tomate mó pète da mó sára na potápó: you take peanuts and roast them, you take tomato leaves and pound them into it and make a mush) - nsó 3 and nsa mean to crush by rolling - pète is used of relatively soft things, e.g. manioc, while soso means to thresh grain - pika 1 is a general term for pounding

photo** [fotóo] N: a photograph, a picture, an illustration (só photo tí lo: this is his photograph, his picture) (ngó tí Pierre ake tongana photo tí église: Peter's boat is like an illustration of the ch. roch) - pandé is a model, a pattern, though the two terms are not precisely correlated

1. píka [píka, péka] V: 1. to hit, to strike, to beat, to pound (ála píka měrèngé só: they hit this child) (lo píka gozó: she beat the manioc) (lo píka ngo: he beat the drum) (lo píka kpi tí sindi: she pounded the sesame paste) - pète is a more specific term for pounding relatively soft foods, e.g. manioc, while soso means to thresh grain or to pound relatively hard foods - see also ngú ... píka
2. by extension, in a context of hunting: to kill (lo píka cochon ní na ngombe: he killed the pig with a gun)
3. by extension, in a context of building: to nail roofing to a house (lo píka da ní na tôle: he nailed sheet-metal roofing on the house)
píka berá-pitå

píka berá V : to wage a war - see also goe berá na li ti, tiri, ti na ndo

píka ... biá V : to play music, either on an instrument or on a record player (mbi yi ti píka na mo pendere biá : I want to play for you a beautiful song) - French disque can replace biá - kunde, a sort of traditional guitar, and ngombé, a sort of xylophone, are the two major instruments with variable pitch, while ngâ is the drum - sanze is a sort of portable instrument consisting of iron keys fastened to a hollow wooden body - úlu is used of wind instruments

píka mbéti V : to type, to print (lo píka mbéti só na machine : he typed this letter on a typewriter) - sára mbéti is to write, díko mbéti is to read

píka ndembú V : to play soccer, by far the most popular of imported sports or games - from the fact that balls are made of rubber, ndembú - also píka ballon

píka pátárá V : to gamble with dice, to throw the dice (lo píka pátárá : he threw the dice)

píka senga V : to telephone, to telegraph (mbi yi ti píka senga na mo : I want to phone you) - from senga, a wire

píndírí (tí wá) N : embers, usually smoldering - lé ti wá is glowing coals, charbon is charcoal

piquet** [pikée] N : 1. a stake, e.g. to mark the corners of a lot 2. a field of the legally prescribed size for planting cotton, in the days of compulsory cultivation of cotton - the fields were marked off and the work supervised by petty agricultural officials called bôî coton

piqûre** [pikuur] N : a hypodermic injection - European medicine is classified into piqûre and quinine, which means any form of dry pellets of medicine - the injection is popularly ascribed much greater potency - yorô is a generic term for medicine

pitå N : fornication, adultery - see sára pitå, wâle ti pitå
pitó N : the foreskin - kàngé is the penis, fáa ganzá is to circumsize

place** [pláse, plásí] N : a place {mbi kę place tí mamá tí mbi : I have rejected my mother's (home) place} {mo sí na place ní : you arrived at the place} - syn. ndo

poche** [bózo] N : a pocket, a pocketbook, a wallet - by confusion of the French word with bozó, a carrying bag

pointe** [pónte] N : a nail (for building)

pont** [pónt] N : a bridge - smaller bridges are often built of logs thrown across a stream slightly above the level of the water and covered with rocks and earth - such bridges are often washed out when the waters rise during the rainy season

pópó N 1 : a horizontal or oblique ornamental scar on the cheek just below the eyes, esp. among the Yakoma

pópó [pópó, pópó] N 2 : midst, middle - used with introductory na 3 : between, among {na pópó tí ála : among them} {na pópó tí lo na íta tí lo : between him and his brother} - syn. bé, milieu - used in pópó hótó

pópó hótó N : a valley

póró [póró, póró] N : 1. skin, hide, bark, shell (vurú póró : white skin) (póró tí ze : leopard hide) (póró tí kalá : snail shell)
2. leather, rawhide
3. a generic term for shoes (ála yú póró tí ála : they put on their shoes) - syn. póró tí géré - pápa are sandals or thongs, paire 2 are European style shoes - French soulier is also used

póró tí géré N : shoes - syn. póró 3

póró tí yángá N : a lip {póró tí yángá tí lo ane pape : his lips are not thick} - yángá is the mouth

póró tí zembe N : a sheath or scabbard for a knife, zembe

poste** N : 1. [póst, lapóstë, lapóstâ] : a post-office, the post-office
poste (cont.)-préfet

department

2. [pôost, póste] : an administrative center (Bossangoa poste : the administrative center of Bossangoa)

pousser** [pûsu, pusée] V : 1. to push, to propel, to incite, to urge strongly, to impel (yi sô apousser i, si i sâra koa : this thing incited (or impelled) us to work) (lo pousser ngô na lé tî ngû : he propelled the boat over the water) - forcer means to compel - bi is used of propelling a boat
2. especially in injunctions : move over (mo pousser! : move over!)

ponó N : suffering, often such as results from the ill-will or malice of others, persecution - used in hô ponó, to suffer - syn. sâna, vi tî vundû - finôc suggests physical pain, pâsi the suffering of burdensome toil, and mawa can mean misery

potopôto [potopôto, potopôto, pôpôto, paropôte] N : anything of a soft mushy consistency : mud, soft clay, mush, gruel (mo sâra potopôto kété, lo yô, si lo ts kpingba kôbè : you make a little gruel, and he drinks it before eating solid food) (âla sâra kété potopôto, amontèr na ndûzû : they made a great (pile of) mud, it went up into the air) (mbi fàa kéké tî potopôto : I cut the poles (upon which is put) the mud (i.e. to build a wall)) - kôbè is the staple dough of manioc or mil, kása is a sauce, ndûc is potter's clay

préfecture** [prefektûr] N : the name given since independence to the former région, one of the approximately ten administrative units into which the Central African Republic is divided - each is subdivided into two or more units called sous-préfecture - the head of a préfecture is a préfet - see république for the administrative organization of the country

préfet** [prefêt] N : the career civil servant who is the appointed administrative head of a préfecture - before independence, the French official who filled this office was a chef de région or commandant - see république for the administrative organization of the country
président** [prezidɔ̃, prezidɔ̃] N: 1. the president of the Republic, often called président tè république - see république for the administrative organization of the country
2. the elected chief official of a collectivité, a sort of township chairman - usually called président tè collectivité, he replaced after independence the roughly hereditary canton 2

propre** [prɔ̃pr, própr, prɔ̃prɔ] Av: clean, properly {mo sukúla propre : wash it clean} {mbi hinga Sango bien propre : I know Sango really properly} {mo tɔ kòbe nɔoní propre : cook food nicely and cleanly}
-oppp. saleté

pulú nzo (purú nzó ?) N: cold corn meal mush cut into slices and sold

pupu N: wind - the proper verb is ña (pupu aíá : the wind blew)

pupu sése N: dust - other kinds of powder include: fúku, a flour, meal, or similar fine powder - mbúlu, or gunpowder - mbió, a red powder used to adorn the body of participants in a certain possession dance - mbutu, or sand

purú N: 1. excrement - sára purú is to defecate - sára purú na méné is to have dysentery
2. by extension : slag from smelting, or any waste of similar consistency (purú ní así gigí kòé, na taá wé ní aseké : all the slag runs out, and the true iron remains)
qualité** [kalitée] N : sort, kind - a sophisticated syn. for maré, the general classificatory term - used especially in speaking of merchandise

quand même** [kaméem] C : 1. even, even if (quand même mbi yu pepe tîné ake pepe : even if I don't wear it there isn't any problem) - syn. même
2. nevertheless (quand même mbi ngbâ ti sâra écôle : nevertheless I continued to go to school)

quartier** [kartyee] N : an administrative subdivision of a large city, e.g. Bangui - frequently based on ethnic divisions - each quartier has its chief, makunzi - see république for the administrative organization of the country

quinine** [kiníin] N : originally, quinine - by extension : any sort of dry pellet of medicine to be taken by mouth : pill, tablet, capsule - the other major classification of European medicine is piqûre, a hypodermic injection - yorô is a generic term for medicine

quitter** [kitée] V : to leave (mbi quitter na Rafai : I left Rafai) (lo quitter wâle ti lo : he left his wife) - syn. lôndê 2, zia - goe is a much more general term
réclamer** [klaamée, kalamée, karnamée, kalamé] V : to accuse {wâle ni réclamer kóli tí lo : the woman accused her husband} {lo réclamer mbi na zo só séngé séngé : he accused me to this man absolutely for no reason} - râ éré is a syn. suggesting more specifically idle, malicious, and unfounded accusation and slander - sâra makoró is to betray - zi na nghanga means to acquit

région** [rezygg] N : before independence, the largest administrative unit within the country - replaced since independence by the préfecture - the administrative head of the région was a chef de région or commandant - see république for the administrative organization of the country

repasser V : see passer 3

république** [repûbliik, republiik, larepubliik] N : a republic - esp. the Central African Republic, properly called République Centrafricaine - the administrative organization of the country, before and after independence, with the terms corresponding horizontally, is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Before Independence</th>
<th>Since Independence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>unit:</td>
<td>unit:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oubangui-Chari</td>
<td>RCA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>région</td>
<td>préfecture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>district</td>
<td>préfet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>canton</td>
<td>sous-préfecture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ville</td>
<td>sous-préfet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kótóró (village)</td>
<td>collectivité</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quartier (ward)</td>
<td>président ti c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makunzi</td>
<td>maire</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The few larger cities have always had a separate European type municipal structure, and have been called ville

ri V : to be thoroughly crushed so that no grainy particles remain {kârâko ni ari nzoni mingi : the peanuts were very smoothly crushed} - used
especially of oleaginous material, *kpi* - *ng* 3, *naka* refer to the crushing process by rolling, *ri* refers to the resulting state

*riga* N: a throwing knife - usually an F-shaped iron blade about eighteen inches long in its largest dimension and used as a projectile in war and hunting - see *zamba* for a list of weapons.
sá V : to pour, to spill (ngú asá na sése : the water spilled on the ground) (zo asá méné tì mbéni zo : someone spilled the blood of another person) (lo sá ngú na sambé : he poured water into a dish) - yuru means to leak or seep, gara means to flow (as blood in the veins), soa means to flow (as a river), tuku means to tip over, to dump out

sá N : salt made by burning the leaves of certain plants and leaching the ashes - also called vingó tì angonda or vingó tì basánze - in contrast to adorónu, or imported rock salt - vingó is the generic term for salt

sac** [sáki] N : 1. a sack, a bag
2. much more frequently : a sum of one thousand francs (manoeuvre ate n'ingp ti ngonda or yingô ti basânze - in contrast to adorónu, or imported rock salt - vingó is the generic term for salt

sái [sáy] N : the yeast used to brew biribiri, a kind of beer - mamá tí mápa is the kind of yeast used in bread

sakpá N : any sort of basket - the largest baskets are about eighteen inches high and three feet across, are made of nzanza and are used for carrying raw cotton to market - a smaller open-work basket lined with leaves is used for transporting manioc flour

saleté** [saltée, sartée, sardé, sale+é, saliié] An : 1. dirty (mbí eksa saleté : I was really dirty) (mo sukúla téré ní pepe, angbá saleté : you didn't wash the sides of it, it remains dirty) - opp. propre
2. in talking of, e.g. a cotton garden : weeds

sambá N : a co-wife, i.e. the mutual relationship of the several wives of a polygynous husband (mamá amú tì lo, na ásambá tì lo amú tì álà : mother took hers, and her co-wives took theirs) (na heure só wále adú só, ásambé saider lo : at the time when a woman is giving birth, the co-wives help her) - wále is a wife, kóli a husband
samba N : a generic term for fermented, especially brewed beverages
{samba asára lo : beer is affecting him, i.e. he is drunk} {i bôngbi
téré i yô samba lége sko : we got together and drank beer} - samba
includes bière imported beer, biribiri a grain beer, duma mead,
lakpoto a beer made of corn, kanguya palm wine, vin imported wine,
and by extension hârâge and ngbâgo distilled beverages

sambéla [sambéla, sambúla, sambúra] V : to pray, to worship {mbi goe na
kéké tì sambéla ubéni pépe : I no longer go to a tree to pray} {í
sambéla Nzapá lé À'ô : we always worship (or pray to) God} {ío sambéla
ngbangatí mb' : pray for me} -syn. dika 3 - sepála and gonda mean to
praise, but the first applies to God, and the second to creatures -
zúku means to bow, to kneel (as in worship)

sáná N : suffering, usually caused by someone's ill-will or malice,
persecution {lo yì mo pépe laa aska sára mo sáná só : it's because
he doesn't love you that he causes you so much suffering} - ponô and
yì tì vundú are syn. - finóo suggests physical pain, náà the pain
of burdensome toil, and mawa means misery

sandúku N : a wooden box or chest, a wooden home-made suitcase (sandúku
tí uginza : a money box) {álà zia na yá tì sandúku tì álà : they put
it into their chest} - boîte is smaller and usually not wooden,
caisse is a crate

sangbi lége N : a cross-roads - syn. croisement

sa (ngú) V : to swim {lo hinga tì sa ngú : he knows how to swim} {lo sa
jusqu'à na mbé ngú : he swam all the way over to the other side of
the river}

sanze* N : a small musical instrument on which iron keys are plucked with
the fingers and the sound is amplified by a hollow, oblong wooden body
to which the keys are fastened - see nîka biá

sánzô N : pus, or other thick milky discharge from the body - syn. ngú
vuru

sará N : the itch, scabies - an eruptive, contagious, and itchy skin
disease, very prevalent among children
sára [sára, sála, sár] V: 1. a virtually empty verb meaning basically to do or make - hence, depending on the object: to make, to create, to fabricate, to manufacture, to prepare, to constitute, to institute, to establish, to build, to erect, etc. (ála sára yí ni gbá : they (tried to) do the thing in vain) (ála sára da : they built a house) (fâdê í sára gouvernement : we will establish a government) (fâdê ãla sára sotângana yê : what will you do?) (lo sára sioní na mbi : he acted very badly toward me, i.e. treated me badly) (gi Nzapâ 5ko alingbi ti sára só : only God can do that) (wâle só sâra ta : this woman is making a pot) (mô sâra potopôto na lo : make him gruel) (í yî ti sâra yákâ : we want to make a garden) (ála sára wá : they made a fire) - leke can be used in many of the same ways - see also the many entries in which sára is the first element

2. with na and a noun denoting a person: to serve, to work for (mbi sára na lo ngú otá : I served him (or worked for him) three years) - see also sára koa, sára bôi

3. with a noun denoting a function or office: to serve as (lo sára pasteur tí i : he served as our pastor)

4. with a subject denoting a state, an emotion, an illness, or a circumstance and an object denoting a person: to affect (kobéla asâra lo : disease affected him, i.e. he was sick) (mîtotô asâra mbi : fear affected me, i.e. I was afraid) (dé asâra mbi : cold affects me, i.e. I am cold) (nzala tí mbi asâra mbi : desire for you affects me, i.e. I miss you) (samba asâra lo : beer affects him, i.e. he is drunk) - see ngonzo ... sâra - where the emotions are concerned, gbô expresses a stronger idea - see gbô for the emotions, kobéla for the illnesses

5. with a noun denoting a period of time: to spend (mbi sára ngú otá ká : I spent three years there)

6. when the context, linguistic or situational, makes clear what the complement is, sára can substitute for any of the entries in which it is the head word (koa ... mbi sára : ... I worked)

sara N: a forked pole or stick, esp. the kind that serves as an upright post supporting cross-beams in construction
sâra attention-sâra kôbe

sâra attention** [tʊsyˈɡɛ] V : to be careful, to watch out, to pay attention (lo sâra attention pepe : he wasn't careful)

sâra bé 5ko V : to have fellowship, to agree with (âla sâra bé 5ko : they had fellowship) - sâra gôngô, gâ gôngô suggest a reconciliation after conflict

sâra biâ V : to sing - syn. ké biá

sâra bon V : to incur debt, to buy on credit, to take out a loan (lo sâra bon tí boîte otá : he bought three boxes on credit)

sâra bôi V : to act as a servant, to kowtow (mbi lingbi tí sâra bôi na mo pepe : I refuse to kowtow to you) - bôi is a servant

sâra bûbá V : to act foolishly or irresponsibly (tongana mbi sâra bûbá na sése tí babá tí mbi, fadé àita tí mbi kôé aka zonga mbi : if I act irresponsibly in the land of my father, all my brothers will curse me)

sâra école V : to go to school (mbi sâra école na père : I go to school at the Catholic mission)

sâra goigôi V : to be lazy (âla sâra goigôi fadesô mingi : people are very lazy nowadays) - see also sâra mbânâ, which suggests a more willful or malicious laziness

sâra íno V : to urinate - a euphemistic syn. is goe (na) ngonda

sâra isorô V : to converse, to chat - syn. causer - see also isorô, sâra téné

sâra kâi V : to paddle (a canoe), to row (a boat)

sâra kirîmba* V : to agree with a co-worker to give him all or a share of one's wages one month in return for all or a share of his wages the next month - by this reciprocal arrangement, the various members of a group of co-workers in turn have a fairly large amount of money at one time - see fûta, payer, ngingza, te ngingza

sâra kôbe V : to prepare food - syn. leke kôbe - mé kôbe means specifically to prepare the staple dough
sâra koa, sâra kusâra-sâra ndôkô

sâra koa, sâra kusâra V : to work

sâra kótôrô V : to establish permanent residence (lo sâra kótôrô na Bambari : he established permanent residence at Bambari) - see kótôrô, dutî 2, lângô 3

sâra makorô V : to betray (lo sâra makorô tî mbi sî mbunzû atomba mbi : he betrayed me so that the white man fired me) - pâ érë means more specifically to accuse idly and maliciously, réclamer means to accuse in general

sâra manière** [mayêre] V : to use ingenuity, guile, wiles, or tricks {kpikara asâra manière, lo lângô tongana lo kûi : the pangolin used guile, he played dead} {fadé mbi sâra manière tî bâa : I'll use ingenuity to see} - see manière, gi lége

sâra mariage** [mariyâzi] V : to marry - syn. marier

sâra matânga V : to celebrate

sâra mawa V : 1. to cause suffering or misery (kobéla sô asâra mawa mingi : this disease causes much misery) - see bâa finôo, bâa pâsi, sâra sâna for related ideas
2. to pity, to have mercy (mo sâra mawa na mbi : have pity on me)

sâra mbadi V : to practise divination (lo sâra mbadi nî : he practised divination about it) - syn. bâa mbadi

sâra mbânâ V : to be wilfully or maliciously lazy or idle, to act irresponsibly, to malingér, to featherbed (mérangé nî asâra mbânâ na lo : the youth was deliberately idle for him) - stronger than sâra goigôî

sâra mbâtî V : to write (lo hînga tî sâra mbâtî : he knows how to write) -dikô mbâtî is to read, pîka mbâtî is to type or print

sâra na mbôko ëse V : to do things half-heartedly, with a divided allegiance or attention (lo sâra na mbôko ëse pepe, mais na bë ñko : he did not do it half-heartedly, but with a will) - opp. bë ñko

sâra ndôkô V : of a plant : to bloom - ndôkô is a flower
sára ngangó V: to treat harshly, to do violence, to be violent, to violate,
to use force on someone (jadé i sára ngangó na ázo só ayí ti sára
sioní na i, i tomba ála : we will treat harshly those who wish to treat
us wrongly, we will drive them out)

sára ngiá V: 1. to have good fellowship, to chat (i sára ngiá, i te köbe
ško : we chatted, we ate together) - cause and sára isorô are more
strictly restricted to the conversational aspect of the relationship
2. to play, to have fun (ála sára ngiá mingi na lá tí matânga : they
had a lot of fun on the day of the festival)

sára ngonzo V: to be angry (ála sára ngonzo, ála commencer tì tiri :
they were angry, they began to fight) - syn. ngonzo ... sára -
ngonzo ... gbô is stronger

sára pekö ní V: to act in response, to follow up, to go on with (mamá
asára pekö ní : mother responded to it) (i eke sára na ála pekö ti
téné ní : we are going on with (ensuing) matters) - see pekö (ní/tí)

sára pitô V: to commit fornication or adultery

sára purû V: to defecate - a euphemistic syn. is goe (ne) ngonda

sára purû na mëné V: to have dysentery

sára sáná V: to persecute, to cause suffering to another (lo sára sáná
na mo : he caused you much suffering) - hû ponô is the subjective
experience of such persecution

sára sôngô V: to make peace, to be reconciled (ála sára sôngô : they
were reconciled) - sé sôngô is a syn. - sára bé ško suggests harmony
without preceding conflict - leke téné means to compose a difference,
to bring a dispute to an end

sára téné V: to speak, to talk (mo sára téné na mbi : speak to me) (kété
mérângé asára téné pepe : small children don't talk) (lo sára téné
kirikiri : he's talking nonsense) - beng means to say, to tell -
cause, sára isorô, sára ngiá mean to chat, to converse, to visit -
hûnda is to ask, kirí téné is to answer, dé kite is to object, dé
kôngô or toto is to shout
sâra vene, sâra wâtâkâ V: to lie - syn. tenê vene

sauvage** [sovâaz, sovâasi] An: pertaining to traditional ways, in a strongly pejorative sense; barbarous, old-fashioned, etc. (yîngô tô sauvage: home-made traditional salt) (babá tô mbi ake sauvage pepe: my father wasn't a savage) - much stronger than basärê, which applies only to things - opp. civiliser and service

savon** [savô] N: soap - one can find imported soap, locally-made European type soap, and locally-made Muslim soap

sé V: to be bitter (fûku tô gozo asë: manioc flour is bitter) (quinine asë: quinine is bitter) - kpi means to be sour, nsere to be sweet

seko N: chimpanzee, a relatively rare animal - see yama tô ngonda

semaine** [semëen, semëen, sâmëen] N: a week - dimanche 2 is more common

séndâ tô géré N: 1. the sole of the foot - see géré
   2. a footprint - see also géré tô yama

senga N: a wire - used in pika sensa, to telephone or telegraph

sengé [sëngé, sëngé] An: a general term denoting the absence of something which is specified by the linguistic and situational context - hence: naked, worthless, purposeless, senseless, insignificant, free, well, for nothing, etc. (sengé zo: an ordinary person, i.e. one without distinction) (lo réclamer mbi sëngé sëngé: he accused me without reason) (sô sëngé: that is nothing) (sô ake kusára tô sëngé pepe: that is not work without value) (yî tô sëngé: a worthless thing) (mo mà sëngé: you heard without difficulty) (zo ake hända mbi sëngé: someone is simply tricking you) (téré tô mbi ake sëngé: my body is naked, or my body is well (i.e. absence of clothes or disease, depending on context) (mbi ake sëngé: I'm well) (mbi tô gi ngounda sëngé: I ate greens without anything else) (ziô lo sëngé: leave him alone) (lo mû na mbi sëngé: he gave it to me free, i.e. for nothing)

sentinelle** [sâtinëzl, sinzîri] N: a watchman

sepâla V: to praise (âla sepâla Nzapâ: they praised God) - used only of
sepála (cont.)-si

God, while *gonda* is used of others - *sambéla* and *diko* mean to pray, to worship

**service** [sérviss, sérvisi, sciawvisi, sárawisi] N : 1. employment in a European-type job, especially away from home (tongana mbi wara service, sí mbi goe na Bangui : if I get a job, then I'll go to Bangui) (í gâ na service, sí i hinga Sango : we got a job, and then learned Sango)

2. pertaining to civilization or to European ways (na service atene, mo vo sése tî mo, mais na kótôrô tî mbi, i vo sése vôngó pepe : according to civilized ways, you buy land, but in my village, we didn't buy land) (kôbe tî service : European or civilized food) - syn. *civiliser* - opp. basânze, and esp. sauvage

sése [sése, sísí, sísé] N : earth, world, land, soil, ground (mo kinda mbi na sése : you knocked me to the ground) (azo kôé tî sése sô : all the people of the world) (sése tî République Centrafricaine : the land of the Central African Republic) (sése tî Âbanu : the land of the Gbanu) (koâ tî sése : the work of the soil) (yâna tî sése : land animals) - zia ... na sése means to set aside - bi ... na sése means to throw away, to discard, to abandon - used with na 3

sambé [sambé, sembé, sambé] N : a dish - dû sambé is a deep dish, kopo is also a relatively deep container - kolôngô is a wide flat container, a platter or basin - kàngô is a gourd dipper, ngângâ is a gourd bottle - te is a pot or kettle - ebâra bûba is a frying pan

sí téRé V : to recline (lo sí téRé tî lo : he reclined) - largé refers primarily to sleeping

sí V 1 : 1. of time or place : to arrive, to reach (mamâ alôndô na Bangui asi na ndo só : mother left Bangui and arrived here) (mbi si awe : I have arrived) (mbéti ake si na i hio pepe : letters don't reach us quickly) (heure tî écôle asi : the time for school has arrived) (así na là kúi : it came to sunset, i.e. sunset came) (así na heure tî nzala : a time of famine came) - see also *gâ 2* and *gâ 3* - goe sí under *goe* considers the action from the point of departure - opp.
lénô, quitter, zía

2. to appear (gbikì asi singó na térè ti mbi : sweat appeared on my body) - syn. si gigì

si V 2 : to fill, to be filled (ngú asi ta : the water filled the pot) (tè ti mbi asi na ngiâ : my heart is full of joy)

si C : a sequential connective (Grammar p. 93-99) : and so, so then, so that (mo tůku na yá tí kopo, si mɔ yɔ́ nzoni : you pour it into a container, and then you drink it) (akɔ nzoni mɔ gά mɔ píka lè ti mbi si mbi hίŋga mɔ sèkè mérèngé : it's good for you to come and slap my face so that I'll know that you are just a child) (ábáa pásì mìngi na yá tí ngú bale osìd, sí agá kótá : it suffered much for forty years, and then became great)

2. optionally follows pre-clausal constructions (sè vendi (si) akè nzoni : this is what is good) (biri (si) madame amû bongó na mbi : it was yesterday that Madam gave me the clothes)

si gigì V : to emerge, to come into view, to appear, to come out (yàma ní akè si gigì na mbènì kétè dà : the animal was coming out of a small hole) (tongana mbi si gigì na gbé tí kétè aww .. : when I had emerged from under the trees ..) (ábákoyà asi gigì mìngi na yàkà ní : the baboons came into view in the field in great numbers)

síliki N : a head kerchief, a head scarf - worn almost universally by women and girls, esp. when they are dressed up

sindi N : sesame - a widespread secondary crop, part of the group of oleaginous foods called kpi N - an ingredient of many sauces - see kàsa

singó N : arrival (singó tí mɔ na Bangui ... : upon your arrival in Bangui ...)

- from si V 1

sinziri N : see sentinelle

sioni [sioni, sioni, syoni, sôni, sôni] An : bad, evil, in a very general sense (zo tí sioni : an evil person) (wètì tí sioni : a bad letter or book) (àlá bàa tongana sioni : they considered it bad) (tɔntè sioni tí mɔ ... : because of your badness ...) (kòbèlå ti sioni : a bad
sioní (cont.)-sous-préfecture

sickness} {âla sâra sioní mingi : it is very bad} {âla sâra sioní mingi na í : they did us much evil, they treated us badly} - kirikiri means crooked, either physically or morally - opp. azoni

siriri N : peace, concord, harmony {âbi sâra siriri na lo : I achieved harmony with him} - syn. sôngé - see also bé ñko - opp. berâ, tiri, papa N 1 which denote various kinds of conflict

sisi N : thorns, burrs that grow close to the ground - see kî

sô An : a deictic and "relative" adjunctive (Grammar p. 47-53) : this, that {apîka mérengé sô : they hit this girl} {da sô : this house} {wâle sô amû kòli : this woman took a husband} {tîmê sô wî aske na yâ ni : a stone in which there is iron, lit. this stone, there is iron in it} {na lá ni sô mbi goe ... : on the day when I went ..., lit. on that day, I went ...} {sô aske kusâra ti wâle : that is the work of women} {sô sôngé : that's all right} {sô mô tene awe (sô), fadé mbi sâra : since you have said this, I will do it} - used in lá sô, ndo sô

so V : to save, to rescue {lo so mbi na mabôko ti bâmâra : he rescued me from the lion}

sçá N : a needle - fû V 1 is to sew

soigner** [swanyée, swâyée, sqyée] V : to care for (a sick person), to treat medically {docteur asoigner mbi gbâ : the doctor treated me in vain} {âla soigner téré ti ñzo : they treat the bodies of people} - ça va, and other verbs listed under it, mean to recover

sôngó N : peace, harmony {âmbéni amû kusâra ti gbá na berâ, âmbéni amû na sôngó : some seized the power of a king by war, others took it peacefully} - syn. siriri - bé ñko means concord, unity of feeling, fellowship - opp. berâ, tiri, papa N 1 which denote conflict - see also sô sôngó, sâra sôngó

sônzô N : the African hunting dog (Lycaon picta) - a wild dog

sous-préfecture** [suprefektûr] N : an administrative unit intermediate between the préfecture and the collectivité - before independence it
was called district - the chief officer is a sous-préfet - see république for the administrative organization of the country

sous-préfet** [souspréfet] N : the appointed career civil service chief officer of a sous-préfecture - see république for the administrative organization of the country

so [so, sos] V : to hurt, to ache, to pain, to harm (kobélá ní sos ah! ndó ní : this disease hurts beyond measure) (koa tí mbunú aso zo míngi : work for white people hurts people greatly) (li tí mbi aso mbi : my head hurts me) - see sa bë, bë ... sos

sô N : a trap, a cord snare (tongana nô goe na yáká tí mbéni zo, na yama așka na sô tí lo, nô mû pëpa : if you go to the field of another person, and there is an animal in his trap, do not take it) - syn. ngindá, kámbe 3

sôa V 1 : to comb (mbi sôa li tí mbi : I combed my head) - see sôa li

sôa V 2 : to flow (ngû ní sôa gi na place sô : the water flowed in only one place) - gara is used of blood - yûru means to leak or seep, sá means to pour or spill liquid

sôa li N : a comb

sô bë V : to grieve (têné sô sô bë tí mbi míngi : this matter grieves me greatly)

sôko N : rust, corrosion (sôko ate wë ní : the rust has eaten the iron)

sôsô V : to break wind

sôsô V : to thresh, to pound grain and similar foods so as to loosen the husks before winnowing - this is done in a mortar, kpu - to winnow is diki or pë 2 - pete is to mash or pound soft food, e.g. manioc - ng, mëka mean to crush by rolling

sôsônga N : a reed (Fennisetum purpureum Schum. and Thon. ?) which is used in making the framework of a roof - these reeds are tied horizontally at close intervals across the rafters, and the grass is then tied to the reeds - see péré for a list of grasses - see li tí da
su I : an injunction or warning to a child to desist from something he is about to do, e.g. make noise, take something, or eat before being given permission - hence : hush, stop (su mérengé mo dutí : hush, child, sit down)

su V : to shine - used only of the sun (mo kú jusqu'à là asu na téré ní : wait until the sun shines beside it) - zá is used of other shiny or shining things

súku V : 1. to swell (yá tì mbi asúku : my stomach swelled)
2. followed by na and a noun denoting a person : to scold, to reprimand angrily (mo çké súku na lo : you scold him) - syn. zíngé 2 is less strong

sukúla [sukúla, sukúra] V : 1. to wash (lo sukúla téré tì lo : he washed his body) (lo sukúla bongó : he washed clothes) - syn. sukúla ngú
2. more generally : to cleanse, to sweep, to weed (a garden) - balayer is a more common syn.

sukúla ngú V : to bathe (tongena mo londó na koa, mo gá mo sukúla ngú, mo yú bongó tì mo : when you've left the job, you come and bathe and put on your clothes)

sukúla photo V : to develop and print photographs - see photo, tirer photo

súmá N : a dream, a vision - dreams are considered to be communications from the spirits of persons seen, especially those of dead relatives (tóró) - a great deal of weight is attached to dreams, in both a literal and symbolic interpretation - syn. mosúmá, báá li

sumári [sumári, sumbári] N : a male secret society originating among the Banda but prevalent among a number of other tribes - members are initiated, and are given special names - they participate in a number of lodge activities, including a secret language and a special dance (lo goe sumári awe : he's gone sumári, i.e. has become a member, or has gone to participate in the activities) (ála çké dò sumári : they are dancing the sumári) - see dódó - lengé is a Yakoma female society

sungba V : to burst (coton asungba : the cotton bolls burst)
asungba : the thunder bursts)- see the ideophone kpu', which expresses an explosive sound

sûru V : to split (gbândâ ní asku sûru : the net was splitting) (asûru na mbi fondo 5ko : he split a plantain for me) (lo yi ti sûru na kêkê : he wants to split a log with it) (âla sûru téré ti âla, âla fâa téré ti âla : they cut their bodies) (tongana mo sûru téré ti mo pêpe, kôli alingbi ti kamáta mo tongana wále pêpe ; if you don't cut your body, i.e. so as to make ornamental scars, men won't marry you) - fâa denotes a crosswise cut, when it is distinguished from sûru, which is not always the case

sûru (ndô ti) mabôko V : to vaccinate - see ndô ti mabôko

susu N : a fish - eaten fresh or dried as a secondary element in the diet (fini susu : fresh fish) (kûrû ti susu : dried fish) - see ni susu and éré ngû for information on fishing - capitaine is a Nile perch, gugûrû refers to small fish
ta [ta] N: a pot, a kettle (mbi hinga lége tí sâra ta pepe: I don't know how to make a pot) (lo kporo na yá tí ta: it boils in the pot) - traditional pots were made of a special clay (ndöö) by women who specialized in pottery - used primarily for cooking and carrying water - a pot was built up of successive windings of long thin strips of clay rolled out between the hands - after firing, it was glossy black - increasingly, in the present situation, imported kettles of enamel ware, aluminum, or other metals, are replacing traditional pots for cooking, and five-gallon oil cans are used for carrying water - ta ti basánze is a traditional pot, ta ti varja is a pot kept for guests, and ta wë is a metal kettle

táa Au: true, real, genuine, truly, really, genuinely (Ála hinga táa éré tí lo pepe: they didn't know his true name) (táa yángá tí mbi aek Zande: my real language is Zande) (táa koa tí ndao: the real work of a blacksmith) (táa mamá tí mbi: my real mother) (mbi sâra táa na mabóko: I really did it with my hands, or I did it with my own hands) (mbi eke táa saleté: I was really dirty) - (Grammar p. 64) - used in táa téné

táa téné N: truth, true speech or saying (só táa téné, wala vene?: is that the truth, or a lie?) (táa téné tí mò?: is your speech the truth?) (táa téné: it's the truth) - opp. vene, wátáká

taba N: a sheep - African sheep are tall, thin, and straight-haired rather than woolly - they are not nearly as common as ngása, goats - called by Protestants ngása Ngbaka (i.e. Ngbaka goats)

tágba N: a kob, a medium-sized antelope of the genus Adenota - see yama tí ngonde

tailleur** [tayér] N: a tailor - every village has one or more of these men who, with a hand-cranked portable sewing machine, make the dresses,
blouses, shirts, trousers, shorts, and loincloths needed by the inhabitants - the customer usually provides the cloth - the tailor works from another piece of clothing as a model rather than from a paper pattern - this is one of the most common European-type specializations and an occupation of some prestige.

tambéla [tambéla, tambúla, tambila] V : 1. to walk, to travel (mo tambéla ngbii, mo sí na yáká ; you walk for a while, and then arrive at the field) (mbí tambéla na li ni ; I walked at the head) - fono means to walk about, kpé means to run, goe means to go, ga means to come 2. of an impersonal entity, e.g., a machine or organization : to run, to work, to go (si koa na nginza si atambéla ; only work for money goes) (vélo atambéla pepe ; the bicycle does not work)

* tambéla N : walking about, running about, going about (tambéla sí Kamara aska sára ... : the walking about that Kamara is doing ...)

* tambéla remorque** [remórke] V : to drag a song, to sing heavily and slowly - remorque means trailer, and trailer trucks travel slowly and ponderously

tanga [tanga, tåga] N : the rest, the remainder, what is left over - used usually with ni or a complement introduced by ti (nú tangr ni só : take the rest of it) (ála kú tanga ti téné kéé ; wait for the rest of the matter) - ngâmbu suggests a remaining piece of some solid whole

tangé N : a bed - this can refer either to an African bed made of bamboo (bambou 2) or to a European type bed - gbogbó is properly a sleeping mat, which is used either on a bed or on the floor, but it is also used to refer to a bed

tará N : 1. a grandmother on either side - syn. atâ - see famille for the kinship system 2. ancestors in the female line (mamâ amú mbi na kótórâ tí âtarâ tí mbi ; my mother took me to the village of my female ancestors) 3. used as a mark of respect in addressing an older woman (tará, yô, ase mó ; : grandmother, what is hurting you?)
tara V: to taste, to sample, to try, to attempt (mo tara ma: taste it, why don't you?) (lo tara tí hingga lége tí té ngú: she tried to learn how to dip up water) - légo is a taste, a sample - see also gi lége

tatara N: a mirror, a sheet or pane of glass

tatara ndo V: to grope, to feel about (as a blind person)

ta tí basánze N: a traditional pot - see ta for details

ta tí voróo N: a pot reserved for guests - see ta

ta wë [ta wë, tawë, tawá] N: a metal imported kettle - usually enameled or aluminum, though a few are steel or cast iron - see ta

té [të, tí] V: to meet, to encounter (mbi gá mbi té lo: I came and met him) - baa 6, baa lé tí, and baa téfé mean to meet socially

tende N: cotton - coton is the more common syn.

të [të, te] V: 1. to bite, especially with the incisors - used also of a snake or a dog biting, as well as of insects stinging - ne 4 means to chew with the molars - see also te pémbé
2. to eat (mbi të alíngbi na mbi pëpë: I ate, but it wasn't enough for me) - see të kóbe - vë means to suck, to drink - mënë means to swallow, to gulp - see also te múńze
3. to inflict a wound or pain, e.g. with a spear (likongô tí ála alíngbi tí te zo mbéní pëpë: their spears can no longer wound people) - kpo is more usual with the meaning of to stab - see also këá ... të, te bë, te mënë

të bë V: said of a witch: to eat someone's liver, that is to attack his vitals - this causes sickness and death (zo tí lukundû atë bë tí lo si lángô ošíó ni lo kúi: the witch ate his liver so the fourth day he died) - syn. te mënë - see lukundû, bë

të kóbe V: to eat, especially to eat a regular meal consisting of the staple dough (kóbe) and an accompanying sauce (kàsa) - the statement that one has not eaten, using this expression, often means simply that the speaker has not eaten a full meal, but that does not preclude his having eaten one or more snacks
tc méné V : said of a witch - to eat the blood (lukundú ni asi gigí na bí, Ála goe ti tc méné ti zo : witches come out at night, and go eat people's blood) - this, as with syn. tc bé, causes sickness and death

tc nginza V : to receive money, especially a payment due, as wages or bride-price - a synonymous idea can be substituted for nginza (mbi tc nginza ti lo : I received the bride-price (which was paid) for her) (manoeuvre até gi sac òse : a laborer earns just two thousand francs) - see nginza for a list of terms referring to financial and economic concepts

tc pémbé V : to gnash the teeth (lo tc pémbé ti lo : he gnashed his teeth)

témé [témé, téné, témé, téné] N : a stone, a rock, a pebble

téné [téné, téné, tén] N : a word, a saying, an utterance, a speech, a matter, an affair, an issue, a problem, news, a report (mo téné ndurú téné : say a short speech, i.e. speak briefly) (téné ti mbi awe : my words are finished, i.e. I have finished speaking) (lo goe ká ti gi téné ní : he went there to investigate the matter) (ndá ti téné ní : the meaning of the matter) (accommencer tó gá téné : it began to become a problem, i.e. an issue or subject of dispute) (acke téné ti vàle ... : it is the business of women ...) (téné ní asi na ndo só : the news reached here) (téné ti ngonzo : an angry issue, or a matter arousing anger) (ngangó téné : harsh or violent words) (mbi hûnda abéní téné : I ask a certain matter (or question)) - see gi téné, fa téné, leke téné, sàra téné, tó téné, téné ... effe pepe, téné nzoní, téné ti Nzapá - ngbanga is related, but lacks the emphasis on speech found in téné

tene [tene, tene, tén, ten, te] V : to say, to tell (i eke tene téné só na álá : we're telling you this matter) (mo tene só bianí ? : did you really say that?) (álá tene yë ? : what did they say?) (kpikara atene tongasó : the pangolin said that, lit. spoke like that) (lo tene, zía lo séngé : he said, leave him alone) (i eke tene na 1 téné ti Nzapá : we're telling you the word of God) - sàra téné is the most general expression meaning to speak - sàra isoró, causer, and sàra nay suggest
social intercourse, chatting, visiting, etc. - hunda is to ask, toto
and dé kóngó mean to cry out or shout, dé kité means to object, dé éré
means to name

téné ... eke pepe V : to be all right (quand-même mbi yú pepe, téné ake
pepe : even if I don't wear it, it will be all right) - this is used
to dispel the impression that offence has been given, as in response
to an apology

téné nzoní N : a Protestant neologism : the gospel

tenetí [tenetí, tentí, tetí, tenetí, tentí, tetí] C : a connective of
cause, reason, purpose (Grammar p. 91-93) : because, because of, on
account of, in order to, for {mo téné ngá ndurú téné, tenetí ázo
mingi ake kú mbi : make your talk short, because many people are
waiting for me} {lo toto tenetí mbi lá kóé : he cries for you all the
time} {i vo na nginza, tenetí payer impôt : we sell it for money, in
order to pay taxes} - syn. ngbangatí - see also tenetí yç

téné ti Nzapá N : Protestant expression : the word of God - see mbité ti
Nzapá

tenetí yç Av : for what reason, why {tenetí yç mbi wara mbité pepe ? :
why did I not receive a letter?} - can also be used post-verbally -
syn. ngbangatí yç

tene vene V : to tell a lie - syn. sâra vene, sâra wâtáká

téré [téré, télé, téré] N : 1. a live V {mo sâra koa na ngangó tí
téré tí mbi : work with the strength of your body} {sukúla téré tí
mbi : wash your body, i.e. bathe} {téré tí lo aso lo : his body hurts
(téré ti susu : the body of a fish) - this is in contrast with kóá 2.2
meaning a human corpse, and kóí N 2 meaning the dead body of an animal
-it is also in contrast with bê which refers in general to the inward
parts and to the spiritual or metaphysical being - see bê téré - the
major parts of the body are : lî the head, lê the face, gá the neck,
kate the chest, pekó the back, mabáko the arm and hand, yá the abdomen,
ngbundá the hips and buttocks, géré the leg and foot - ndé gá is the
181 téré (cont.)-téré ... dô

shoulder, coude is the elbow, ngebo is the fist, li ti mabôko is
the lateral aspect of the shoulder, yâ ti mabôko is the palm of the
hand, kéte mabôko is a finger - on the head and face, kóâ li is the
hair, ndô lé is the forehead and eyebrow, ngeki lé is an eyebrow, lé
is the eye, mé is the ear, hô is the nose, dô hô is a nostril, vângá is
the mouth, ménâ or langue is the tongue, pémbé are the teeth, póró
ti vângá is a lip, mbângâ is the cheek, ngbangba is the lower jaw
and chin, kóâ ti vângá is the moustache, kóâ ti ngbangba is the beard -
me is a breast, kángé is the penis, korogbó is the scrotum, dônde is
the vagina - internally, ndéndé li is the brain, vâ is the stomach,
fôfô is a lung, bê is the liver and the seat of the personality, bozó
n Gonzalez is the gall bladder, bozó fô is the bladder - méné is the
blood, póró is the skin, bôc is the bone, mi is the flesh

2. since téré refers to the external aspect of a body: lateral aspect,
side, flank, outside (mo sukúla téré ni pôpe : you didn't wash its sides)
3. used in a reflexive or reciprocal sense: each other, one another,
one self {âla fâa téré : they cut (or killed) each other} (âla kpo téré
ti âla : they stabbed themselves (or each other)) - see bônbi téré,
báa téré, bânga téré, yâ téré, fa téré
4. with na 3 : beside, in a close relationship, etc. (mbi duti na téré
ti babâ ti abi : I remained close beside my father) (adu kâmba na téré
ti wâbo : he fastened a cord to the dog) - the second example may also
be interpreted as an example of sense 1 - mbâge suggests a much less
intimate or essential relationship: in the direction of, towards

téré N : 1. a spider - see voma for a list of insects and arachnids
2. the spider appears as a character in many tales and fables, along
with kpikara, the pangolin - téré is a wily character who uses much
cunning, but who is sometimes outwitted in unexpected ways, to the
delight of audiences
3. a fable, esp. one in which téré is a main character - histoire is
a more general term for narrative forms of speech, and isorro can have
the same meaning, though it is a general term for oral language

téré ... dô V : to tremble, to shake (téré ti mo adô : you trembled)
téré ... mú wá-tí

téré ... mú wá V : to get or have a fever (téré tí lo amú wá : he has a fever)

téré tí da N : a wall of a building – in traditional building, usually
made of mud (matopotó) plastered onto a framework of vertical poles
(kéké, sara) to which are tied at close intervals thin flexible vines –
alternatively, walls are made of sun-dried bricks (mcule) – see da
tí V : to fall (ála tí na géré tí lo : they fell at his feet) (sése tí í
atí : our land fell) (lo tí na kutukutu : he fell with an automobile,
i.e. had an accident) (nguí tí Gbutu atí na ngangó : the water at Gbutu
falls with violence) (ála tí na sése : they fell to the ground) (lo
tí na hândá : he fell into temptation) – see tí na ndô
tí C : a subordinating connective (Grammar p. 99-116) expressing in general
"geri-ive" relationships : possession, attribution, destination, etc.
1. joining a noun or adjunctive complement to a noun head {da tí mbi :
my house} {gó tí mbc : the neck of the dog} {kótarâ tí í : our ancestor}
(nzá tí novembre : the month of November) {mérangé tí wâle só : the
child of this woman, or, this female child} {mábókó tí kóli : the hand
of a man, or, the right hand} {zo tí sioní : a bad man} {zo tí Bangui :
a person of Bangui} {kóbe tí lâ kóli : the evening food} {téné tí
politique : a matter about politics} {lá tí kótâ bôngbi : the day of
the big meeting}
2. governing a noun which is subject or complement of a verb – in this
case, the phrase acts exactly as if there were a noun head (lo vo tí
vingt francs : he bought twenty francs'(worth)) {tí âkóli aso ála :
men's hurts them}
3. joining a verb complement to a noun head {zo tí gi (ngó) susu :
a man who hunts fish} {zo tí sâra wé : a man who works iron} {lo
hinga lége tí tó ngú : she knows the way to draw water}
4. joining a verb complement to a verb head (Ála gá tí te kóbe : they
came to eat) {zo shánda mo sengé tí fúti nginza tí mo : people tempt
you for nothing to waste your money} – teneti and ngbangati in this
kind of construction are restricted to expressions of purpose or cause
ti [ti, te] N: hand (abáa yama na ti ti ázo só: he saw meat in the hands of these people) (gouvernement aska na ti ti lo: the government is in his hands) - syn. mebóko - ti is used frequently in a metaphorical sense to mean power or authority, as in the second example above.

tíko V: to cough - a cough is often used to signal one's presence politely to someone who is not aware of it.

tí na ndó V: to fall upon, to attack (vundú atí na ndó mbi: sorrow has fallen upon me) (áturúgu atí na ndó tí kótóró: the soldiers attacked the village) - see related ideas in goe berá na li tí, pîka berá.

tíngbi V: to join, to unite, to fasten together (mbi gá, mbi tíngbi na lo: I came and joined him) (lo tíngbi yánga ní: he fastened their edges together) - bôngbi means to bring together distinct parts, while tíngbi suggests a kind of fusion - kánga V means to fasten, and du V - means to tie.

tínga wá V: to light or kindle a fire (mo bóí, mo sî gîgî na ndá péréré, mo tínga wá kóé: you the servant, you get out in the morning and light all the fires) - see also zó and gbî which mean to burn, and míngo which means to extinguish.

tínga wá N: a match (mo vô tínga wá, mo lêké wá: you buy matches and fix the fire) - French allumette is more common.

típôí N: a sort of carrying hammock or chair in which important people used to be carried on the shoulders of four men.

tírêr photo** [tiré fotôo] V: to take a photograph - see photo, sukúla photo.

tíri V: to fight, to wrestle, to struggle, to contend (ála commencer tí tiri, ála fâa tîrî: they began to fight, they cut each other) (ála goe tî tiri berâ: they went to fight a war) (mo gâ i tiri: come on, let's fight) - see also pîka berâ, goe berá na li tí, tí na ndé - if the struggle is verbal rather than physical, papa is used.

tíri N: a fight, an act of fighting (alândó na tiri tí gá: they left the fighting to come) (ála voter na tiri papa: don't vote with fighting).
titene [titene, titene, titen, titne] C : a subordinating connective expressing only a loose sequential connection between clauses (Grammar p. 116-119) - it can join clauses which otherwise would be hypotactically united, or it can in certain circumstances replace tí or sí - in all three cases, the resulting sentence structure is looser (mbi de titene mbi gá wâle pepe = mbi de mbi gá wâle pepe ; I am still not a woman) (lo goe titene lo bâa kótôrô = lo goe sí lo bâa kótôrô : he went and saw the village) (lo goe titene lo bâa bótôrô = lo goe tí bâa kótôrô : he went to see the village)

tô V : to draw (water), to dip up, to carry in a container (mbi goe tí tô ngú : I went to draw water) (mbi tô sése na lâge : I carried dirt to the road (i.e. in a basket)) (lo tô yingó na wâle : she carried salt to the woman) - tô V 2 means to carry on the back, shoulder, or head - gbé means to carry in the hand

to V : to send, to dispatch (mbi to mbéti na mo : I sent you a letter) (mbi to na ála mbéti : I sent them a letter) (lo to àzo tí gi vêrêngé : he sent people to hunt for the child) (lo to nginza na mbi : he sent me money) - syn. toka

toka V : to sen (ála eke sára mbéti, ála toka na i ; they wrote a letter and sent it to us) (lo toka mbi tí tâne na mo : he sent me to tell you) - syn. to

toa V : to send word on ahead, to call to get attention (lo toa na mbéni kótôrô, sí ála bôngbi ; he sent word on ahead to a certain village, and they gathered)

tôle** [tóol] N : sheet or corrugated metal, e.g. galvanized iron or aluminum, esp. as used for roofing

tomate** [tomáte] N : a tomato - used fairly extensively as an ingredient in sauces - see kâsa

tomba [tomba, tumba] V : 1. to pursue or chase something that is fleeing, so as to overtake it (atomba woga, amû lo ; he pursued the antelope and caught it) - can be followed by the expression pekô tí without
substantial change in meaning (Àturúgu atomba pèkò tí ála na ngonda afáa ála mingi : the soldiers pursued after them in the bush and killed many of them)

2. attenuated : to follow in order to catch up (lo tomba pèkò tí lo, awara lo : he followed him and found him) - see gá na pekò, goe na pekò

3. to chase or drive away (lo tomba Àbàkoyá gbá : he chased away the baboons in vain) - see tomba wâle

4. to discharge from work, to fire (lo tomba zo na kusàra : he fired a man from his job)

tomba wâle V : to divorce one's wife, because of the fact that the home is the husband's - if the wife takes the initiative, the expression is kpé kóli - syn. kẹ wâle, zíà wâle

tongana [tongana, tongana, toŋana, toŋana, tangana, tonga, toŋa, tonè, tɔŋa, tɔŋa, tɔŋa, tɔŋa, tɔŋa, tɔŋa, tɔŋa, tɔŋa] C : a conditional, temporal, and comparative connective (Grammar p. 119-124) : when, if, like, as (tongana mbi te ngunzá, mbi te mbéni yi da : when I eat greens, I eat other things with them) (fàdé mbi báa tongana mò sí na Bangui : I'll see when you get to Bangui) (mò gá tongana moniteur : you will become like an instructor) (lo sàra tongana ála : he did things in just the same way as a child) - syn. Adù ní - see also tongana yà

tongana yà Av : how (kusàra tí mbi tongana yà : how is my work?) (lo sàra tongana yà : how is he doing?) - can be used in an emphatic or exclamatory sense (mò liŋbi tí híŋga tongana yà!: how in the world can you know!) - this expresses a measure of doubt, like lá wa

tongasò [tongasò, tongasò, tongasò, tongasò, tɔŋasò, tɔŋasò, tɔŋasò, tɔŋasò] Av : an adjunctive of manner (Grammar p. 57-58) : thus, so, like this, in this manner (mará tí zo tongasò : a kind of people like this) (lo sàra tongasò : he did it like this) (tongasò, lo goe : thus, he went away) (tongasò, lo híŋga pèpè : so he did not know) - used both post-verbally and pre-clausally - see lége 2

toro V : to dance a certain Yakoma dance at the time of which the upper incisors of girls are chiselled out - see dàdò, lengé
tô samba-tô

tô samba V: to brew beer - see samba

toto V: to cry, to made noise, to cry out, to sob (kônda atoto: the hen cries, i.e. cackles) (lo toto na ngû lé: he wept with tears) (lo toto alingbi pcpu: he cried a great deal) (bongô tî m a toto mingi: your dress is making a lot of noise) (lo goe na pckô tî m o tî toto na pckô tî m o: he followed you to cry after you) (ala toto m o: they are lamenting you, i.e. because you’re not here) (i toto yâ tî i: we complain of our stomachs) - dé kóngô is to shout, ârnâ nãô is to call out, biôma is to complain or moan - see also toto kôô

toto N: a cry, a shout, a noise, weeping (mbi m à toto na gigi: I hear crying outside, I hear a noise outside) (toto agú na lé tî lo: tears came to his eyes) (zia totâ: leave off crying) - ngû lé is tears, kóngô is a shout, wûruwûru is a tumult, a noise of disorder, a clamor

toto kôâ V: to mourn for a death (âla toto kôâ: they mourned a death)
toucher** [tusée] to touch (zo alingbi tî tocher lo pcpu: no one could touch him) - syn. nàâ
tourner** [turnée] V: 1. to turn - used in li ... tourner
2. to stir, to mix by stirring (mo tâku ngunzâ na yà tî ngû, mo tourner: you pour the greens into the water, and you stir) - mélanger is a syn. - fûru means to mix with the hands so as to make a homogeneous semi-liquid mass - mè kôbe means to prepare the staple dough by stirring flour into hot water
tout** [tûu] An: all, altogether - used to reinforce the syn. kôê (zo kôê tout: absolutely everyone) (yâkâ tî mbi kôê akânga tout: my field is all choked up (with weeds))

tô V: to cook, especially by boiling - used most often with the object kôbe (là kôê mbi tô gi ngunzâ: always I cook only greens) (âla goe ti tô kôbe: they went to cook food) (stô nzoni: she cooked it well) - mè kôbe means to prepare the staple dough, leke kôbe and sàra kôbe are very general terms meaning to prepare food - yôro 2 means to fry - knëpô is used of water boiling
le V : to bud - syn. mbuma

tongoro N : a star (ambeni tongoro otê só agoe tongaso, âla tene só acte poró té zamba té lo : three stars which go like that, they say that these are the scabbard of his knife)

tóró N : the spirit of a dead person, esp. an ancestor, considered to maintain an interest in and authority over the clan - they are thought to live in the wilderness in the territory of the clan, where they must be propitiated with offerings of various sorts - traveling far from the clan territory removes one from their influence - they communicate with the living in dreams, and signal displeasure by bringing calamities, such as sickness or sterility - yingó is the spirit of a living person - lukunó is a witch spirit - see bé as the seat of the personality

travaux** [travôo, tarawôo] N : the public-works department, which has the special responsibility of building and maintaining roads (giriri mbi sâra koa na mbunzú ti travaux : I used to work for a white man in the public works department)

trop** [tróo] Av : very much, very well (âla hingga Sango trop : they know Sango very well) - syn. mingi - trop is rather affected, and is used esp. by young people

tóku V : to tip over, to dump, to pour, to spill (ngó ni ayi té tóku : the boat was about to tip over) (mbi tóku mbéni samba na lo : I poured him some beer) (mo tóku kóbe na sambé : you dump the dough into a dish) (mo tóku ngó na yá té filtre : you pour water into a filter) (ngó atóku na sése : the water spilled in the ground) - sâ means to pour a liquid

tungu N : lead, solder - syn. mbosa

turógu N : a soldier (i sâra yi tongana turógu : we are doing things like soldiers, i.e. with discipline) - see also yongoro accombe

turóngu N : the navel, the umbilical cord (i.e. the part which remains attached to the child) (zo agirisa zo ti fâa turóngu té lo, maâs lo
girisa zo ti carrer pèmbè tì lo pepe : a person forgets who cut off his umbilical cord, but he does not forget the person who chipped his teeth (i.e. because the latter operation is done when one is of age to remember)
ukû [ukû, okû] An: five - see ôko for the number system

úlu [úlu, úru] V: to blow (lo úlu dède tí yɔma : he blew on the horn of an animal, i.e. to make music) (lo úlu ḣò tí lo : he blew his nose) (na midi, álà úlu yì ní : at noon, they blow the thing, i.e. the steam whistle) - Ḥù means to breathe - in is used only of the wind - pîka biá is used of all but wind instruments, e.g., the drum, the xylophone, or the guitar

úr Av: an ideophone descriptive of flowing (mènè ayuru na ḥò tí lo úr : blood flowed from his nose, úr)

uru [uru, ulu] V: 1. to jump, to fly (mbi uru na ndó tí dû : I jumped over the hole) (dola auru na ndùzù : the moth flies in the air) 2. of animals: to mate (kòli tí yɔma auru na ndó wàle ní : the male animal mated with the female) - syn, monter 2 - gba is used of human beings
vâlâ [vâlâ, várâ] N: a shield {lo mú likongó ti lo, lo mú vâlâ: he took his spear, he took a shield} - used in traditional warfare - oval, and made either of wickerwork or rawhide - see zembe for a list of weapons

vélo** [velôo] N: a bicycle {lo tambóla na vélo: he rode on a bicycle) {lo kpé na vélo míngi: he rode very fast on a bicycle} - the bicycle is a ubiquitous means of travel and a status symbol for the lower and middle classes

véké N: okra (Hibiscus esculentus L.), a mucilaginous vegetable used in many sauces {mo túku kpí tí kárako da, mo pîka véké, mo zó da: you dump in peanut paste, then you pound okra and put it in} - okra is one of the foods which are called dosó vonzóro - see also kása

vene [vene, vene] N: a lie {mbi sâra vene pepe: I did not tell a lie) {vene ti mo: your lie, i.e. you have told a lie) {mo tene vene pepe: don't tell a lie} - syn. wátáké - see sâra vene, tene vene

vení [vení, mvení] N: an owner, a master, a mistress (i.e. the feminine of master only) {vení tí lengé ní ate köbe pepe: the mistress of the lengé dance did not eat) {vení tí da só na ndo wa?: where is the owner of this house?) - wa N is an inhabitant, an agent, as well as an owner

vení [vení, vení, mvení, mvení] An: an emphatic adjunctive, used to emphasize any phrase by bringing it to the head of the sentence: -self, it is ... which {lo vení sí acommencer berá: he himself started the war) {ásango vení ake fáa susu na gbánda: it is the Sango who kill fish with nets) {fadé mbi vení, mbi eke éré ála: I myself, I will call them) {aake tongesó vení sí ála eke sára köbe ní: it is like that that they make the food) {só vení sí i kț: it is this that we refuse}
vieux** [viyée] An: old, as applied to persons - see also mbakóro

ville** [vil] N: a city with a European type municipal administration - only a few of the larger cities have this status, while smaller communities constitute parts of various collectivité units - in colonial days, the maire or mayor was an appointed official, but now he is elected - see république for the administrative structure of the country

ville de Bangui** [vildəbangi] N: a fire engine (amá ville de Bangui otá, agoe mingó wá só: they took three fire engines and went and extinguished this fire) - de gbi is a fireman

vin** [vèŋ] N: European wine - see samba for a list of alcoholic beverages

voilà** [vwalá, walá] I: there now (tèrè stëñ na lo, voilà mbi tèn na lo awe: the spider said to him, there now, I've told him)

voma N: a fly - other insects and arachnids include dolà a moth, boko a termite, gandé a wasp, ngungù a mosquito, ngusù a chigger, a maggot, kpalakonco a scorpion, tèrè a spider, lavù or wotoro a bee, makonco a caterpillar

vo V: 1. to buy (lo vo ngunzà ti pâta osiò: she bought four pâta's (i.e. twenty francs') worth of greens) (zo wa avo na mò pendere bongó só: who bought you this beautiful dress?) (ita, mò gá ti vo na mbi, mò vo: sister, if you've come to buy from me, buy) - this meaning to buy is the more common usage, which contrasts with kâ V, to sell - see vo ngéré, fûta, payer, nginzà, te nginzà, franc, pâta for other financial concepts

2. to sell (i vo tanga nì na nginzà ti payer impôt: we sell the rest of it for money to pay taxes) - this usage, syn, with kâ, is less common than 1

vokô [vokó, vokó, vukó] V: to be or become black, to be dark, to be dirty (ndo avokô: the place was dark) (tèrè ti mbi avokô: my body was black, i.e. dirty) - see bâ ..., vokô - opp. vurû V

vokô An: black, dark, dirty - can be reduplicated for emphasis (bongó nì
vakô (cont.)- vundû

vakô vakô vakô : the cloth was very black - vakô kété is dark grey or an unsaturated dark shade of some other color - see couleur for the color system - syn. saleté in the sense of dirty - opp. vuru An, propre - see also mbunzû vakô, zo vakô, vakô lé

vakô lé N : the pupil of the eye - see lé N 1.1

vakô zo N : see zo vakô

vo ngéré V : to do business, to buy and sell - see vo, ká V, fûta, payer, nginza, franc, pâta, bon, ngéré, te nginza for other financial and economic concepts

vorôô V : to give honor or great deference, to express respect, submission, or pleading, as by kneeling (mbi vorôô téré ti mbi na mo : I kneel before you to plead with you) - used esp in speaking to or about God - see also sambêla, diko, sepâla - see ta ti vorôô

vú V : to be or become famous (éré ti âla avû tongana ti âmbëni zo pepe : their names were not famous like those of other people) - may be related to vuru V

vundû N : a complex emotional reaction and state resulting from misfortune or a real or imagined slight - since misfortune is considered to be caused by malevolent personal agencies, human or otherwise, the disappointment or sorrow (depending on the magnitude of the occasion) is invariably tinged with resentment and a desire to retaliate (tongana zo só afâa ûta ti mbi akû, si vundû ti mbi awe : when the person who killed (or caused the death of) my brother dies, then my sorrow and resentment will be appeased) (só mo sóra mbëti na mbi pëpe, āgâ yî ti vundû : because you did not write me, it has become an occasion for disappointment and resentment) - the resentment is the central and constant component of vundû - bé ... so expresses a similar reaction - ponô and sâna express the objective cause of some vundû, i.e. persecution or other suffering caused by personal malevolence - ronzo is anger - naiâ, siriri express opp. emotions and states - see bé for a discussion of emotional reactions and states
vurû [vurû, vulû] V: to be or become white, to be clean (bongô avurû; the cloth is white, or the cloth is clean) - opp. vokô V - see also be ... vurû

vurû An: white, clean - can be reduplicated for emphasis (vurû pôrô tî têrê tî âlâ: the white skin of their bodies). - vurû kêtê means light grey or an unsaturated light tint of another color - see couleur for the color system - syn. propre in the sense of clean - opp. vokô, saleté - see vurû ndo, vurû sése, ngû vurû

vurû ndo N: the dry season - syn. burû

vurû sése N: white clay used to whitewash walls - mbamba means a lime whitewash
- W -

wa N : 1. a fire (zia ngú na (ndó tí) wá : put water on the fire i.e. to boil) (lo sára kótá wá : he made a big fire) - the usual cooking fire is a wood fire on the ground between three stones in front of the hut - a similar fire is kept burning all night inside the hut for warmth - a good housekeeper always keeps a small fire going somewhere to be ready for any need - see kéké tí wá, lè tí wá, pindiri (tí wá), tínga wá, zó, gbi, mingo

2. heat (ndo ake wá míngi : the place is very hot i.e. in speaking of weather) (wé ni amú wá míngi : the iron is very hot) - see ná wá, nú wá, wara wá

wa N : 1. an inhabitant, a citizen, an owner (áwa tí Bangui ; the inhabitants of Bangui) (wa tí yi ní ágá atenc, mbi báa hámba tí mbi ká ; the owner of the thing came and said, I saw my snare over there) - mbi means one's fellow-citizen or inhabitant, vení N means an owner

2. a person characterized by something which is specified by a postposed complement - see wa búbú, wa bána, wa ngíba, wa kaa, wa ná bë, wa ná, wa nzinga, wa ziba - in these cases, the trait specified seems to be more permanently and essentially associated with the person than when zo tí is used with the same complements

wa V : to warn, to rebuke, to admonish, to advise, to counsel, to encourage, to comfort, to console (lo wa ála ngangó pépe ; he did not admonish them severely) (biá awa bë tí í : the song comforted us) - this verb covers all the ways in which one person can deal responsibly with another's behavior (especially as regards its ethical qualities) and emotional states and problems - wa bë tí means to encourage, to comfort

wa An : an interrogative adjunctive (Grammar p. 53) - used esp. in ndó wa, zo wa, and lá wa - in this last case, and also when it is used to put into question a whole sentence, it is often exclamatory and implies a negative answer - hence, it is used as a strong and indignant disclaimer
of a false imputation (ka ita mbi si mbi tane só wa!: is it really
I who said that (of course not!) - y is semantically syn, but much
less restricted grammatically

wáá I: an exclamation of amazement

wa bé ti V: to encourage, to comfort, to console - this is more specific
than wa V

wa bûburû N: a dumb person - see bûburû - zo ti can be substituted for wa

wa hânda N: a tempter, one who entices or teases - see hânda - zo ti can
be substituted for wa

wa koa N: a Protestant neologism to mean messenger, preacher - see koa N 2

wala C: a connective used to join alternative or correlative elements
Grammar p. 124-126: or, or else (só nsoni wala nsoni pepe: is that
good or is it not good?) (li ti ála mingi, wala bale otá, wala bale
osió, wala bale uká: many of them, perhaps thirty, perhaps forty,
perhaps fifty) (mo goe mbéni ndo, wala mo eke da biáni?: have you
gone elsewhere, or are you really there?) (mo te susu mélanger na ní
wala?: do you eat fish mixed with it, or (not)?)

wâle [wále, wáli, wáre, wári] N: 1. woman, as opposed to a man or a child
(mbi eke mérengé, mbi de mbi gá wále pepe: I am a child, I have not
yet become a woman) (mbi ére 'áli, áwâle...: I call upon men, women...
) - opp. kôli 1, mérengé - see also wále ti pitâq
2. a wife (lo mú wâle ti lo: he took his wife) (wâle ti mbi, na
mérengé ti mbi: my wife and my child) - opp. kôli 2 - see also mariage,
marier
3. a female, human or animal-used to qualify some other noun (wâle
ti kôndo abata mérengé ti lo: the hen protects her chicks) - see
mérengé (tî) wâle, akâro wâle, rendre wâle - opp. kôli 3

wâle ti pitâq N: an adulteress, a prostitute (tonga wâle alónô ti
kamâta mbéni kôli, aten só agá wâle ti pitâq: if a woman arises to
take another man, they say she has become an adulteress) - see sâra
pitâq
wa má bé-wara ngiá

wa má bé N : a Protestant neologism intended to mean a believer - syn. chrétien

wa ndé N : a stranger, a foreigner - gene is a visitor, a guest

wa ngiba N : a leper - see ngibe, buruma - zo tí can be substituted for wa

wângô N : warning, advice, counsel (í mú wângô na ázo titi ngâ álâ manquer pept : we give warning to the people so they will not miss) (mbi eké mú wângô na álâ na lége tî kobéla : I give advice to you concerning sickness) - from wa V

wa nzi N : a thief, a robber, a burglar - see nzi - zo tí can be substituted for wa, in which case the connection between the act and the character of the person is less essential and permanent

wa nzinga N : a poor person - see nzinga

wara [wara, wala] V : to get, to obtain, to receive, to find, to discover (mbi wara mbéti só mo sára na mbi : I got the letter you wrote me) (í wara penser só gi fadésé ? : did we discover this idea just now?) (mo wara yç ? : what did you find?) (fadé álâ wara fúta tî álâ ; they will get their wages) (mbi wara na yâ tî nze só ; I got(it)this month) (fadé mo wara méréngé tî mbi : you will find my child) (í wara ângbâa : we found the buffalo) (tongana mbi wara service, si mbi goe na Bangui : if I find a job, then I'll go to Bangui) (mo wara concours tî mo : you have obtained (i.e. succeeded in) your examination) - opp. gi V - see wara dé, wara wá, wara yângâ tî te kôbe, wara kobéla, wara ngiá

wara dé V : to become cold - syn. gá dé, ná dé, dé V - opp. wara wá

wara kobéla V : to become sick - the name of a specific sickness can be substituted for kobéla - the phrase can be inverted (mbi wara kobéla : I became sick) (kobéla awara mbi : I became sick) - opp. kobéla ..., kâî

wara lége V : to find or take an opportunity (mbi wara lége tî bâa lo ; I found an opportunity to see him) - see lége 2, gi lége

wara ngiá V : to be or become happy (ázo awara ngiá na lá nf kâ ; people
became happy on that day)

wará wá V: to become hot - syn. é wá, mú wá - opp. wará dé

wará yángá tí ti kóbe V: to have a good appetite - also used in the negative (mbi wará yángá tí ti kóbe pépe: I did not have a good appetite) - syn. yángá ... nzere tí ti kóbe

wátáká N: a lie (ála sára kótá wátáká: they told a big lie) (mbi tene wátáká pépe: I didn't tell a lie) - syn. vën - see sára wátáká, tene wátáká

wato N: an enemy (wato ake zo sè asára berá na bábá tí mo giriri; an enemy is someone who used to make war on your father) - for opp. terms see ndeko

wa zíba N: a blind person - see zíba

we [we, wé] V: 1. to be finished, to be done, to be completed, to be accomplished (téné tí mbi awe: my speech is finished) (kóbe awe; the food is done, i.e. ready to eat)
2. we is also used in paratactic construction with a preceding clause (Grammar p. 160-167), in which case it signals that the action denoted by the preceding verb is fully accomplished and was antecedent to the verbs of the surrounding context (mô má awe?: have you heard (lit. you heard, is it finished)?) {tongana mô tourner awe, mô zía na sèse: when you have finished stirring it, you put it aside} (mô sambéla gi Nzapá, awe: pray just to God, that's all) {ka lo téné na mbi awe: otherwise he would have told me} (mbi lèke téné ni awe, sì mbi téné na mô: I fixed up the matter, and then (when it was finished) I told you) - in this use, a simple past perfect verb is usually all that is needed to gloss the combination of verb plus we

wé N: 1. iron - smelted and worked by traditional blacksmiths (ndao)
{purú tí lo kóc así gigí, na taá wé ní ake: the slag had all run out, and the real iron remained} (ála girisa lége tí wé awe: they have lost the art of iron working) - see zambé for a list of tools and weapons made of iron
2. the bride-price - so called because an important part of the bride-price was traditionally composed of iron bars of specific size and shape - some bars were highly esthetic - syn, mosara

woga [woga, uga] N: the duiker, and possibly certain other small antelopes of the genus Cephalophus - its size and general appearance may be judged by the fact that in a folk tale it is passed off as a dog

wôgarâ N: a daughter-in-law, in relation to her father-in-law, i.e., this is the term used by a man in referring or speaking to his daughter-in-law - see famille for the kinship system

wôtoro [wôtoro, wôtro, wôtro] N: 1. a bee - syn, lavû
2. honey - syn, ngû lavû, mafuta ti wôtoro

wôko V: 1. to soften, to be soft, (literally or figuratively) to relent, to tire, to weaken physically (kôbe ni awôko nzoni; the food is nice and soft) (mo wôko bé ti mo ma; soften your liver, i.e., relent) (î wôko pêpe; we're not tired) - in the last sense, syn, fatiguer, while nzé is less physical
2. to decrease - used esp. of a price (ngéré ni awôko kêté; the price has decreased a bit) - syn, diminuer

wôrûwûrû N: a tumult, a noise of great confusion and disorder (î eke voter na wôrûwûrû pêpe; we won't vote with disorderly noise) - toto is a cry, a lament, kôncô is a shout
yâ N: 1. abdomen, stomach, digestive organs, both in the external and internal aspects (yâ ti mbi asûku: my abdomen swelled up) (kángbi áyá nî i bi na ngonda: we separated its internal organs and threw them away) - bé is the liver and the seat of the personality and all its manifestations, while yâ is definitely identified with digestion - see téré ?

2. with an inanimate complement, and usually introduced by na ; in, inside (yâ ti da: the inside of the house) (lo pîka na yâ tî kpu: she pounded it in a mortar) (mbi bân na yâ tî mbéti: I saw it in a letter) (kobéla só ahû na yâ tî ngû sô: this disease is spreading this year) (ngû acôle na yâ tî burû: the streams dry up in the dry season) (lo bâa ndo na yâ tî lê tî zo vokô: he looks into the eyes of a black man)

yabândâ* N: a sauce made of greens (kugbé), with or without an oleaginous paste, as of peanuts (kôô): kása: the more general term for any sauce made to accompany the staple dough (kôbe), including those with meat, fish, termites, etc.

yáká N: any cultivated area: a field, a garden, a plot, an orchard, a plantation (kôli agoe na yáká kôzo nî: men went to the fields first) (yáká tî mbi akânga kôô: my field is all choked up (with weeds)) (yáká tî café: a coffee plantation) - distinguished from ngonda, which is uncultivated wilderness, and kótó, which is a built-up settled area - see râa ráká, lû - the usual tools are kpôka or mbô, a hoe, and dô, an ax

yâma [yâma, nyama, yama] N: 1. an animal of any kind, in opp. to zo a human being and yî N an inanimate thing (mbi goe na ngonda mbi kpo na kété kété yâma: I go into the bush and spear little animals with it) (kobéla só aga na lége tî mbénî kété kété yâma na yâ tî mo: this disease comes on account of tiny animals (i.e., parasites) inside you) -
yama (cont.)-yambo

yama ti ngonda gives a list of wild animals - su-su gives a list of fish - voma gives a list of insects and arachnids - ndike is a bird - the domestic animals are: mbo the dog, ngasa the goat, kond de chicken, yap the cat - cochon the pig, and taba the sheep are much less common, while bagara cattle, mburata the horse, and lele the donkey are domesticated almost exclusively by Fulani herdsmen, who are often also butchers - gi yama describes hunting procedures

2. meat (tongana mo eke, fadé lo te mbéni yama : if you were here, he would eat meat (because you would go hunting)) (yama ti bale 5ko, tongana mo vo, même mérané só, tongana lo te, alingbi na lo pepe: fifty francs' worth of meat, when you buy it, even this child could eat it and it wouldn't be enough for him) - since hunting is increasingly unproductive and beef is expensive, meat protein is often lacking from the diet - substitutes include bobo the termite, makongò the caterpillar, and kpi oleaginous grains such as peanuts

yama ti ngonda N: wild animals - these include:

1. carnivora: bâmarâ the lion, ze the leopard, b'ongó the hyena, sónzó the African hunting dog, and yap which, in addition to referring to the domestic cat, can also mean various kinds of wild cats
2. smaller herbivora, esp. antelopes: bâsâgbó the eland, béta the waterbuck, gôlo the giraffe, tâgba the kob, zaranga the roan antelope, and dengbe, kpere, lekpa, and woga, all various kinds of small antelopes
3. larger herbivora: dôle the elephant, gôroá or ngbáa the buffalo, mbengé and cochon t' lingu two kinds of wild boars, màsàrâcâ the rhinoceros, and konó the hippopotamus
4. primates: makâko a generic term for monkeys, bâkoyâ the baboon, ngui the colobus monkey, seko the chimpanzee
5. smaller mammals, as rodents, insectivora, etc.: batâ the squirrel, lele the porcupine, kpíkara the pangolin, zarâ the ratel
6. reptiles: bakongo the turtle, ngundé the crocodile, ngbói the snake, kuma the python

yambo* N: perfume, incense - most perfumes are of either European or Muslim origin
yângâ N : 1. the mouth (lo zì kòbè na yângâ ti méràngé : she put food into the child's mouth) (toto ade na yângâ ti lo ; crying was still in his mouth, i.e. he was still crying) Sango agbò yângâ ti mbi abirimbiri pepe : Sango has not properly taken hold of my mouth, i.e. I do not speak Sango well) (sì mă gi na yângâ ti mbènì zo ; I just heard it from the mouth of someone) - see also pórò ti yângâ the lip - kí yângâ, mà yàlté, yângâ ... nzere ti te kòbè - see térè .

2. a language (yângâ ti ńambunú : the white man's language) (mū ské fa yângâ ti i na ńko kâ : you are teaching our language to people over there) (yângâ ti Sango : the Sango language) - pô refers to the voice, tének to what is said, speech

3. an opening, a door (mū kângà yângâ ti da : close the door of the house) (mū kângà yângâ ti ta : cover the opening of the pot)

4. the edge of - often used with na 3 (lo ské na yângâ ti ngú : he was at the edge of the river) (yângâ ti yákà : the edge of the field) (yângâ ti zembe : the edge of the knife blade)

yângâ ... nzere ti te kòbè V : to have a good appetite (yângâ ti mbi anzere ti ra kòbè pepe ; I do not have a good appetite) - syn. wàra wárgâ ti te kòbè

yangba* N : smallpox - see kóbèla

yângô N : a fishhook (lo ské bi yângô na yângâ ti ngú ; he is fishing by the edge of the river (lit. he is throwing the fishhook)) - see gî susu for a description of fishing techniques

yâ [yâ, yey] N : a cat, esp. a domestic cat, but can also refer to a wild cat - see ñàma, yàma ti ngorda .

yà ti mabóko N : the palm of the hand - see mabóko

yâyû N : heaven, the sky - this is the term used by Christians to refer to the heaven of God - ndâgù is the sky, ìa is the air

yeke av : slowly, gradually - can be reduplicated (i ské ńko kótôrî ti i yeke yeke : we are organizing our country very gradually) - syn. doucement
yç-yi


tykpâ [tykpâ, nykpâ] N : lightning - békpâ is thunder

eyéné N : the anus - can also be said dà ti yéné - ngbundâ means the buttocks

tyengere V : to sift, as manioc flour (mo pika fuku ni kélé awe, mo tyengere : when you have finished pounding the flour, you sift it) - passer 2 means to strain, to drain, as well as to sift - pé 2 and diki mean to winnow

tyengere N : a sieve - made of very fine wickerwork in the shape of a hemisphere about ten inches in diameter

yi [yí, yé] N : an all-purpose noun of general reference : thing, as opp. to zo a person and yama an animal (abi sâra yi só : I did this thing) (yi kóé azke nzoni mingi : everything is very nice) (lo te yi ti abi na mbâni sôngé : he ate my things in willful idleness) - only in the expression yi só, what-you-may-call-him, does yi refer to a person

yi [yí, yé] V : 1. to want, to desire, to like, to love (tongana lo yi, lo hündâ lége tí Takorongo : if he desires, let him ask the way to Takorongo) (kóli ayí tí goe : the man wanted to go) (ála kóé ayí tí má lo : they all wanted to hear him) (abi yi kótôrô só mingi : I like this village very much) (ámbéni mingi atene, abi yi zo vókó : many are saying, I like black people) (abi yi ámbéni nginza : I want some money) (kóé kóli tí abi ayí abi pepe : my husband doesn't love me) (abi yi só pepe : I don't want that) - see ké ... yi, yi téré - opp. ké

2. to agree, to accept (í yi, monsieur : we agree, sir) (abi yi pepe : I don't agree) - syn. yi dâ, yi zeó - see also viagó tí Arabe - opp. ké
3. followed by *tì* and a verb, or *titennë* and a clause; to be about to {ngô ni ayî tì tûku : the boat was about to capsize} {nû tì mo ayî tì kûî : your uncle is about to die} {ayî titennë ato mbëti : he is about to send a letter} - see *yî tì bëa ndö*

*yî da* V : to agree {mbi *yî da*, monsieur : I agree, sir} - syn. *yî 2, yî pekô*

*yîngî* V : to shake - *pê* means to wave the hand, to winnow, *yengere* means to sift

*yîngô pekô tì yî N* : agreement - see *yî 2, yî da, yî pekô*

*yîngô tì Arabe N* : the manner in which Arabs are said to respond to a call from a long distance

*yîngô N* : any kind of salt {mène nginza tì vo na yîngô, mbi wara pêpê : even money to buy salt, I don't have} - *adorénu* is imported rock salt, while *sî* and *yîngô tì bësânze* are terms for traditional salt made from the ashes of certain plants

*yîngô N* : the spirit of a living person, which resides in the liver (*bë*) and departs at death - the spirit of a dead person is *tërë*, while *lukundû* is a witchcraft spirit

*yîngô tì Nzapâ, yîngô vuru N* : names used by Christians for the Holy Spirit

*yî øko C* : there's just one thing - used to introduce a sentence {mais yî øko, nginza ake pêpê : there's just one thing, there is no money} - see *øko*

*yî pekô V* : to agree - syn. *yî 2, yî da*

*yî só N* : an expression used when groping for someone's name - what-you-may-call-it, what's-his-name - used only in the third person {yî só ... ita tì Kamara : what's-his-name ... the brother of Kamara}

*yî tërë V* : to love one another, to like one another, to feel and express mutual esteem {âla yî tërë mingi : they love each other very much} - see *yî 1, tërë 3*
yi ti bâa nôo Av : used pre-clausally : a little later, soon afterwards, not long after (mo yi ti bâa nôo, mo zia kpi : a little later, you add paste) (i yi ti bâa nôo, dole ni aske tambéla na lá kúi : not long after, the elephant was walking about in the evening)

yi ti më N : ear ornaments, ear-rings - kíssi, lenge, and ngbéroná are other personal ornaments

yi ti ngangó N : violence, persecution - see also sáná, ponó

yi ti vundú N : personal injury, suffering resulting from the action of malevolent agencies, persecution (yi ti vundú atí na ndô ti mbi mingi : much suffering has fallen upon me) - vundú esp. emphasizes the resentment and desire for retaliation resulting from such personal injury, and can be associated with sorrow or disappointment - sáná, ponó are approximate syn.

yoró [yoró, yoló, yoró, yoló] N : medicine, poison, fetish, charm, talisman - any specific material means of obtaining protective, curative, or destructive powers (ÁBambinga aske na yoró ti dole : the Pygmies have medicine (to catch) elephants) (ála tene ála aske mú kóli gi na kété yoró ti bata téré pêpe ? : aren't they saying that they catch husbands just with the little talismans used for protecting themselves?) (i zia yama na devant ti yoró ti i : we placed meat before our fetish) (tente yi sì mo mú kótá yoró, sì ita ti mbi akúi ? : why did you get powerful medicine, so that my brother died?) (zo ti Nzapá akpé mbito ti yoró pêpe : God's people do not fear fetishes) (ála mú yoró ti kobéla ni tongasó sì alingbi titânc akái : you must take the medicine for this sickness in this way so that it can be cured) - the term includes without distinction substances whose effect is good and substances whose effect is bâa, and does not distinguish between the natural effects of the application of some substances and magical effects attributed to others - it is used for both traditional and modern medicines - ngaànga is a kind of fetish

yô V : to carry a load, as on the head, the shoulder, or the back (lo yô yi na ndô gô : he carried something on his shoulder) (i dé kékké ti yô
yô (cont.)-yôro

na lo : we chopped down a tree to carry to him) {mbi yô caisse ni gbá : I tried in vain to carry the crate) - tô means to carry in a container, gbô means to carry in the hand

yo V : to be long, either horizontally or vertically - hence, to be far, to be tall (kôtôrô ti álala yô : their village is far away) {mo yo na mbi : you are far from me} (kéké só yô mingi : that tree is very tall) - the idea of tallness is more often conveyed by yongôro preceded by the copula éke

yô [yô, nyô, nyô] V : to suck, to drink, to smoke (tobacco) {álala yô samba : they drank beer} (mârêngé yô me ti mamá ti lo : the child sucked its mother's breast) {lo yô mânga : he smoked tobacco} - te means to bite, to eat, mene means to swallow, to gulp, ne 3 means to chew

yongôro An : of space or time : long - hence, far, tall (lo si na yongôro lége : he arrived at a far-away road) {téné ti lo ake yongôro pepe : his speech was not long} (zo só ake yongôro mingi : this man is very tall) {i tambéla na pekô ti lo yongôro mingi : we went after him for a very long time} - xo is often equivalent to the copula éke followed by yongôro

yongôro ngombe N : a term applied to the African troops used to pacify the country under colonial rule (âturûgu só, aéré álala yongôro ngombe, ake Sénégalais : those soldiers who were called yongôro ngombe, they were Senegalese) - see turûgu, garde

yôro V 1 : to fry {mo zia kárâko na wá na yá gbara ni, mo yôro ; you put the peanuts on the fire in a frying pan, and you fry them} (mo tûku makongô na wá mo yôro álala nzoni, ngbangatî álala fô : you dump the caterpillars into a pot and fry them well, so they won't spoil) - tô means to cook by boiling, zô can mean to roast

yôro V 2 : 1. to insert, to thrust, to poke in (mbi ake gi kéké ti yôro da : am looking for poles to insert into it (i.e. a roof structure)} {álala yôro mabôko na ndûzú : thrust your hands into the air) - kpe means to pierce, pé means to wave the hand

2. to stir - syn. tourner - see also mâ kôbe
yô yî-yûru

yô yî V : to beg for something, as a beggar - hûnda is a general term meaning to ask, sambéla means to pray to a divinity, and vorôo can also mean to plead

yû V : to put on (as clothing), to wear {mo yû bongô tî mo : put on your clothes} {âla yû pôrô tî géré tî âla : they wore their shoes} {quand même mbi yû pêpe, têné askê pêpe : even if I don't wear (it), there is no problem} - see bongô

yuru V : 1. to seep, to leak, to run out (as a liquid) {ngû sô kôé ayûru da awe : all this water has leaked out of it} {mênê ayûru na hô tî mérêngé : blood ran out of the child's nose} - sôa means to flow (as a river), gara means to flow (as blood in the veins), sá means to pour, to spill

2. by extension : to have diarrhea {lo yuru na lo dê na yû tî bî : he had diarrhea and he vomited during the night} - sâra purû na mênê means to have dysentery - see kobéla
- Z -

zá V : 1. to shine, to glitter, to be bright (wá azá na yá tí da; the fire shines inside the house) - su is used of the sun
2. to be sharp, to be keen (yángá tí zembe azá mingi; the edge of the knife-blade was very sharp) - leke 3 is used with the meaning, to sharpen
3. to be in excellent health - used with téré as subject (téré tí mo azá sängó; you are in excellent health (lit. your body shines))

zábojé N; the term is used by Christians to designate the devil
zaranga N: a roan antelope (Hippotragus equinus), one of the most prized game animals in the Central African Republic - see yama tí ngonda
zarí N: a ratel, a nocturnal carnivorous animal resembling a badger (genus Mellivora)

zaza N: a switch made of a twig stripped of leaves (i báa finóo mingi, ngbangati ála ekó mú zaza, aso na i, apíka i; we experienced much suffering, because they took switches, they hurt us, they beat us) - chicotte is a whip or scourge

zé V: to promise - not as solemnly binding as dé bá, to swear an oath
zéké N: to act of telling someone's fortune, as with cards - mbádi means divination

zé ndc N: a promise - not as solemnly binding as bá, an oath
ze N: a leopard, one of the most feared of the beasts of prey - see yama tí ngonda

zembe [zembe, zembe, zembe, zeme] N: a knife (babá tí lo amú na lo zembe, amú na lo kpóka, amú na lo dó, amú na lo riá, amú na lo yi kóé; his father gave him a knife, gave him a hoe, gave him an ax, gave him a throwing knife, gave him everything) - the traditional knife has a symmetrical, two-edged, pointed iron blade six to ten inches long and
set into a hilt-type carved wooden handle - it is carried in a leather sheath (pôro tí zembe), usually bound about the upper arm or fastened to the belt - this single tool and weapon served all cutting and stabbing purposes - iron is called wë - other tools and weapons having iron parts are: coupe-coupe, kwangbara, azonze (machete), dî (ax), kpôka, ncáfô (hoe), rîga (throwing knife), likongô (spear), kokara (arrow) - the iron parts of all but the machete (which is imported) were made of native iron by a blacksmith, ndæo - other weapons include ngindî a bow, abanu a cross-bow, ngombe a gun

zi V à: to loosen, to untie, to release, to remove (tongana î gá ngangô awe, si lo língbi titene lo zì mabóko na pekó tí i : when we become strong, then she (i.e. France) can remove from our back her (protective and supportive) hand) (lo zì kâmba na gó tí mbo : he untied the cord from the dog's neck) - syn. lungûla - opp. dû, kâna - see also zì na ngbanga

zi V 2: to dig a hole, esp. in the ground, for the purpose of inserting something (mo zi sése, mo sâra dû, mo lû gozo da : you dig in the ground, you make a hole, you plant manioc in it) - âsa means to dig shallowly with the hands, while zì implies a tool - kôro emphasizes the opening resulting from a boring operation - kou means to puncture - kata means to scratch with the fingernails, kpaka means to scrape

zia [zia, zyá, záa, zá] V : 1. to put, to set {mo zia ta na wâ : set the pot over the fire} (âla zia likongô na lége tí dole : they put (i.e. plant) spears in the path of the elephant) (âla zia mbi na école : they put me in school) (lo zia âla na kângâ : he put them in jail) - opp. mú, kamâta, lungûla - see also zì bë, zì ... na sése, zì mbéni da, zì lôro da, zì ngià na bë tí
2. to leave, to abandon, to cease {mbi zìa yi só köé : I left all these things} (âla zìa lége tí wë awe : they have abandoned the technique of iron-working) (kôtórô só, fàdé mbi zìa mbi goe : this town, I'll leave it and go away) (lo zìa âla tí sára kusâra : he left them to do the work) (zia toto : cease crying) - see zìa ... na lêse, zìa tí, zìa kôli, zìa wële - syn. goe, lôndô - opp dutì
3. to permit, to allow, to let (mo zía i hú tìré kété ma : please let us rest awhile) - see zía lége na ... tí

zia bé V : to set one's heart on - hence :

1. to trust, to commit one's self to, to receive with confidence, to believe (lo zía bé ti lo na téné tí Nzapá : he trusted God's word) - má ... bé is the neologism substituted for this standard expression in Protestant literature

zia kôli V : to divorce one's husband - syn. kpé kôli, kë kôli - see also zía wâle, mariage, marier

zia lége na ... tí V : to allow, to permit (mbi zía lége na lo tí goe na Bangui : I allowed him to go to Bangui) - syn. zía 3, mû lége na ... tí

zia lôrô da V : to hurry - see also kpé, kpé lôrô

zia mbéni da, zía mbéni na ndó ni V : to add to, to add some more (só aské míngi pêpe, mo zía mbéni da ma : that isn't very much, please add some more) - see zia 1

zia ... na lége V : to see someone on his way (mbi zía lo na lége : I saw him on his way) - see zia 2

zia ... na sése V : to set aside (tongana mo lungúla na wá, mo zía na sése ngbii : when you remove it from the fire, put it aside for a while) - see zia 1

zia ngiá na bé tí V : to make someone glad, to cause someone joy (mbi zía ngiá na bé tí ála : I caused them to rejoice) - syn. mû ngiá na bé tí

zia tí V : to leave off doing, to cease, to stop - syn. zía 2 - arrêter is used when there is no verb following to designate the action being stopped - opp. gá 5

zia wâle V : to divorce one's wife - syn. tomba wâle, kë wâle - see also zía kôli, mariage, marier

zía [zíba, nzíba] N : blind - wa zíba is a blind person
zi na ngbanga-zonga

zi na ngbanga V : to acquit (in a trial) - see zi 1, ngbanga - réclamer is to accuse formally

zingo [zingo, dzingo] V : 1. to arouse to waken (lo zingo âla na musique : he wakened them with music) {lo zingo kpîkara gbâ : he (tried) in vain to arouse the pangolin} - lôngô means to sleep 2. followed by na and a complement denoting a person : to scold, to reprimand {tongana kôli tí mo azingo na mo : ake ngbanga tí mo tí lôndô : if your husband scolds you, it is your business to leave} - sóku 2 is stronger

zo [zo, zu, dzo, dzu] N : 1. a person, a human being, in contrast to yama an animal and yi a thing (Boganda ate, zo kôé zo : Boganda (i.e. the first president and founding father of the Central African Republic) said, all people are human beings) {sése veni amú nginza na zo : it is the land which enriches people} {âzo tí kôtóró tí mbi : the people of my village} - téré is the body of a living person, while vingô is his spirit - kôâ 2 is the body of a dead person, while tóró is his spirit - kôli is a male, wâle is a female, adult unless otherwise specified - mérengô is a child, pendere is an adolescent, kpîngba kôli and kpîngba wâle refer to mature adults, mbakôro and kôta zo refer to old people - see famille for the kinship system - used in zo kôé, zo wa, kôta zo, zo vokô, vokô zo 2. followed by tí and a qualifying complement : a person characterized by ... - see zo tí buruma, zo tí kôtóró, zo tí lukundô, zo tí nzi, zo tí ze, and many other less idiomatic expressions - when wa can be substituted, as in wa nzi, it suggests a more permanent and essential trait than zo tí

zo kôé N : everyone, everybody (mo éré zo kôé : call everyone)

zonga [zonga, zonga, dzonga] V : to curse {aeké ngbangatí mo tí zonga kôgarâ tí mo pepe : it is not your business to curse your in-laws} - dé bâ means to swear an oath

zonga N : a curse - ndâ táá mo is at once a serious curse and a gross insult - bâ is an oath
zo tî buruma, zo tîn'gîba-z3a

zo tî buruma; zo tîn'gîba N : a leper - see buruma - lepers are not traditionally segregated in any way

zo tîkô'tôrô N : a citizen of a community - mbâ means a compatriot

zo tî lukundû N : a witch, i.e. a person possessed involuntarily and (sometimes) congenitally by a witch spirit (lukundû) which compels him to harm others without his being necessarily considered responsible - zo tî ze is a leopard man

zo tî nzî N : a thief - wa nzî is a syn. suggesting a more permanent and essential trait of character, while zo tî nzî can mean one who has once stolen

zo tî ze N : a leopard man - a person who is believed to transform himself at will into a leopard to prey on people at night (tongana zo tî ze ake na pópó tî i, ake nzonî i sî gigi fadé : if there is a leopard man among us, we must go out quickly) - see ze - zo tî lukundû is a witch

zo vokô N : a black man, a term readily applied by Africans to themselves (mbi sâra yî só ngbangati mbi ēkè zo vokô : I do this because I am a black man) - can be inverted - opp. mbunzû - see also mbunzû vokô

zo wa N : what person, who - used interrogatively (zo wa agâ só ? : who is coming?)

zó V : to burn, to set fire to, to roast (āla goe tî zó wà na ngonda : they went to set a fire in the bush) (lo zó charbon : he burned charcoal, i.e. made it by burning wood under controlled circumstances) (mbi sâru fonâo, mbi zó, mbi ts : I cut off a plantain, I roasted it, I ate it) - this verb implies an element of purpose or volition, so that it is used only of the action of persons - gbi is used of a fire burning of its accord, or of things burning - mingo means to extinguish, tînga wà means to light a fire

zoa* N : an island (sêse só ngû angôro nî kôè atîngbi aëré atene, zoa : a piece of land which is surrounded by water meeting (on the other side) is called an island)
zúku V : to bow, to kneel (má bi zúku na sése tí kamáta í : I knelt on the ground to pick something up) (lo zúku li tí lo : he bowed his head, i.e. to worship) - kuku means to kneel, ba means to bend, dénge means to lean, sambála means to worship

zuru N : mil, a staple grain in the northern part of the country - syn. bóndó
ča? I : an exclamation used to urge on a dog : sick 'em! - dára and bi mbo mean to incite a dog, to urge him on
čača N : pieces of roast meat sold as a snack in markets
abandon V: 1. to leave, to leave behind: zia V - see also put
   2. to throw away: bi ... na ngonda V, bi ... na sése V

abdomen N: external and internal aspects: yâ N - refers esp. to the
digestive organs, esp. the stomach - see also liver

ability N: ndarâa N, malin** N, manière N - see skill

able, be V: lingbi V (I am able to read: mbi lingbi ti diko mbéti) -
this also means to suffice, to be equal

abort V: have an abortion, a miscarriage: ngo ... buba V (she had a
miscarriage: ngo abuba awe)

abound V: ekë míngi V (people abounded: ázo askë míngi)

about Prep: na lége ti CP - see concerning

about it Prep P: only post-verbally: da Av (I asked him about it: mbi
húnda lo da) - usually in a locative sense: there

above Prep, Adv: na li ti CP, na ndô (ti/ni) CP - see over

abstain V: kç V, yx pepe V - these mean to refuse, to reject

absent, be V: manquer** V - this also means to fail

accept V: yí V, yí da V, yí pœkó ní V - see agree

accident N: esp. with vehicle or at work: accident** N

accompany V: 1. come with: gâ na V (he accompanied his father: lo
gâ na babá tí lo) - gâ means to come - see also bring
   2. go with: goe na V (he accompanied his father: lo goe na babá tí
lo) - see go
   3. return with: kírí na V (he accompanied me back to the village:
lo kírí na mbi na katóró) - see return
   4. walk with: tambéla na V - see walk
accomplish V : 1. in an active sense : sára V - see do
   2. in a passive sense, meaning to be finished : we V

accuse V : 1. in general : réclamer** V
   2. on simple suspicion : pâ éré V (he accused me on suspicion : lo pâ éré té mbi) - this means also to slander - see also betray

ache V : so V - see hurt

acquainted, be V : 1. casually : hinga lé ti V (I know him casually : mbi hinga lé ti lo) - this means also to recognize
   2. mutually : hinga téré V (they know one another : âla hinga téré)
   3. intimately : hinga bé t’ V (I know him intimately : mbi hinga bé ti lo)

acquire V : 1. obtain : wara V
   2. buy : vo V

acquit V : zí ... na ngbanga V (they acquitted him : âla zí lo na ngbanga)

act V : 1. sára V (he acted badly : lo sára sioni) - see also do, make
   2. in a drama : fa pandé V - see show, model

add V : to add more to : zia mbéni da V, zia mbéni na ndó ní V (he added more to it : lo zia mbéni da)

address N : 1. location : adresse** N
   2. speech : téné N - this means any kind of utterance

adequate, be V : língbi V - see suffice

adjudicate V : fa ngbanga V - see judge V

administration N : 1. gouvernement** N
   2. the Central African Republic is divided into a number of units called préfecture** administered by an appointed civil service officer with broad executive powers called préfet** - each of these units is divided into two or more sub-units called sous-préfecture** administered by a sous-préfet** - each of these in turn is composed of several townships called collectivité** administered by an elected council and président** - each of these is in turn composed of a number of
villages called kótóró - a city is a specially organized municipal unit called ville** with an elected mayor, but most smaller communities still have a chief or headman called respectively makunzi and kapita.

administrative center N : poste** N

administrator N : 1. see administration
2. before independence, the chief officers of the préfecture** (then called région**) and the sous-préfecture (then called district**) were officially called chef de région and chef de district respectively, but were called commandant** unofficially as a carry-over from the days of military occupation and rule

admonish V : wa V - see warn

adolescent N : pendere An - see also child

adopt V : (a child) : bata (mérangé) V, kamáta (mérangé) V

adulteress N : wâle ti pitâ N - this can also mean prostitute

adultery N : lângó sioni N - this also means fornication

advance V : hô V, pousser** V, go na devant V - see also pass, push, go

advice N : wângô N - see warning

advise V : wa V - see warn

affair N : téné N, ngbanga N - see also matter

affect V : 1. general : sâra V, with a noun denoting a state, emotion, etc., as subject, and a noun denoting a person as object (fear affects me, i.e. I am afraid : mbîto asâra mbi) (sickness affects me, i.e. I am sick : kobéla asâra mbi) - see also other verbs expressing such states and emotions, and do
2. stronger reaction : gbô V - used in the same constructions as 1 - means to seize

afraid, be V : kpé mbîto V - see also fear V for more expressions

after, afterwards Prep, Adv : 1. simple sequence : na ndâ (ti/ni) CP,
after, afterwards (cont.)-all

na pêko (ti/ni) CP {he came afterwards : lo gá na ndá ni} {he came after me : lo gá na pêko ti mbi} - also means behind

2. soon after (wards) : yî tî bââ ndo, used pre-clausally {soon afterwards, I threw it away : mbi yî tî bââ ndo, mbi bi na ngonda} - see also immediately

afternoon N : 1. early : deux heures** N - see also day
2. late, sunset ; la kûi N
3. in general : na pêko tî kôtâ là CP - see noon

again Adv : mbéni An, encore** Av {I went again to the village : mbi goe na kôtôrô encore} {do it again : mo sâra mbéni} - they can also be used pre-clausally, and mbéni with a noun means other

agree V : 1. yî V, yî da V, yî pêko nî V - see want
2. hold the same opinion : sâra bê 5ko na ndô V {we agree as to this matter : i sâra bê 5ko na ndô tînê sô}

agreement N : yíngô pêko tî (yî) N - see also peace, harmony

ahead Adv : na devant** CP {I'm going ahead : mbi goe na devant}

aid V : aider** V - see help

ailment N : kobéla N, malade** N - terms for disease or sickness as well as personal harm resulting from an accident

aim V : (at the vital spot, in hunting) : bâa ndo tî kûi V

air N : ia N - see also sky, heaven

airplane N : avion** N

alight V : 1. of a person, to embark or disembark : ko V
2. of a bird, to alight on a branch : gbô kéké V

alike Adj, Adv : lége ôko N - see same

a little Adv : kété An {I went on a little : mbi hô kété} {let us rest a little : zîa î hû tîrê kété} - see little

all Adj, Adv : dôé An, tout** An, or both {all our brothers : îta tî î kôé} {the people of the whole earth : âzo ti sése kôé} {absolutely
all men: zo kóé tout) - also means whole, entire, entirely

allow V: 1. zía lége na V (I allowed him to go to Bangui: mbi zía lége na lo tí goe na Bangui) - see also put
2. mû lége na V (I allowed him to go to Bangui: mbi mú lége na lo tí goe na Bangui) - see give

almost Adv: gá ndurá V (he almost died: lo gá ndurá tí kúí) - see also be about to

alone Adj: óko An - see one

already Adv: 1. formerly: ândo Av (I've already told you: mbi tene ândo na mo)
2. it is finished: we V (I have already done it (lit. I have done, it is finished): mbi sâra ave)

also Adj, Adv: nga An, kóé An, aussi** An - these are all used with either nouns or verbs, and are interchangeable (he also ate: lo nga, lo ts) (I also will do it: fadé mbi kóé mbi sâra) (he came also: lo gá aussi) - koe also means all, whole, entirely

although C: quand même** C - when introducing a sentence, quand même also means even if - used to modify a verb, it means anyway, nevertheless

altogether Adv: kóé An - see entirely

always Adv: lâ kóé N (I always eat just greens: lâ kóé mbi ts gí ngunzâ) (he changes clothes always: lo changer bongó lâ kóé) - this also means every day, daily - reduplicated, it means every single day, forever

amiability N: ngiâ N - means also fellowship, joy

among Prép: na pòpò ti CP, na milieu** ti CP (among them: na pòpò ti âla) - also mean between

amuse V: (a baby): hânda (mérangé) V - see also tempt

amusement N: ngiâ N - see also joy, play

ancestor N: 1. collective, usually plural, general: kótara N
2. collective, usually plural, paternal ancestors: babá N - also
ancestor (cont.)-answer

means father
3. collective, usually plural, maternal ancestors: mamá N - also means mother
4. collective plural or individual singular, a maternal or female ancestor, a grandmother: tará N
5. individual singular, esp. grandfather: kaká N

and C: 1. in all uses: na C (father and mother: babá na mamá) (he came and he saw the village: lo gá na lo báa kótáró) - also means with, by, toward, in, from
2. only in joining sentences: mais** C - also means but
3. almost exclusively in French numerals: et** C

and then C: 1. na C, mais** C, et** C - see and
2. et puis** C - synonymous with connectives listed in 1
3. sí C (I called him, and then he came: mbi éré lo, sí lo gá) - can also mean so then, so that

anecdote N: isoró N is a general term for an utterance, including a story
anger N: ngonzo N - also means bile
angry, be V: 1. sára ngonzo V (he was angry: lo sára ngonza)
2. ngonzo ... sára V (he was angry: ngorzo asára lo) - see affect
3. ngonzo ... gbó V (he was very angry: ngonzo agbó lo) - this is stronger than 2 - see seize
animal N: yáma N - also means meat
animal, wild N: yáma yi ngonda N
anklet N: of coiled brass: ngbéréná N - also means bracelet, bell (for dog)
annoy V: emmerder** V, génér** V, be V, mú yângá V - see also to discourage
{he is annoying me: lo éko emmerder mbi}
another Adj: mbéni An - see other
answer V: 1. (a call): yi da V - also means to agree
2. (a question): kírí téné V (he answered me: lo kírí téné na mbi)
3. répondre** V is sometimes used
4. *kiri* V is used when a term denoting the response occurs elsewhere in the environment (I'll find something to answer to your question: *fadé* mbi wara mbéni yí tì kiri na question tì mò) - see return

*antelope* N: no generic term applies to all antelopes, and the precise zoological identifications of the Sango terms are not always clear - see *duiker*, *eland*, *hartebeest*, *kob*, *roan antelope*, *sitatunga*, *waterbuck*

*anus* N: yéné N, dú tì yéné N

*any* Adj: mbéni An - also means *other*, *some*

*any more* Adv: mbéni ... pepe Av (I don't want to go there any more: mbi yí tì goe ká mbéni pepe) - encore** ... pepe Av is syn.

*anything* P: mbéni yí N - also means *something*

*anyway* Adv: quand même Av, used post-verbally - used pre-clausally, it means *if*, *although*

*apology* N: pardon** N - this means any humble recognition of one's wrongdoing, or of one's obligation or dependence, as to God - it is used as an ingratiating, placating, and apologetic interjection

*appear* V: 1. to come into view: *sí* V, *sí gigí* V (the animal came into view: yâwa ní así gigí) (sweat appeared on my body: gbikí así na téré tì mbi) - *sí* means to *arrive*, *sí gigí* means to *emerge*

2. to *seem*: báa tongana (he appeared to be dirty: abáa tongana lo âke saleté)

*appetite* N: nzala N - see also *desire* N

*application* N: a formal request: demande** N

*apportion* N: kângbi V - see *divide*

*apprehension* N: mbîto N - see *fear*

*apprentice* N: 1. in general: apprenti** N - this is also used in sense 2

2. a truck driver's *flunky*: báta kângbâ N

*approach* V: gá ndurú V (I approached the house: mbi gá ndurú na da) - see *come*
arbitrate V : fáa ngbangba V - see judge
argue V : papa V - see quarrel V
argument N : papa N - see quarrel N
arid Adj : kûrû N - see dried
arise V : lôndô V - see get up
arm N : mabóko N, ti N - these also mean hand
armpit N : gbé tî mabóko N
arouse V : zíngô V - also means to waken, to scold
arrange V : 1. leke V - see also prepare
2. to set in order : leke na kâmâbá ní V-means to arrange in a row or line
arrest V : arrêter** V - means also to stop
arrival N : sxngô N {upon your arrival, I'll see you : sxngô tî mo, fâdê mbi bâa mo} - from sx to arrive
arrive V : of motion toward a place : sx, gâ V, or both (he arrived in the village : lo sx na kôtôrô) {I arrived at the house : mbi gâ na da} {I arrived at the house : mbi gâ sx na da} - see also come
2. of the passage of time : sx V (evening arrived : lâ kûí asî, or, asî na lâ kûí)
arrows N : kokora N - see also bow
as C : tongana C - also means like
ascend V : monter** V
ask V : 1. in general : hûnda V
2. (for something) : hûnda (yî) V - see also beg, pray
3. (a question) hûnda téné V
assemble V : 1. bôngbi V
2. (for a common purpose) : bôngbi li tî V, bôngbi téré V - see also meet
assembly N : 1. in general : bôngbi N
  2. national legislature : assemblée (legislative)** N
assert V : tene V - say
assist V : aider** V - see help
asthma N : kobéla ti kate N - see tuberculosis
astonished, be V : 1. to be surprised : li ... kpé V (they were astonished : li tí ála akpé)
  2. with an element of fear : bé ... gbó V (they were astonished : bé tí ála agbó) - see seize
at Prep : 1. na C (he is at Bangui : lo ñê na Bangui) - also means and, but, to, in, from
  2. sometimes : na mbáge ti CP (it's like that in Bangui : ake tongasó na mbáge ti Bangui) - also means toward, beside
attach V : tíngbi V - see join, fasten
attack V : 1. tí na ndô tí V - this means to fall upon
  2. goe berâ na li tí V (they attacked the chief : ála goe berá na li tí makunzi) - see fight, war
  3. sometimes : attaquer** V
attempt V : tara V, gi lége V - see try
attention N : (in sense of paying attention) : attention** N - see pay attention
at the edge of Prep : na yàngá tí CP - see edge
aunt N : 1. mother's sister : mamá N - means also mother
  2. mother's older sister : kótá mamá N
  3. mother's younger sister : kété mamá N
  4. father's sister : omba N
authority N : ti N - means also hand
automobile N : 1. general term : kutukutu N
  2. passenger car : auto** N
3. bus: autocar** N, car** N
4. truck: camion** N

avenge V: fúta kulá V - see revenge N - this refers to the retribution occasioned by very grave offenses - see also sorrow, resentment

avoid V: (a person): kë V - this means to refuse, to reject

awaken V: zingo V - means also to scold

aware, be V: hinga V - see know

away Adv: see far

ax N: dô N - see tool
- B -

baboon N : bâkoyâ N - see monkey

baby N : kété mérangé N - see child

bachelor N : kombaâmbâ N - a single girl is masia

back N : 1. in general : pekô N - used in expressions for behind, after
2. lower : ngbunâ N, ndâ N - also mean hips, buttocks

back up V : kiri na ndâ ní V, kiri na pekô V - see return

bad Adj : sioni An {a bad man : zo tî sioni} {it is bad : aekè sioni}
(your badness : sioni tî mò) - see crooked, good

bag N : 1. an indigenous carrying bag of leather or woven grass : bozô N
2. a sack : sac***N - also means a sum of a thousand francs

bald, be V : mbóko V {he is bald : li tî lo ambóko} - also means to be
bruised or ulcerated

ball N : 1. large inflated ball for sports : ballon** N
2. smaller, solid ball : balle** N
3. rubber ball, esp. home-made : ndembû N - this means rubber

bamboo N : bambou** N - true bamboo is rare, and the term applies usually
to the stem of the leaf of a species of fan palm

ba' ana N : bulée N - see also plantain

bark V : as dog : dé kóngó V - also means to shout

basin N : kolôngo N - also means a broad platter

basket N : sakpâ N - there are a number of kinds of baskets

bathe V : sukûla V, sukûla ngû V, sukûla tîré V - see wash up

battle N : berâ N - this means war

be V : 1. simple copula : eke V, ke V {he's a man : lo eke kôli} {it
be (cont.)—because, because of

(1) The weather) is cold: aské

2. a marker of progressive action, with another verb: ské V, ké V
   {he is eating: lo ké ti kébé}—but this can be completely empty of
   meaning

3. to exist, to be present: du V, duti V—see sit, dwell

be about to V:
1. gá ndurú V {he was about to die: lo gá ndurú ti kúi}—
   means also almost—see near

2. yí ti V {he was about to die: lo yí ti kúi}—see want

bead N:
1. in general: lenge N

2. a string of beads worn about the hips: kisi N—see ornament

bear V:
1. to carry: yó V

2. (fruit or seed): lé V {the ground doesn't bear fruit: sésé alé
   pèpè}—see seed

3. (a child): dú V {she bore a child: lo dú mérangé}—also means
to beget, to be born

beard N: kóá ngbagba N—see jaw, hair

bear down V: ne V—also means to be heavy, to crush, to chew

beat V:
1. hit: píka V

2. defeat: gagner** V

3. (drum): píka (ngó) V

4. (as heart or pulse): pousser** V, pomper** V—see push

beautiful Adj.: pendere An {beautiful clothes: pendere bongó} {a beautiful
woman: pendere wále}—also means young

beautiful, be V:
(of weather): gá nzoní V, sára nzoní V, ské nzoní V
(it is beautiful: aské nzoní)

beauty N: pendere An {the beauty of the village: pendere tí kótóró}

because, because of C, Prep:
1. ngbangati C, teneti C {it is because of
   money: aské ngbangati nginza} {thank you because you came:
   merci
   teneti só mo gá}—also means in order to

2. sometimes: na lége ti—usually means by means of
beckon V: 1. in general, to signal with the hand: pé ti V (I beckoned with my hand to show I could not talk: mbi pé ti ti mbi ti fa na gigi mbi sâra téné pêrs) - can also mean to wave - see winnow
   2. to summon: éré na kôôko V

become V: gâ V, followed by an appropriate noun or adjective (I become big: mbi gâ kôté) (I become a man: mbi gâ bôli) - gâ noun V can have the special meanings to recover, to be comforted, to prosper

bed N: tangé N - gbogbó N is a mat

bee N: lavú N, wôtoro N

beef N: bâgara N - this also means cattle, bull, cow, calf, ox, steer - see meat

beer N: 1. generic term for alcoholic beverages: samba N
   2. imported European beer: blare N
   3. made from grain: lokpoto N
   4. made from sprouted corn: bâgara K
   5. mead made from honey: duma K

beeswax N: mafuta ti wôtoro N - this can also mean honey

before Prep: na devant ti CP - also means in front of

before Adv: kôzo (ni) Av - also means first

beg V: 1. to ask: hûnda V
   2. as a beggar: yô yi V

beget V: dû V - also means to bear (a child), to be born

begin V: 1. in general: commencer V (it'll begin soon: ake commencer àndo hio) (he began to work: le commencer ti sâra koa)
   2. gâ V (the animal began to grow: yôma mí agâ akoa) - see come, become
   3. (a trip): mû lége V - see start off

behave V: sâra V - see do

behind Prep.: na pekó ti CP - also means after
believe V ; 1. to agree to ; yi da V - means also to accept, to answer
   2. to trust, to commit oneself ; zia bi V - also means to covet, to set one's heart on.
   3. Protestant neologism for 2 : së na bi V

believer N ; wa më bi N - a Protestant neologism

bell N : brass ball tied to dog's neck ; ngbérén N - also means brass coiled bracelet

belong V ; ekti V (this hat belongs to him ; kpoto së ake ti lo)

below Prep, Adv ; na gbë ti/ni CP - also means under

bench N ; (school or other) ; banc** N - also means board (for chopping food)

bend V ; 1. ba V (he bent the stick ; lo ba ké ké ni) - also means to be bent
   2. dëngë V - means to lean to one side - used with object
   3. to break (as a stick) ; kôngbi V - also means to fold

beneath Prep ; na gbë ti/ni CP - also means under

bent, be V ; ba V (his back is bent ; pékó ti lo abë) - also means to bend

beside Prep ; 1. in rather remote connection ; na slëge ti/ni CP - also means toward
   2. in closer relationship ; na téré ti/ni CP - also means on the body of

best Adj ; nzoni ah' kôé An - nzoni is good

betray V ; 1. sëra makô N - also means to slander
   2. if money is involved ; kô V - also means to sell

betrayal N ; makô N - also means slander

betroth N ; make public news of betrothal ; fa na cigi V - means to publish

better Adj ; nzoni ah' An - nzoni means good

between Prep ; na pôpô ti/ni CP, na milieu** ti/ni CP - also mean among

Bible N ; mbëti ti Nzapâ N
bicycle **N** : vélo** N**

big **Adj** : kótá **N** (I carried the big crate : mbi yó kótá caisse ni) - also means **wide, thick, great**

big, be or become **V** : kono **V** - also means to **grow**

bile **N** : ngonzo **N** - also means **anger**

bind **V** : (with a cord) : kânga (na kâmba) **V** - also means to **tie, to shut**

bird **N** : ndeke **N**

birth **N** : dângó **N** - from dâ **V** to **bear, to beget**

bite **V** : 1. with incisors : te **V** - used of man, dog, snake, mosquito - also means to **eat**
   2. with molars : ne **V** - also means to **chew, to bear down, to crush,** to be **heavy**
   3. as fish : mène **V** - means to **swallow, to gulp**

bitter, be **V** : sé **V** (quine is bitter : quinine asé)

black **Adj** : vokó **N** (a black cloth : vokó bongó) - also means **dark, dirty** - see **color**

black, be or become **V** : vokó **V** (it became black : nدو avokó) (my body is black : téré tí mbi avokó) - also means to be **dark, to be dirty**

black man **N** : zo vokó **N**, vokó zo **N**

blacksmith **N** : nclao **N**

blade **N** : 1. flat of blade : lé **N** (knife blade : lé tí zembe) - also means **face, eye**
   2. edge of blade : yângâ **N** (the edge of the knife : yângâ tí zembe) - also means **mouth, edge**

bleed **V** : (méné) ... yuru **V** - yuru means to **leak, to seep, to run out** (as a liquid)

bless **V** : pronounce blessing : éré téné nzoni na ndó tí **V**

blind **Adj** : zibó **N**
blind person

blind person N: m. zîba N; na só ñbàlà ado pepe N; na só lé ti lo akû N, zo ti tataro ado N

blink V: ké lé V [I blinked : mbi ké lé mbi]
blood N: mènè N

bloom V: sàra ndôkô V - ndôkô is a flower

blow V: 1. as wind: fi V (the wind blew: rupû a1a)
   2. with mouth: hò ndôcô V - also means to exhale
   3. (the nose): ìnu ("A") V
   4. (wind instruments): ìnu V

blue Adj: blèn** An - see color

bluff V: hànda V; (they bluffed him to frighten him; àla hànda lo si lo kpé ñbîto) - means to trick, to entice, to fascinate

board N: (for chopping food): banc** N - also means bench

boast ¥; fababà ¥, aéra baba V - also means vanity

boat N: 1. dugout canoe : nô N
   2. a larger boat or ship of European design: bateau** N

body N: 1. living, of man or animal: tèrè N - also means side, flank
   2. dead human: kô N
   3. dead animal: kî N

boil V: 1. as water: kporo Y - means to bubble
   2. (food): tõ V - means to cook

bone N: biô N

book N: mbêti N - also means paper, document, magazine

bore V: kôro (dû) V - see also dig

bosom friend N: camarade** N, ndeko N - see also companion

born, be V: då V - usually with parent(s) as subject, sometimes only with the subject marker a- (my mother bore me: mamà tì mbi adà mbi) (I was
born: ndà mbi — means to bear (child), to beget

borrow V: hûnda bon* V, sûra bon* V — also means to buy on credit

bother V: gêner**, emmender**, V, be V, mû yàngâ V — see also to discourage, to annoy, to weary

bottle N: «. European type: bouteille** N
  2. a scurd cut open at the small end: ngângâ N — see also dipper

bottom N: gbé N, ndâ. N — gbé means the lower part, ndâ means lower back, hips, buttocks

bounce V: uru V — means also to jump, to fly

bow N(weapon): gindi N — see also arrow

bow V: «. (the head): zûku (li) V — means also to kneel, to worship
  2. bend the body: ba V (he bowed low: lo ba na sése) — also means to bend

box N: 1. small, wooden, metal, or cardboard: boîte** N (a post-office box: boîte postale)
  2. large case or crate: caisse** N
  3. wooden chest for storage: sandûku
  4. suitcase: valise** N

boy N: mérengé (tî) kôli N — also means son — mérengé is a child

bracelet N: coiled brass: ngbérôna N — also means anklet, bell (for dog)

brag V: fa baba V, sûra baba V — baba means vanity

braid V: 1. (hair): hâ (kôâ li) V
  2. (rope): hâ (kâmba) V

brain N: ndôndô li N

brave Adj: ngangô An — means strong — see also hero

bread N: mápa N

break V: 1. a rope: fâa V (he broke the rope: lo fâa kâmba) (the
break (cont.)-brood

rope broke : kambə afla) - also means cut, kill
2. as a pot : faa V (he broke the pot : lo faa te) (the pot broke : ta afla)
3. as a stick : kongbi V (he broke the stick : lo kongbi kéké) (the stick broke : kéké akongbi) - also means to fold
break ground V : dé (sése) V - see also make a garden
break wind V : sōsō V
breast N : 1. part of chest : li bé N
2. whole chest : kate N
3. breast proper : a N - also means nipple
breath N : mbëo N
breathe V : 1. hû V
2. hû mbëo V - this means to exhale, to blow with the mouth
brew V : (beer) : tó samba V
bribe N : matabisi N, cadeau** N - also mean a gift
brick N : sun-dried block for building : noile** N
bride-price N : 1. mosoro N - this means wealth in general
2. wë N - this means basically iron - a large part of the bride-price was traditionally paid in the form of conventionally shaped bars of iron
bridge N : pont** N
bring V : gá na V (bring the knife : gá na zembe) - gá is to come
bring back V : kir' na V - kir means to return
bristle N : 1. as of caterpillar : kii N - also means thorn
2. hair : kôâ N
broad Adj : kotâ An - also means big, thick, great, important
bronchitis N : kobéla ti kate N - see tuberculosis
brood V : as a chicken : bôngbi ... na kpongbi ti V - kpongbi is a wing - bôngbi means to gather
brook N : nga N - means water, river, rain, year

broom N : balai** N

brother N : 1. ita (ti) kâli - ita is a sibling - see also sister
   2. older brother : kôta zo N
   3. younger sibling : ngaâbe N

brother-in-law N : kôgara N - also means father-in-law, son-in-law

brown Adj : 1. reddish : biingâ Aâ - means red - see color
   2. dark : vokâ Aâ - means black, dark - see color

brown V : as food frying : be V - also means to be ripe

bruised, be V : mbôko V - also means to be ulcerated, to be bald

bubble V : kôrâo V - used of water boiling (see boil) and of carbonated
drinks, etc.

bud V : as a newly planted slip : mbûma V, ty V

buffalo N : gôgâa N, ngbâa N, bâgara N - bâgara is more commonly used of
domestic cattle

buffalo bird N : ndeke ti ngaâa N

build V : sâra (da) V

building N : da N - see also house

bull N : kâli bâgara N - bâgara means cattle, cow, ox, steer, calf, beef,
and sometimes buffalo

bunch N : gbâ N - see bundle

bundle N : 1. as of grass : gbâ N (a bundle of grass : gbâ ti péré) (a
   bundle of arrows : gbâ ti kokora)
   2. a head load : kongbâ N - see also burden

burden N : kongbâ N - see load, bundle

bureaucrat N : mbûnzu vokî N - see clerk

burglar N : mo ti nzi N, wa nzi N - mean thief in general
burn V : 1. impersonal action of the fire itself or of the thing burned:
   gbí V {fire burned five houses : wá agbí da ukú} {five houses burned:
da ukú agbí}
   2. to set fire deliberately : zó V {he burned the grass : lo zó péré}
burr N : kpo mo ngangó N, kíi N, sisi N - see also thorn
burst V : sungba V - used of thunder and of cotton bolls, as well as of
   other explosive noises or motions
bury V : lú V - also means to plant
bus N : autocar**, car** - see also automobile
bush N : wilderness : ngonda N
bush pig N : mbengé N
business N : affair : téné N, ngbanga N {it is your business : ake téné
tí mo, ake ngbanga tí mo} - téné also means word
busy, be V : occuper** V
but C : mais** C, na C, mais** na C, et** na C
butcher V : doroko V {we butchered the animal : i doroko yamá ní} - see cut
buttock N : ngbundá N, ndá N - see also back, hips
buy V : 1. vo V - also means to sell
   2. on credit : sára bon** V, hunda bon** V - also mean to borrow
by means of Prep : na lége tí/ni CP - also means through
- C -
cabinet-maker N : charpentier** N - only the more sophisticated use menuisier** N
cackle V : as a chicken : toto V - means to cry
cadaver N : kóá N - means dead human body
calf N : mérangé tí bágara N - bágara means cattle, cow, bull, etc.
call V : 1. to get attention : to koa V - also means to send word
2. to summon someone : érê V, érê ndo V
3. to name someone : érê V
call for V : demand : érê V, húnda V - húnda means to ask
can V : língbi V - means to suffice, to be able, to be equal
canoe N : dugout : ngó N
can you beat that? : (mo) báa yi awe? can

cap N : kpoto N - means a hat
capable, be V : língbi V - means to be able, to suffice, to be equal
capsule N : (of medicine) : quinine** N - see also pill, tablet
capture V : kamâta V - means to take
car N : auto** N - see automobile
card N : 1. membership : carte** N
2. identification : carte d'identité** N
care for V : 1. sára na V - means to serve, to work for, to use
2. (as a sick person) : soigner** V - means also to treat medically
carpeter N : charpentier** N
carry V : 1. (in container) : tô V - means draw water, dip up liquid, carry dirt in basket, etc.
carry (cont.)-cease

2. (on head, back, or shoulders) : yô V
3. (in hand) : gbô V - means to grasp
4. (a baby) : kânga (mérangé) na pêkô V - see to tie

carry on V : (in an agitated manner) : dôma térê V
cartridge N : cartouche** N
carve : (a figure) : leke pandé V
case N : a crate : caisse** N, sometimes sandâku N - see box
cast V : throw : bi V
castrate V : lungâla korobô V - korobô is the scrotum
cat N : yâq N - usually domestic, but may also refer to a wildcat
catch V : 1. to seize, as with hand or trap : gbô V
      2. to take : kamâta V
      3. to chase and catch : tomba V
catch fire V : gbî V - see burn
catch sight of V : bâa V - see see
catechist N : a religious lay leader or instructor : catéchiste** N
caterpillar N : makongô N
Catholic N : catholique** N

cattle N : bâgara N - means beef, bull, cow, calf, ox, steer, and sometimes buffalo - various modifiers make the meaning more specific as to age and sex - see male, female, child
caught, be V : (in a cord snare) : gbô (kâmba) V - see seize
cause V : (to do) : sâra {he caused him to fall : lo sâra si lo tí} - see make, do, affect
cause to disappear V : hûnzi V - see finish, hide
cease V : 1. to stop : arrêter** V
      2. with a verbal complement denoting the action stopped : zia V {he ceased to chase animals : lo zia tí tomba yâma} - also means to leave,
to abandon, to put

celebrate V : sâra matânga V

celebration N : matânga N - see also holiday

certain, a Adj : ôko An, mbéni An (I saw a certain man : mbi bâa mbérê ngóô ôko, mbi bâa mbéni mbérê ngóô) - ôko means one, mbéni means other
certainly Adv : biakú Av, bîaní Av - can be used either pre-clausally or post-verbally - either can be reduplicated for emphasis - means also truly
certificate N : certificat** N - without further specification, refers to the certificate awarded upon successful passing of the examinations marking the completion of the six-year elementary education program

chaff N : (of grain) : kakô N - see also husk

chance N : lége N - see opportunity - means also path, manner, way

change V : changer** V (he changed clothes : lo changer bongó) {people's dispositions change : bê tî zo changer}

change one's mind V : leke bê V - also means to repent

chapel N : chapelle** N, da tî Nzâpâ N - see church

character N : bê N - also means disposition, liver

charcoal N : charbon** N

charm N : (protective) : yorô N - see medicine, talisman, fetish

chase V : tomba V - means to pursue, to drive away

chat V : general terms : causer** V, sâra isorô V, sâra téné V

2. with emphasis on good fellowship : sâra ngiâ - see have fun, play

chauffeur N : chauffeur** N

cheek N : mbângbâ N

cheetah N ngôro N (?)

chest N : 1. part of anatomy : kate N

2. wooden box : sandûku N
chicken-circumcision

chicken N : kándo N - complements are added to specify hen, rooster

chief N : in traditional and colonial power structures, the head of a village : makunzi N - see also headman

chigger N : ngusù N - also means maggot

child N : 1. non-adult, human or animal : mérêngé N - means baby, infant, youth, adolescent - complements specify sex - boy, girl
   2. in kinship sense : mérêngé N - see also son, daughter

chimpanzee N : seko N

chin N : ngbagba N - also means lower jaw

choose V : choisir** V, éré ... na pópó ti/ni V, gi ... na pópó ti/ni V, kamâta ... na pétó ti/ni V, mú ... na pópó ti/ni V - see call, seek, take

chop V : (a tree) : dé (kéké) V - see cut

Christian N : 1. general terms : chrétien** N, mérêngé ti Nzapá N
   2. a church member in good standing (among Protestants) : membre** N

church N : 1. a congregation of people : église** N
   2. a building : da ti Nzapá N, chapelle** N, église** N (among Catholics chiefly), mission** N (among less sophisticated speakers)
   3. a denomination : église ti catholique** N, église ti père** N refer to the Catholic church - église ti protestant** N, église ti anglais** N refer to the Protestant church - mission** N can substitute for église** N in these expressions

cigarette N : cigarette** N - mánga N is a more general term for tobacco - see smoke

circle V : ngôro V - see surround

circumcise V : fâa ganzâ V - the same term also applies to female excision of the clitoris

circumcision N : ganzâ N - this term applies to the entire set of ceremonies constituting the rites of passage for both sexes, including the physical
operation, a dance, and a certain amount of formal instruction

city N: 1. general term for a settled community: kótóró N
   2. a municipal administrative unit: ville** N

civilized, be or become V: civiliser** V (a woman who is civilized ... :
   mbéni wále so aciviliser ... ) (a civilized person: zo tí civiliser)

civil servant N: fonctionnaire** N - see also bureaucrat

claw N: (of animal): nzéndé N - also means a fingernail

clay N: 1. mud: potopóto N - also means mush, gruel
   2. for making pots: ndóó N

clean Adj: propre** An, vurú An, saleté** pape An - vurú means white,
   saleté means dirty

clean V: sukúla V - means esp. to wash

clean, be V: vurú V - means to be white

cleave V (together): gbó téré V - see seize

clergy N: 1. Protestant ordained pastor: pasteur N
   2. Catholic ordained priest: père** N

clerk N: an office employee, esp. in a government office: mbunzú vokó N - see bureaucrat

climb V: monter** V

close Adj: ndurú An - means also short

close V: kánga V - means also to tie, to fasten, to be closed

closed, be V: kánga V - means also to tie, to fasten, to close

cloth, clothing N: bongó N

cloud N: mbinda N - also means fog

coagulate V: gbó V, coller** V - see seize, harden, set, be firm

coal N: 1. glowing: lé tí wá N
   2. embers: pindírí N
   3. charcoal: charbon** N
coffee N : café** N

cogitate V : hâ V, b’anda V - see think

cold N : 1. a disease : kóró N
    2. temperature : dé N

cold, be or become : 1. general : dé V (the water is cold, or the water
    is becoming cold : ngû adé)
    2. to be cold (of weather) : ndo akè dé (mîngi), dé akè (mîngi),
    asâra dé (mîngi), dé alîngbi pepe - the last expression and the others
    with mîngi are very emphatic expressions : it is very cold
    3. to become cold : gâ dé V, mú dé V, wara dé V

collect V : bôngbi V - see also to gather, to assemble

colobus monkey N : ngui N - see also monkey

color N : 1. couleur** N
    2. the color system is as follows :
    red, orange, deep yellow, reddish brown are bingbâ An - the same term
    followed by kétê is a less intense shade of red, orange, or yellow,
    e.g. pink - reduplicated, it is bright red - black, dark gray, dark
    green, dark blue, purple, dark brown are vokó An - the same term
    followed by kétê is gray or grayish shades of other colors - reduplicated,
    it is pitch black - white, light gray, light yellow, and other pastel
    tints are vurû An - followed by kétê, the same term means light gray,
    and other pastel tints - reduplicated, it means bright white - more
    sophisticated speakers use French terms also

comb V : soa V

comb N : soa li N

come V : gâ V (come here : mô gâ na nàdo só) - see also arrive, enter,
    bring, accompany, follow, approach

come into view V : si gigi V - see appear

come out V : si gigi V - see emerge

comfort V : wa (bè tí) V - see also warn, advise
comforted, be V: bé ... gá nzoni V (I comforted him, so that he was comforted: mbi wa bé tí lo, sí bé tí lo agá nzoni)

command V: commander** V - means also to rule, to supervise

commence V: commencer** V - see begin

commercial center N: galá N - see also market

commit oneself to V: zia bé na - see trust, believe, covet, set one's heart on

community N: any organized and settled human community: kótôrô N - hence, this means homestead, village, home, town, city, tribal community, nation - see also land, wilderness, field

companion N: 1. bosom friend: camarade** N, ndeko N
   2. compatriot: mbá N
   3. co-worker: fô N
   4. friend: ndeko N
   5. person having the same name as oneself: ndoé N
   6. lover, mistress: ndeko N

compassion N: mawa N - also means pity, misery

compatriot N: mbá N - see companion

compel V: forcer** V - see also impel, propel, force, persuade

complain V: 1. to groan, to moan: bima V
   2. to cry out: toto V
   3. to protest, to object: dé kité V - this last implies a more rational approach

complete Adj: kôé An - see all, entire

completed, be V: we V - see finished

compose V: (differences): leke téné V, gá sôngó V, sâra sôngó V, sâra bé sôko V - see also reconcile, agree, have fellowship

comrade N: camarade** N, ndeko N - see companion

conceal V: hónde V - see hide
conceit N: baba N - see 
vanity

conceive V: become pregnant: mé ngo V - ngo is a foetus

concerning Prep: na lége tí CP - see also by means of, through

conclude V: on the basis of observation and reflexion: bâa ... tânc V
  (I concluded that he had come: mbi bâa mbi tânc lo gâ awe)

concord N: siriri N - see 

condemn V: 1. kô V - means also refuse, reject
  2. fa ngbanga V - means also judge

conference N: conférence** N

confident, be: hînga ... tânc V (I was confident that he was there: mbi hînga mbi tânc lo ekë kâ) - see be sure

connect V: tingbi V - see 

conquer V: gagner** V - see defeat, wage war

conqueror N: lombé N - see hero

consequence N: fûta N - see recompense, retribution, wages

conserve V: bata V - means to keep, to protect

consider V: 1. penser** V, hâ V, b’anda V, gi bé V, bâa V - see also to think, to ponder, to see
  2. hînga ... tânc V, bâa ... tongana V - see also be confident

console V: wa bé V - see comfort, warn

constitute V: sâra V - see make

consult V: 1. to ask: hûnda V
  2. (worshipfully): dîko V - see also read, count, pray, worship

container N: 1. small and deep: kopo N
  2. broad and shallow, a basin or platter: kolôngo N
  3. dish: sémbe N
  4. frying pan: gbarâ (bûba) N
  5. pot, pan: ta N
6. basket : sakpá N
7. see also box, crate, chest

contemplate V : báa V - see see

contend V : 1. verbally : papa V - see quarrel
   2. physically : tiri V - see fight

contest N : gbíma ndoko N - esp. a foot race

continue V : 1. continuer** V (continue your work : mo continuer koa tí mo) (continue to work : mo continuer tí sára koa)
   2. ngbá V - means also to remain

control N : 1. ngangó An - see strength, power
   2. ti N - see hand, authority

control V : exercise self-control : gbó téré V - see seize, body

converse V : sára isoró V, sára téné V, causer** V - see also to talk, to chat

cook V : 1. boil : tô V
   2. fry : yóro V
   3. roast : zó V - see burn

copulate V : 1. of human beings : gbá V - either sex may be the subject, the other then being the object
   2. of animals : uru na ndó V, monter** (na ndó) V - only the male may be the subject, while the female is the object

cord N : káamba N - also means rope, string, vine, snare

cordiality N : ngiá N, bé ôko N - see also fellowship

corpse N : human dead body : kóá N

correctly Adv : mbirimbíri An - also means straight, right

corrosion N : sóko N - see rust

corrugated metal N : tôle** N - see roofing

cost N : ngéré N - means also value, price
costly-crooked

costly Adj : cher** An - see expensive
cotton N : coton** N, tende N
cough V : tiko V
counsel V : wa V - means also to warn, to comfort
count V : diko V - see also read, consult, pray, worship
country N : 1. nation : kôtôrô N - see community
    2. land : sése N - see earth
    3. not a settled community : ngonda N - see wilderness
courthouse N : da tí ngbangana N - see judgment
cover V : (as a pot) : kânga V - see shut, tie
covet V : 1. zia bê V - means also to believe, to trust, to set one's heart on
    2. crave, desire : eks na nzala V
cow N : wâle (tí) bâgara N - bâgara means cattle, beef, bull, calf, ox, steer, etc. - see female
co-wife N : sambá N - see also wife
co-worker N : fô N - see companion
crave V : eks na nzala V - see desire, covet
craving N : nzala N - see desire
crawl V : hâra V
crazy Adj : bûbá An - means foolish, senseless
crazy, be V : be demented : li ... tourner** V
create V : sára V - see make
creep V : hâra V - also means to crawl
creeper N : a vine : kâmba N - also means a cord, a snare
crocodile N : ngundé N
crooked Adj : kirikiri An - this suggests something twisted, with several
bends - see also be crooked
crooked, be V : ba V - also means to be bent, usually with a single major curvature
crop N : food crop : kôbe N
cross V : (as a river, etc.) : fâa {cross the river : fâa ngú} {cross the road : fâa lége} - also means to cut, to kill, to break
cross-bow N : mbanu N - see also bow
cross-roads N : croisement** N, sângbi lége N
crush V : *. (as with roller) : nz V, nska V - nz means to bear down, to be heavy, to chew
  2. to pound : pêtè V
crushed, be V : ri V - this is the state resulting from nz to crush
curse V : zonga V
curse N : zonga N
cunning N : ndarâa N, manière** N - see skill
cure V : kâi ... kobéla V - see heal
cushion N : kôli N
custom N : lége N - see manner
cut V : 1. fâa V {cut the grass : fâa péré} {cut up the onions : fâa yá tî oignon} {cut the rope : fâa kâmba} - also means to kill, to break
  2. split : sûru V
  3. chop : dé V
  4. butcher : doroko V
daily Adv : lá kôe N - means also always - reduplicated, it means forever
dam N : (built to catch fish) : ngbingbi N - see fish V
dance N : 1. general term : dôdô N
   2. particular African dances : lengé N, ganzá N, sumári N
   3. European dances : coller** N, malínga N, nylon** N
dance V : dô (dôdô) V - the name of any dance can be used as the object - see also kick
dark Adj : vokô An - also means black, dirty
darkness N : time of darkness (not an abstract term) : bîngo N
date N : lá N, date** N - dates are expressed in French : names of days of the week, months of the year, and numbers - see also day, sun
day N : 1. in all senses : lá N - also means sun - see also today, tomorrow, yesterday, always, date
   2. in counting days : lángô N {I stayed three days : mbi duâ lángô otâ} - also means sleep
daylight N : lá N - also means sun, day
daytime N : lá N - also means sun, day
deafness N : mbongî N
def deaf person N : wa mbongî N
death N : 1. in general : kôâ N {death took him : kôâ amû lo} (I am not afraid of death : mbi toî kôâ amû mbi pepe) - also means a dead human body
   2. an instance or act of death : kûi N {he paid damages for her death :
lo payer kúi tí lo} (there were ten deaths : kúi aksa bale 5k5) -
also means a dead animal body

debt N : 1. social obligation, esp. in traditional terms : kódá N
2. commercial debt : bon** N - see borrow, lean, buy on credit, incur debt
decide V : penser**, choisir**, têns V - see think, choose, say
declare V : têns V - see say
decompose V : foutu**, V - see rot
decorate V : lëks pendere V, sâra nzoni V
decrease V : diminuer**, V
decree N : ndiâ N - see law
decree V : lû ndiâ V - see legislate
depend, be V : linda V - means also go down
defeat V : 1. gagner**, V, hó V - see pass, win, conquer
2. overwhelm : kara V, hó ndô tí V - see overcome
defecate V : 1. literal : sâra purû V
2. euphemism : goe (na) ngonda V - also means to urinate
defiled Adj : as a result of death : ngôngóâ N - applies to the place where death occurs
delay N : hold back : hinga V
delight N : ngiâ N - see joy - also means cordiality, fellowship
demand V : 1. ask : hûnda V
2. call for : éré V
demented, be V : li ..., tourner**, V (he is demented : li tí lo atourner) -
see also crazy, foolish
demolish V : 1. (a house) : lungûla ..., na sêse V
2. (something else, e.g. furniture) : kângbi yâ nî V, kângbi pópô nî V
demonstrate V : fa V - means to show, to teach, to reveal
demur-dignitary

demur V : dé kité V - means to object, to doubt

deny V : (an accusation) : béle (téné) V

depart V : 1. lóndó V - means also to rise
   2. goe V - means also to go
   3. zía V - means also to leave, to abandon
   4. quitter** V - means also to leave

depend V : dépendre** V {that depends on you : sô adépendre mo}
descend V : 1. linda V - means also to go down, to be deep
   2. descendre** V

desire N : nzala N - means any kind of desire : appetite, lust, craving,
hunger, thirst, urge

desire V : yi V - see want, like, love

desist V : zía V - see cease, leave

desk N : bureau** N

destroy V : buba V, foutu** V - mean to spoil, to ruin

develop V : 1. to grow : kono V, mäi V - see be big
   2. (photographs) : sukula (photo**) V - means also to wash

devel N : zâbolo N

devious Adj : kirikiri An - means crooked, evil

die V : kúi V

die N : (for gambling) : pâtará N - see ramble

different Adj : ndé An - reduplicated, it means various - see also other
difficulty N : ngangô An - see hard, strong

dig V : 1. shallowly, with hands : ása V
   2. more deeply, with tool : zí V - the end purpose is usually to insert
   something into the hole
   3. to pierce, to bore : kóro V

dignitary N : kótá zo N - means also elder, important person
diminish V: diminuer** V - see also decrease
dip V: (liquid): tô V - see also carry in container
dipper N: made of a half-gourd, and used for dipping and drinking water: kangú N
dirt N: saleté** An
dirty Adj: saleté** An, vokó An
disappointment N: vundú N - invariably colored by resentment and a desire for retaliation, since it is felt to be caused by personal ill-will or a personal insult or injury - when the injury is very great, as in death, sorrow is mixed with the resentment
discard V: bi ... na ngonda V - means to throw away
discern V: (another's thoughts and motives): hinga bé tí V - see to know, to be acquainted intimately
discharge V: (from a job): tomba (na kusára) (he discharged two men from work: lo tomba ázo óse na kusára) - see chase
discourage V: be V - see also annoy, bother
discover V: wara V - means to find, to get, to obtain
disembark V: ko V - means also to embark, to alight
disfigured, be V: mbóko V - means also to be bruised, to be ulcerated, to be bald
dish N: sembé N
disorder N: kíríkiri An - means also crooked, evil
disorderly Adv: kíríkiri An, modifying a verb - also means perversely
dispatch V: to V, toka V - see to send
disposition N: temperament: bé N - means liver, personality, character
dispute V: papa V - see querrel V
dispute N: papa N, téné N - see also palaver, matter, affair
ditch N : caniveau** N

divide V : kángbi V – see also cut

divination N : mbadi N – to practise divination is báa mbadi V, sára
    mbadi V – see also fortune telling

divorce V : 1. on husband’s initiative : kë wále V, zia wále V, tomba wále V
    – see also reject, leave, chase
    2. on wife’s initiative : kë kóli V, zia kóli V, kpé kóli V – see also run

do V : sára – means to act, to behave, to make

do again V : kiri V, followed by another verb (I said it again : mbi kiri
    mbi tés) – see also again

doctor N : (medical) : docteur** N

document N : mbéti N, papier** N – see also paper

dog N : mbo N

done, be : we V – see finished

donkey N : lélé N

door N : yángá (tì da) N – means also mouth, opening, language

doubt N : kité N – means also objection, expostulation – used esp. in dé
    kité to doubt, to object

doubt V : dé kité V – means also to object

doubtless Adv : manquer** pêpe V – means : it cannot fail

dough N : made of manioc or mil flour, the staple food : kôbe N

down Adv : na gbé ní CP – also means under

drag V : gbôto V, kôso V – see also pull

drain V : (to separate solid from liquid) : passer** V – also means to
    strain, to sift, to pass

draw V : (liquid) : tó V – see carry in container
dream N : sámá N, mosámá N - dreams are one of the principal means by which shades of the ancestors communicate with the living
dream V : báa li V, báa sámá V
dried Adj : kúrú N {dried fish : kúrú tì susu} {dried meat : kúrú tì ỹama} {dry land : kúrú sése} - see dry
drink V : ỹ V - means also to suck, to smoke (tobacco)
drive V : (an automobile, an airplane, etc.) : conduire** V
driver N : (of a truck, etc.) : chauffeur** N
drop V : zía ... tì V - this means to permit to fall
drum N : ngo N
dry V : cè V - see also dried
dry season N : burú N, vurú ndo N
duiker N : (and possibly certain other small antelopes of the genus Cephalophus) : woga N
dumbness N : bûburú N
dumb person N : wa bûburú N
dump V : túku V - see tip, spill, pour
during Prep : tongana C - means when
duty N : téné N, ngbanga N - see also matter, affair, business
dust N : pupu sése N
dwell V : lângo V - also means to sleep, to remain - see also to establish residence
dysentery, have V : sâra purú na mënê V
each, each and every one Adj: 5ko 5ko An - see one

each other P: tère N, used after a verb (they like each other: álá yí tère) - also means one another, selves

ear N: mó N

earhole N: dó tí mé N

earn V: 1. wara V - means also to get, to receive
   2. te (nginza) V - means to eat

earth N: sése N - also means soil, land, globe

easy Adj: ngangó pepe An - means not hard, weak

eat V: te V - means also to bite with the incisors - te kóbe V means to eat a full meal - see dough, food

door N: yángá N - used esp. with na C - means also mouth, door, language

egg N: pârâ N - a chicken egg is pârâ kóndo N

eight Adj: miombe An

eland N: specifically, Derby's: báságbó N

elbow N: coude** N - see arm

elder N: kótá zo N - means an older person, a dignitary

elephant N: dole N

embark V: ko V - also means to alight, to disembark

embers N: píndiri N

embroil V: ngbúru V, followed by an object denoting a person

emerge V: sí gigí V - also means to appear, to come out

emotions N: see disposition, personality

employment N: koa N, kusára N - also means work
enclosure N: 1. an area, usually inside a village: bála N
   2. the fence or hedge surrounding the enclosure: gbágbá N

encounter V: 1. meet: té V
   2. socially: báa V, báa lé tí V, báa téré V - mean to see

encourage V: wa (bé tí) V - means also to comfort, to warn, to counsel

end N: ndá N - means also hips, lower back, buttocks, meaning

enemy N: wato N

enormous Adj: kótá kótá - see big

enough, be V: língbi V - see to suffice, to equal, to be able

enter V: li V, linda V - linda means also to go down

entice V: hânda V - means also to tempt, to bluff

entire Adj: kôé - means all, whole

entirely Adv: kôé An - means wholly, altogether

enumerate V: diko V - see count, read, consult, pray

envy V: zía bé V - see also to covet, set one's heart on, believe

equal, be V: língbi V - means also to suffice, to be able

erase V: mbo V - means to wipe

erect V: to build: sára (da) V - see make, do

err V: dô géré V - means to stub one's toe, to stumble

escape V: kpé V - means to run

especially Adv: ahô kôé - means it passes all

establish V: sára V - see build, make, do

European person N: mbunzú N

ever, even if C: même** C, quand même** C - quand même** means also although, nevertheless

evening N: 1. sunset: lâ kûi N
   2. after sunset: bi N - means night
ever-expensive

ever Adv: là ško N, mbénï là N - see one day
every Adj: kóè An - means also all, whole
everybody, everyone P: zo kóè N
every day Adv: ló kóè N - means also always - reduplicated, it means every single day, forever
everything P: kóè An, kóè N
every which way Adv: kiríkirí An - means crooked, disorderly, evil
evil Adj: 1. sioní An - means bad
2. crooked, perverse, devious: kiríkirí An
examine V: (visually): báa V - means to see
exceed V: 1. h pó adô V - means to surpass, to overcome
2. língbi pepe V - means either to exceed or to be insufficient, since língbi means to be equal, to suffice exactly
excell V: h pó V - means to pass, to surpass, to win
exchange V: changer** V - means also to change
excrement N: purú N - see also defecate
excess V: pardonner** V - also means to forgive
excess N: pardon** N - also means an apology, an ingratiating plea
exhale V: 1. há mbóo V - this means to breathe, to blow with mouth
2. audibly: gio bé V - means to sigh, to gasp, esp. in dying
exhaust V: (a supply of something): hún̄zi V - means to finish, to cause to disappear
exhausted, be V: hún̄zi, V, we V - see finished
exist V: du V - see to be
expect V: ká V - means to wait, to hope
expensive Adj: cher** An - means also costly
expensive, be: ngéré ... ske ngangô V - this means the price is hard, i.e. high
experience V : báa V, jutí na V - sees to see, to sit

expire V : gio bé V - means to exhale audibly, to sigh, to gasp, as in dying

explain V : 1. fa V - means to show, to teach, to demonstrate
    2. more fully : fa ndá tí V - means to explain the meaning

expostulate V : dé kité V - means to object, to doubt

expostulation N : kité N - means also doubt, objection

extinguish V : mingo V

eye N : lé N - also means face, surface, presence

eye brow N : ngeki lé N

eye lash N : kóá lé N
- F -

fabric N : bongó N - also means clothing

fabricate V : sâra V - also means do, act, behave, make, affect

face N : lé N - also mean eye

face to face Adv : lé na lé N

fail V : manquer** V - with the negative marker pepe, it means doubtless

fall V : tî V

fame N : hûngô N - from hû V to spread

familiar, be V : hînga kôé V - also means to understand

family N : famille** N - see also sibling, brother, sister, father, mother, aunt, uncle, grandfather, grandmother, child, son, daughter, ancestor, husband, wife, father-in-law, brother-in-law, son-in-law, daughter-in-law, grandchild - the plural is used in a collective sense to mean the members of the family

famous, be or become V : 1. vû V (their names were not famous : éré tî âla avû pêpe) - possibly related to vûrû be white
  2. hû V - means also to spread

fan palm N : 1. korôngo N
  2. a false bamboo : bambou** N

far Adj, Adv : yongôro An - also means long, tall

far, be V : yô V - also means to be long

fascinate V : hânda V - means to entice, to lure, to tempt, to tease

fast Adv : fadé Av, hîc Av - see also soon

fasten V : 1. tîngbi V - means to join, to unite
  2. kânga V - means to tie, to close
fat N : mafuta N - means oil, grease

fat Adj : mafuta N

father N : biological, social, or honorific : babá N - also means father's brothers, and members of father's clan - see family, uncle

father-in-law N : kógará N - this refers to all male in-laws, and is used reciprocally

fear N : mbito N - this means apprehension, fright, dread, terror - used with verbs meaning to affect and to seize, depending on the strength of the feeling

fear V : kpé mbito V - see also to run

feather N : kóá t'ndáke N - kóá is hair

featherbedding N : mbáná N - means laziness, malingering, willful idleness

feeder stream N : mérángé t'ngú N - lit. child of river

feel, feel that V : báa V - means to see

feel about V : (as blind person) : tatara ndo V - means to grope

fellowship N : 1. cordiality : ngiá N - means also amiability, fun, joy, amusement

2. bé óko N - means unity of feeling - see also peace

fellowship, have V : sára bé óko V - see also reconcile

female N : wále N - means also woman, wife

fence N : gbágbá N - means also hedge, enclosure

ferment V : kpí V - also means to sour, to be sour

ferry N : bac** N

festival N : matánga N - see also holiday, celebration

fetish N : 1. general term : yoró N - means also medicine, talisman, charm, poison

2. a particular fetish : ngaánga N

fever N : kobéla t'wá N - see sickness, heat
fever (cont.)-firm

fever, get or have V : téré ... mú wá V (he has a fever : téré tí lo amú wá)

fib N : vëns N, wátakâ N - see lie

field N : yákâ N - also means garden, plantation, plot, any cultivated area

2. prescribed size for cotton field, in the days of compulsory cultivation : piquet** N

fight V : 1. physically : tiri V - also means to wrestle, to strive, to contend, to struggle

2. verbal : papa V - means to quarrel, to dispute

3. war, battle : pîka berâ V

4. attack : goe berâ na li tí V, tí na ndô V, attaquer** V

fight N : tiri N - more properly fighting, a noun of action

fill V : si V - also means to be full

find V : wara V - means also to get, to obtain, to receive

finger N : kété mabôko N - see hand

fingernail N : nzené N, nzené ti mabôko N - also means claw

finish V : 1. bring to completion : sâra si awe V

2. exhaust a supply : hûnzi V - means also to cause to disappear

finished, be V : 1. to be completed : we V (my speech is finished : téné tí mbi awe)

action antecedent to the context and denoted by a preceding verb

2. to be exhausted : hûnzi V - means also to cause to disappear

fire N : wá N - also means heat, hot

fire V : discharge : tomba na kusâra V

fire engine N : ville de Bangui** N

fireman N : da gbi N - see house, burn

firewood N : kêké ti wá N

firm, be or become V : gbô V, coller** V - also mean to harden, to set, to jell, to coagulate
first Adj, Adv : kózo (ní) An

fish N : 
1. all kinds : susu N
2. Nile perch : capitaine** N
3. small fish used in making sauces : gugúrú N
4. fresh fish : finí susu N
5. dried fish : kúrú tí susu N

fish V : gí susu V - see hunt

fishhook N : yángó N

fist N : ngobo N, coup-de-poing** N

fit V : lííngbi na V - also means to suffice, to be equal, to be able

five Adj : ukú An

five francs N : pâta N

fix V : lèkè V - a very general verb meaning to prepare, to repair, arrange, to organize, to establish

flank N : téré N - also means body

flat Adj : applied to dishes and land : kpángbálá An

flee V : 
1. run : kpé V
2. flee for fear : kpé mbito V

flesh N : in opp. to bone or blood : mi N, mi téré N

fling V : throw : bi V

flood N : móa N

flour N : fúku N - applies specifically to edible flour or meal of manioc or mil, but also means powder in general

flow V : as a river : sóa V
2. as blood in the veins : gara V
3. leak : yuru V

flower N : ndókó N - see also bloom

flunky N : 
1. domestic : kété bói N, marmiton** N
flunky (cont.)-foot race

2. truck driver's apprentice: apprenti** N, bata kôngbá N

fly N: voma N

fly V: uru V - also means to jump, to hop

foam N: fúlu N - also means froth

foetus N: ngo N - see also conceive, abort

fog N: mbinda N - also means cloud

fold V: 1. as clothes: ngombi V

2. bend, break, as a stick: kôngbi (yá ní) V

follow V: 1. emphasizing the person being followed as goal: gá na pékó V (he followed me: lo gá na pékó tí mbi) - see come

2. emphasizing a close personal relationship between follower and followed - mú pékó V (he followed Jesus, he became a disciple of Jesus: lo mú pékó tí Jesus) - see take

3. emphasizing the point of departure, or the relative detachment of the speaker: goe na pékó V - see go

food N: 1. general: kôbe N

2. the staple dough or mush of mil or manioc flour: kôbe N

3. prepared dishes: kôbe N

4. the sauce which accompanies the dough: kása N

5. various kinds of snacks sold ready to eat: makala N, mangbéré N, ćacǎ N, etc.

foolish Adj: bûbá An - also means crazy

foolishness N: mbânà N - also means laziness, featherbedding, idleness, malingering

foot N: 1. general: géré N - also means leg, paw, wheel, tire

2. sole of foot: sédá tí géré N - also means footprint

3. of tree or plant: gondá N

footprint N: sédá tí géré N - also means sole of foot

foot race N: gbîma ndôko N
for Prep : 1. general : na C - means and, but, with, by, in, at, to, from
   2. followed by an expression of goal or purpose : ngbangatí C, tenetí C
force N : strength : ngangó An - also means hard, violent, strong
force V : forcer** V - see also compel, persuade, impel
forehead N : ndó lé N
foreskin N : pitó N - see also penis
forest N : 1. tree(s) : kéké N - also means wood, stick, pole
   2. gallery forest : gbakó N
forever Adv : always, daily : lá kóé N - usually reduplicated to mean forever
forget V : girísa V - means to lose, also to be lost, to be forgotten
forgive V : pardonner** V - also means to excuse, to pardon
forgotten, be V : girísa V - also means to be lost, to lose, to forget
formerly Adv : 1. recent past : ândo Av, used post-verbally
   2. remote past : giriri Av, used post-verbally or pre-clausally
   3. first : kózo (ni) An
fornicate V : sára pitáq V - also means to commit adultery
fornication N : pitáq N - also means adultery
for quite a while Adv : 1. past time orientation : depuis** Av {I have been doing it for quite a while : mbi sára depuis}
   2. neutral or future time orientation : ngbii Av, jusqu'à** Av {cook it for quite a while : mo tó ngbii}
foundation N : (of a house) 1. general : géré tí da N - see foot
   2. koto N - a traditional form made of beaten earth and about a foot high, formerly prevalent among some peoples, e.g. the Kãṟg̱
four Adj : osi6 An
frame N : (of roof) : gángará N - see roof
franc N : franc** N - in counting francs, French numerals are usually used -
see also five francs

free Adj : sengé An - see without

friend N : ndeko N - see companion

fright N : mbito N - see fear

fritter N : made of European flour, fried in deep fat, and sold with a
filling of either hot pepper or sugar : makala N - see snack

frock N : boubou** N - means a long, full-bodied shirt such as is worn by
many Muslims

frog N : kôngba N, bianga N

from Prep : na C - also means and, but, to, for, at, in, with, by
from it Adv : used only post-verbally : da Av - also means to it, in it, there

front N : devant** N - usually used in na devant (tí/ní) CP in front

froth N : fúlu N - esp. froth coming from the mouth - also means foam

fruit N : (of plants) : lé N, lé ti kéké N, léngô N - léngô means harvest,
yield - lé means seed

fry V : yôro V - see also cook

frying pan N : gbara N, gbara búba N

full, be V : si V - also means to fill

fun N : ngiá N - also means play, fellowship, cordiality, joy

fur N : kóá N - means hair

futilely Adv : gbâ Av - means in vain

fuzz N : (as on caterpillar) : 1. kíí N - means also thorn, bristle
2. kóá N - means also hair
gad about V : fonsa V
gain V : 1. win : gagner** V
   2. earn : wara V, tê (nginza) V - see also receive, eat
gallery forest N : gbakó N - these forest strips along rivers provide the
   only large trees in the savanna region
gamble V : (with dice) : pîka pâtârâ V
gap N : dú N - means a hole
garden N : yáká N - means a field, a plantation, a plot, an orchard
garlic N : ail** N
garment N : bongó N - also means cloth
gasp V : gîcî bé V - also means to exhale audibly, to sigh, as in expiring
gather V : 1. general : bôngbi V - means to assemble, to meet
   2. gather together for common purpose : bôngbi li të V, bôngbi têrê V
   3. pick up scattered items : lo V
gathering N : bôngbi N - means an assembly, meeting
gentleman N : monsieur** N - also means Mr., sir
gently Adv : 1. softly, quietly : doucement** Av - can be reduplicated
   2. slowly, gradually : yeke yeke Av
genuine Adj : taá An - means true
germinate V : kó V
get V : 1. to take : mú V, kamâta V
   2. to find, to obtain, to receive : wara V
get up V : arise : lôndô V
gift N : cadeau** N, matabisi N - also means a tip, a bribe
giraffe—good-by, good luck

giraffe N : kôlo N
girl N : 1. mërangé (ti) wâle N — see also woman, child, daughter
  2. unmarried : see unmarried girl
give V : 1. general : mú V — means also to receive, to take
  2. (food) : fû (kôbe) V — means to break a mouthful from the mass of
dough and shape it with the fingers before putting it into the mouth —
parents do this for their small children, hence the meaning of to give
give birth V : bear, beget : dú V — means also to be born
give heed V : 1. mû V — means to hear
  2. pay attention, listen : gengî mú V

gladness N : ngiâ — means also joy, fun, fellowship, cordiality
glass N : (a pane or sheet) : tatara N — means also mirror
gnash teeth V : te pëmbë V — see to bite, tooth
go V : 1. to walk : tambéla V — used also of machinery operating
  2. goe V — means also to leave
go across V : (a river, etc.) : fâa V — means to cut, to kill, to break,
to cross
go around V : ngôro V — means to surround, to circle
goat N : ngâsa N
go back V : kiri V — means to return
God N : Nzapâ N — originally probably a traditional sky-god
go down V : linda V — means also to be deep
good Adj : 1. nzoni An — a very general term meaning also nice
  2. better : nzoni ah’ô
  3. best : nzoni ah’ô kôé
good-by, good luck I : 1. from person remaining to person going : goe nzoni
  2. from person going to person remaining : dutî nzoni
  3. see greeting
goods N: possessions, merchandise: kóngbá N - also means load, burden, bundle

go on V: hóry V - also means to pass
gospel N: téné nzoní N - a Protestant neologism
go up V: monter** - see climb
gourd N: 1. made into bottle: ngângá N
  2. made into dipper: kangû N
govern N: commander**: V - also means to command, to order, to rule, to supervise
government N: gouvernement**: N - see also administration

grab V: gbô V - see also seize

gradually Adv: slowly, gently: yeke yeke Av

granary N: gogoro N

grandchild N: âta N - also means grandmother

grandfather N: kaká N - also means male ancestor

grandmother N: âta N, tarâ N - the terms are also used to mark respect in addressing an older woman - âta also means grandchild

grant V: agree: yi V, yi da V, yi pêkô V - also mean want, accept
  2. give: mú V - also means take

grasp V: 1. seize: gbô V
  2. understand: hînga ndá V

grass N: 1. generic term: péré N
  2. roofing grass: bebé N
  3. reed: sosongo N
  4. coarse, tough grass used to make baskets: nzanza N

gratuity N: cadeau**: N, matabísi N - mean gift, tip, bribe

gray Adj: 1. dark: vokô kété An - see black, color
  2. light: vurû kété An - see white, color
grease-gulp

grease N : mafuta N - also means oil, fat
great Adj : big, important : kótá An
green Adj : vokó kété An, vert** An - see color
greens N : various wild or cultivated edible leaves : gbutu N, gúsá N,
dawai N, koko N, ngunzá N, ngágo N
greet V : bara V
greeting N : 1. upon first meeting : bara o, (mbi) bara mo (nzoni)
   2. after first greeting : mo eké (séngé) ?
   3. upon parting, the person remaining to the person going : (mo)
goe nzoni (o)
   4. upon parting, the person going to the person remaining : (mo)
duti nzoni (o)
grieve V : so bë V {this thing grieves me : yí só aso bë tî mbi} - see hurt, sorrow

grip V : seize : gbô V
groan V : complain, moan : bima V
grope V : (as a blind person) : tatara ndo V
ground N : sése N - also means earth, soil, land
grow V : 1. develop : mâj V - refers to maturation : to mature
   2. to grow up, be big : kono V - refers esp. to physical growth in size

growth N : kónôngô N - see also size
gruel N : thin mush : potopóto N - also means mud
guard V : bata V - means to keep, to protect
guile N : malin** N, manièr** N - also mean skill, ability
guinea fowl N : kombá N
guitar N : traditional : kunde N
gulp V : mëne V - means to swallow whole
gun N : ngombe N

gunpowder N : mbûlû N - see also powder
hair N: 1. general term: kóá N - also means fur, fuzz, bristle, feather
2. of head: kóá (tí) li N
3. eye lash: kóá lé N
4. beard: kóá ngbagba N
5. moustache: kóá yángá N
6. body hair: kóá ti téré

half, halfway point N: moitié** N

half-heartedly, act V: sára na mabóko óse V

hand N: 1. mabóko N, ti N - also means arm, handle, wrist - ti is used to refer to the grasping or holding action of the hand, hence to authority or power
2. right: gati N, mabóko ti kóli N
3. left: koti N, mabóko ti wále N

handsome Adj: pendere An - means also beautiful, young

hang V: (to execute); tó gó lo na kámba V

happen V: 1. arrive: sì V
2. pass: passer** V

happiness N: ngiá N - also means joy, fun, fellowship, cordiality

happy, be or become V: wara ngiá V

hard Adj: 1. ngangó An - also means strong
2. kpingbángó N - see harden

harden V: 1. kpingba V - can also mean to mature
2. set, jell, thicken; gbó V, coller** V

hardness N: ngangó An - also means strength

hare N: ndarangba N - also means rabbit
harm V : so V - see hurt
harmonize V : sâra sôngô V, sâra bê 5ko V - see also reconcile, compose
harmony N : (interpersonal) : siriri N - see peace
hartebeest N : kângâ N - also applies to the sassaby and related antelopes of the genera Alcephalus and Damaliscus
harvest N : lângô (tí yákâ) N - see also fruit, yield
hat N : kpoto N, chapeau** N
hatchet N : dô N - means an ax - see also tool
have V : possess : ekê na V (one has a hat : lo ekê na kpoto)
have a good appetite V : wara yângâ tí te kôbe V, yângâ ... nzere tí te kôbe V - both can be used in the negative
have fellowship V : sâra ngiâ V - means to chat, to play, to have fun
he P : lo P - also means she, him, her, his, hers - see I for the pronominal system
head N : li N - also means top
headkerchief N : siliki N
hear V : mâ V - means also to listen, to pay attention, to understand
heart N : 1. anatomical : coeur** N
2. seat of personality : bê N - means the liver
heat N : wâ N - also means fire
heat V : chauffer** V
heaven N : yâyû N - see also sky, air
heaviness N : néngô N - also means weight, thickness
heavy, be V : ne V - means also to bear down, to crush, to chew
hedge N : gbâgbâ N - means also a fence, an enclosure
help V : aider** V - also means to aid, to assist
hemp-holiday

hemp N : *marijuana*, mbange N

hen N : (wále) kóngó N - see chicken

her, hers P : see he

der Adv : ge Av, na ndo só CP

hero N : lombé N - means a *valiant* man, a conqueror

hide V : hónde V

high Adj : long : yongóro An

highway N : lége N - means a path, a road, a way

hill N : hótó N - means also mountain

him P : see he

hinder V : 1. kángó V - also means to obstruct, to tie, to fasten
    2. prevent : gbánzi V

hippopotamus N : konó N

hip N : ngbundá N, ndá N - means also lower back, buttocks

his P : see he

hit V : píka V - means to strike, to pound, to beat

hoe N : traditional agricultural tool ; kpóko N, ngáfó N - made by the blacksmith of iron - see tool

ehoe-handle N : kóngó N - also means mallet for pounding manioc

hog N : cochon** N - see pig

hold V : *grip*, seize : gbó V

hold back V : refrain, stop short, delay : nìnga V

hole N : dú N

holiday N : 1. legal or religious ; fête** N
    2. celebration, festival : matánga N
    3. vacation : vacances** N, congé** N
home N : 1. house : da N
2. homestead, settlement : kótsró N - see community
homestead N : kótsró N - see community
honey N : ngú lavú N, mafuta tí wótoro N - the latter can also be beeswax - see bee
honor V : 1. gonda V - means to praise a person
2. sepála V - means to praise God
hope V : kút V - means also to wait
horn N : (of animal) ; dede N, nzá N - also used of musical horn
horse N : mbarata N
hospital N : hôpital** N
hot, be or become V : 1. general : gá wá V, mú wá V, wara wá V
2. of weather : sára wá V, ndo aské wá V
hour N : heure** N - see time
house N : da N - means any kind of building
how Adv : tongana y§ CP
how many, how much Adj : 5ke An
huge Adj : kótá mingi An - see big, important
human being N : zo N - see person
hundred N : ngbangbu N
hunger N : nzala N - means any kind of desire, appetite, urge, thirst
hungry, be : 1. nzala ... sára V
2. stronger : kúi nzala V - means to starve, to die of hunger
hunt V : 1. general : gi V - means to seek, to search, to hunt for, to investigate
2. (game) : gi yama V
3. fish : gi susu V
hurl-hyena

hurl V : bi V - means to **throw**
hurry V : zía lóró da V - see **speed**
hurt V : só V {my head hurts ; li ti mbi aso} {this sore hurts me ; ká só aso mbi} - also means to **ache**, to **pain**, to **harm**
husband N ; kóli N - usually with a specifying complement - also means **man**, **male**
hush V : 1, kái V
   2. to be **quiet** : dutí kpó V
hush I : su I - means **stop** what you are about to do - addressed to a child
husk N : (of grain) ; kakô N - also means pod, or any part of grain that is discarded, **chaff**
hyena N : b'ongó N
I P : mbi P - mbi P - means also me, my, mine - the pronominal system is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>mbi</td>
<td>í (Protestant missions áni)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>mo</td>
<td>ála (Catholic missions *é)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>lo</td>
<td>ála (missions i)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

idle, be V : dutí V, dutí sengé V - see sit, without

idleness N : 1. laziness : goigói N
2. willful idleness, malingering : ñbá N

if C : 1. tongana C - also means when, like
2. ádu ni, ádu titane - used pre-clausally in conditions contrary to fact

ignite V : 1. (fire, things) : gbí V - see burn
2. set fire : zó V - also means to burn, to roast

illness N : kobéla N, malade** N - see also ailment

illustration N : photo** N - means primarily a photograph, a picture

immediately Adv : 1. fafaños Áv - used pre-clausally or post-verbally - this is fadé · now reduplicated
2. fadé Áv - used pre-clausally only, as an emphatic future marker - this is fadé the future marker reduplicated
3. see also soon

impel V : pousser** V - means also to push, to propel, to compel, to incite

important Adj : kótá An - means also big, superior

imprison V : kánge V - also means to tie, to shut, to fasten

impure Adj : see defiled

in Prep : 1. general : na C - means also and, but, to, for, at, from, with, by
2. inside: na yá CP

in addition to Prep: na ndó ti/ni CP, na li ti/ni CP - also mean over, above

inadequate, be V: lingbi pepe V - lingbi means to suffice, to be equal, to be able

in back of Prep: na pekó (ti/ni) CP - also behind, after

incense N: yambo N - also means perfume

incisor N: kété pémbé N - see also tooth

incite V: 1. general: pousser** V - means to push, to impel, to propel
   2. (an animal, e.g. a dog): darâ V

increase N: (in agriculture): léngô N - see harvest, yield, fruit

incur debt V: sâra bon** V - also means buy on credit, borrow

indiscriminately Adv: kîrikiri An - see crooked, disorderly

indeed Adv: bîakû Av, bîani Av - see truly, certainly

infant N: kété mérengé N - see child

in front of Prep: 1. in general: na devant** (ti/ni) CP - see before
   2. (of persons): na gbé lé CP, na lé ti/ni CP
   3. (as of a parade): na li ti/ni CP - means also on top of

ingenuity N: ndarâa N - means also skill, wisdom

inhabitant N: zo ti (kótóró) N, wa ti (kótóró) N - with an object rather than the name of a community, wa means owner - with the name of a trait or quality, wa means a person characterized by that trait

injection N: (hypodermic): piqûre** N

ink N: encre** N, ngû ti mbéti N - the latter is not common

in order to Prep: ti C, ngbangatî C, tênestî C, followed by a verb

inquire V: ask: hûnda V

insert V: yôro V - also means to thrust
inside Prep, Adv: na yá tì/ní CP
instead of Prep: na place** tì CP - means in the pla• of
institute V: sára V - see make
instructor N: 1. general: moniteur** N - see teacher
2. religious: catechist: catechiste** N
insufficient, be V: lingbi pepe V - lingbi means to suffice, to be equal,
to be able
intelligence N: ndarâa N - also means skill, wisdom - see personality
interfere vocally V: bi yângá V
intestines N: yá N - see abdomen, stomach
in that place Adv: da Av - also means to that place, from that place,
there - used post-verbally only
in the center of Prep: na nóâ bé CP - this suggests the middle of a flat
surface, as a table
in the manner of Prep: na lége tì CP - also means by means of, concerning
in the midst of Prep: na pòpò CP, na milieu** CP
into it Adv: da Av - means also in that place, to that place, from that
place, there - used only post-verbally
invite V: 1. call: éré V - means also to summon
2. ask: hûnda V
ior V: passer** V
iron N: wë N
island N: zoa N
issue N: téné N, ngbanga N - see also affair, matter, problem
itch N: scabies: sâra N
jail N : kânga N, da tí kânga N - see shut, imprison
jaw N : (lower) : ngbagba N - means the whole mandible, the chin
jell V : set, harden : gbô V, coller** V
job N : kusâra N, koa N - see work
join V : (things together) ; tingbi V - means also to fasten, to unite
journey V : tambéla V - see walk, travel
joy N : ngiá N - arises out of good interpersonal relationships : fellowship, cordiality, fun
judge V : fâa ngbangâ V - means to arbitrate, to make a judicial decision
jug N : a demi-john : dame-jeanne** N - holds five to twenty quarts
jump V : uru V - also means to fly
just Adj : mbirimbîrî An - also means straight, right
just Adv : only : gi Au - precedes the word which it modifies
just a little more ; (temporal expression) ; ngbá kété V - used pre-clausally
just a moment later ; (temporal expression) ; yi tí bâa ndo V - use pre-clausally
just any Adj ; (in the sense of ; without proper credentials, not properly selected, indiscriminate) ; kirikiri An (not just anyone should take this medicine : zo kirikiri alîngbi tí mú yorô sô pëps)
justly Adv : mbirimbîrî An - also means straight, right
just now Adv : fafadesô Av - this is fadesô reduplicated - it is used pre-clausally - also means immediately
- K -

keen, be V : zà V - also means to be **sharp**, to **shine**
keep V : bata V - means to **preserve**, to **conserve**, to **protect**, to **watch**
kettle N : ta N - see also **pot**
key N : clé** N, mérangé ti clé** N
kick V : dô V - also means to **stamp**, to **stub** one’s toe, to **stumble**, to **dance**, to **shake**, to **tremble**
kid V : hânda V - also means to **entice**, to **tempt**, to **bluff**
kill V : 1. general : fâa V - also means to **cut**, to **break**
   2. (animals, in hunting) : pika V - also means to **hit**, to **beat**, to **strike**
kind N : sort : qualité** N, marâ N - the latter is a general classificatory term meaning also **type**, **tribe**
kindle V : tinga wâ V - see also **burn**
kneel V : kuku V, zûku V - the latter means also to **bow**
knife N : 1. general : zeinbe IN - see **tool**
   2. throwing knife : rlga N
   3. machete : coupé-coupé** N, kpangbala K, nzenze N
knock down V : kinda V - means also to **trip**
know V : 1. general : hînga V
   2. thoroughly : hînga kôé V
   3. know how : hînga lége V
kob N : a medium-sized antelope of the genus **Adenota** : tâgba N
labor N : kusâra N, koa N - see work

labor V : 1. general : sâra kusâra V, sâra koa V - see work
   2. have labor pains : góá ... ti V (she is having labor pains : góá ati lo)

laborer N : 1. general : zo tí kusâra N
   2. unskilled : manoeuvre** N

lacking, be V : manquer** V - also means to be absent, to fail

lady N : 1. married ; madame** N - also means madam, Mrs.
   2. single : mademoiselle** N - also means Miss

lake N : ngú N - means also water, river, rain, year

lament V : 1. to complain : bima V - means to moan, to groan
   2. to cry, to mourn : toto V

lamp N : lampe** N, wá N - the latter refers to fire or any kind of light
   or heat

land N : sése N - also means earth, soil

language N : yângâ N - also means mouth, opening, door, edge

lantern N : lamp ; lampe** N

large Adj : kótâ An - see big, important, great, wide, thick

large amount N : (of money) : kótâ An, míngi An - see big, much

last Adj : tí ndá ni CP

late Adv : retard** Av

later Adv : 1. ènde Av, fadé Av, híc Av - all used post-verbally - the
   latter two also mean quickly, soon
   2. na pékó (ti/ni) CP, na ndá (ti/ni) CP - used pre-clausally - also
mean next - without na, mean subsequently, following

laterite, lateritic plateau N : lakéré N - by extension, means any large flat rock on which women pound manioc to make flour

laugh V : 1. general : hé ngiá V
   2. laugh at, mock : hé V, followed by an object

law N : ndia N - also means ordinance, degree, rule

lay V : zia V - also means put, leave, permit

lay leader N : (in a Christian context) : catéchiste** N - see instructor

lay waste V : buba V, foutu** V - also means to spoil, to rot, to ruin

laziness N : 1. simple inertia or idleness : goigói N
   2. malicious, willful, dishonest laziness : mbâná N

lead V : fa lége V - see also show, teach, demonstrate

leaf : (of plant, or of paper) : kugbé N

leak V : yuru V - also means to seep

lean V : 1. stoop : ba V - see bend
   2. to one side : dénge V

leap V : uru V - also means to jump, to fly

learn V : manda V

leave V : 1. to go : goe V
   2. depart : quitter** V, lôndô V - this last means to arise
   3. abandon : zia V - also means to put, to relinquish
   4. mú lége V - means to start off
   5. often a combination of lôndô and goe, or mú lége and goe

left hand N : gati N, mabóko ti wâle N

leftover N : tanga N, ndâmbu N - see remainder

left over, be V : ngbá V - see also remain, continue

left side N : mbáge ti wâle N
leg-liquid

leg N : géré N - also means foot

legislate V : lú ndié V - also means to decree, to ordain

legislator N : député** N

lend V : gengi V (?) - see listen

leopard N : ze N

leopard man N : zo tì ze N

leper N : zo tì buruma N, zo tì ngiba N, wa ngiba N

leprosy N : buruma N, ngiba N

let V : permit : zía V, zía lége na V - see also put

letter N : lettre** N, mbéti N - the latter also means paper, book

lid N : (of kettle) : yì tì kângâ yângâ tì ta wé N

lie V : 1. recline : sè tèrè V

2. sleep, rest : làngô V

3. tell untruth : sára vene V, têne vene V, sára wàtákâ V, têne wàták' V

lie N : vene N, wàtákâ N

life N : fini N

lift V : mú na ndúzû V, gbô na ndúzû V, yó V - see also carry

light N : wá N, lumière** N - the first means also fire, heat

light V : kindle : tìnga wá V, sára wá V

like V : yì V - see also want, love

like Prep : tongana C - also means when, if

like this Adv : tongasô Av - also means thus, so

lime N : made by roasting oyster shells : mbamba N

lion N : bâmarâ N

lip N : pôrô tì yângâ N - see mouth

liquid N : ngû N - primarily means water - see also honey, tear, rain,
latex, ink, milk, pus, semen

listen V : pay attention : má V, gengi mé V - the first means to hear
little Adj : kété An - also means small, narrow, thin
little by little Adv : yeke yeke Av - means gradually, slowly
little later, a Adv : yí ti báa ndo V - used pre-clausally
live V : 1. exist : du V
2. reside : dutí V, lângó V - see sit, sleep, dwell
3. establish permanent residence : sâra kótôrô V

liver N: both anatomically and as seat of the personality : bë N
lizard N : 1. gray : katá N
2. monitor lizard : mbârâwârâ N
load N : a one-man load : kôngbâ N - also means bundle, burden, package, goods, possessions, merchandise
loaded, be V : yó kôngbâ V - see carry
loan, take out V : sâra bon** V, hûnda bon** V - see also borrow, buy on credit
lobe N : (of ear) : mé N - also means ear
lock N : clé** N, mamâ tí clé** N

long Adj : 1. spatially : yongôro An - also means tall, far
2. temporally : yongôro An, used after a verb
long, ve V : yo V - either horizontally or vertically : be far, be tall
long time Adv : jusqu'à** Av, ngbii Av - used post-verbally - ngbii can be reduplicated, or both can be used together for emphasis
long time ago Adv : giriri Av - see also formerly
look V : 1. see : báa V
2. hunt for : gi V
3. look for a way : gi lége V
4. look here! : (mo) báa V
look like—lust

look like V: resemble: kpa V

loosen V: zi V - means also to untie, to release, to remove

lose V: 1. general: girisa V - means also to be lost, to forget, to be forgotten
   2. (a relative by death): perdre** V

lost, be V: girisa V - also means to lose, to forget, to be forgotten

love V: 1. like: yi V - also means to want
   2. stronger: bê ... yi V
   3. mutually: yi térê V

lover N: esp. illegitimate: ndeko N - means also friend, mistress

lower V: zia na gbê ni V, descendre** na sése V, ba na sése V - the first means to put, the last means to bend

lower part N: gbê N - used in expressions like under, below

lung N: fúfú N

lure V: hânda V - also means to tempt, to entice, to bluff, to kid

lust N: nzala N - means any kind or degree of desire
machete N : coupe-coupe** N, kpangbala N, nzenze N - see tool
madam N : madame** N - also means Mrs., lady
magazine N : (a journal) : mbéti N - also means paper, book, letter
maggot N : ngusú N - also means chigger
maize N : nzo N, gbánza N
make V : 1. sâra - this is a very general verb meaning to do, to act, to behave, to manufacture, to fabricate, to create, to build, to establish, etc. - many more specific meanings are determined by the object or complement
2. manufacture, fabricate : leke V - also means to prepare, to repair, to arrange, to organize
make a fool of V : buba V - also means to spoil, to ruin
make a garden V : fâa yáká V - see cut, field
make a mistake V : dô géré V - see to err
make fun of V : mock : hé V
make garden V : fâa yáká V - see field, garden, cut
make signs V : (with the hand) : pé (ti) V - also means to beckon, to signal, to winnow, to wave
make war V : tiri V, píka berá V - see fight, wage war
make worthless V : buba V - means also to ruin, to make a fool of
male Adj : kóli N - used as a specifying complement of some more general noun denoting a person or an animal - also means man, husband
malingering N : mbáná N - see laziness, foolishness
mallet N : (for pounding manioc) : kongo N - also means hoe handle
man

man N : 1. generic term, human being : zo N
    2. male : kóli N - also means husband

manage V : to make out, to get along : démerder** V, débrouiller** V

mango N : mánhgo N

manioc N : gözo N - this is the staple food of most of the population

manner N : 1. way, custom : lége V - also means path, means
    2. skill, ingenuity : malin** N, manière N, ndaráa N - also mean intelligence, ability

manufacture V : sâra V, leke V - see make, fabricate, prepare

many Adj : mingi An - also means much, very

mar V : foutu** V - also means to spoil, to ruin

marijuana N : mbânggo N

market, market-place N : galá N, marché** N

market town N : galá... - also means a commercial center

marriage N : mariage** N - also means spouse

marry V : 1. general : marier** V, sâra mariage** V
    2. of man : mú wâle V, kamâta wâle V - see take
    3. of woman : mú kóli V, kamâta kóli V, goe na da tí kóli V - see take, go

mash V : pound, crush : pete V

master N : vêni N - also means owner

masturbate V : ndú téré-ti ... vêni na mbáná V - see touch, body

mat N : esp. a sleeping mat : gbogbô N - also means a bed

match N : (to light a fire) : allumette** N, tinga va N

mate N : 1. either sex : mariage** N - also means spouse
    2. husband : kóli - also means man, male
    3. wife : wâle - also means woman, female
matter N : 1. thing : yí N
   2. an affair, an issue, a problem : téné N, ngbanga N - the first also
      means word, saying, utterance, speech - the latter also means dispute
mature V : 1. kpingba V - this means to harden, to be hard
   2. grow : māj V - means also to develop
   3. of a person : lé kpingba V
mature man N : kpingba kōli N
mature person N : kpingba zo N
mature woman N : kpingba wâle N
mayor N : (of a city, with municipal organization) : maire** N
mead N : fermented drink made from honey : duma N - see beer
meat N : yçraa N - also means animal
medicine N : yorô N - this term does not differentiate natural and super-
   natural effects, nor good or bad aims or results - also means fetish,
   charm, talisman, poison
medicine man N : zo tï yorô N, monganga N
meet V : 1. general : té V - see also gather
   2. personally, socially : bâa V, bâa lé tï V, bâa têrê V - see encounter
meeting N : bôngbi N - also means gathering, assembly
melody N : gô N - also means neck, throat, voice, tune
member N : (of a Protestant church) : membre** N - see also Christian
menstrual period N : bângô nze N
menstrual period, have V : bâa nze - see see, month
merchandise N : kôngbâ N - also means goods, possessions, load
mercy N : mawa N - also means pity, misery
message N : koa N
messenger N : wa koa N - a Protestant neologism for preacher
metal, sheet N : tôle** N - see roofing
mid-day N : kôtà lâ N, midi** N - see noon
middle N : milieu** N, pôpô N, bé N - all used mostly with na in CP meaning in the center of, in the midst, among, between
midnight N : bé bí N, midi** tî bí N
midst, in the Prep : na milieu** (tî/nî) CP, na pôpô (tî/nî) CP - see also among, between
militia, militiaman N : garde** N
milk N : 1. mother's : ngû ti me N
2. animal, used for human nutrition, canned, powdered, etc : lait** N
mine P : see I
minister N : 1. Protestant pastor : pasteur** N
2: Catholic priest : père** N
mirror N : tatara N - also means pane, sheet of glass
miscarriage, have V : ngo ... bubâ V - see abort
misery N : mawa N - also means pity, mercy, suffering
misery, cause V : sâra mawa V - also means to have pity
mislay V : lose : girîsa
Miss : mademoiselle** N - also means lady, unmarried
miss V : manquer** V - also means to be absent, to fail
mission N : mission** N
mistrress N : 1. feminine of master : veni N, wa N - see owner
   2. feminine of lover : ndeko N - also means friend, companion
mix V : 1. general : mélanger** V
   2. stir with implement : tourner** V - also means to turn
   3. stir flour into water to make dough : mé kóbe V
   4. with hands so as to produce a homogeneous mass or liquid : fúru V
   5. with the feet, as mud for making bricks : dó V - also means to kick, to stamp
moan V : to complain : bima V
mock V : hé V - also means laugh at, ridicule
model N : pandé N - also means pattern
molar N : kótá pémbé N - see tooth
moment N : heure** N - see time
money N : nginza N - see also franc, five francs
monitor lizard N : mbáráwárá N
monkey N : 1. general term : makáko N
   2. baboon : bákoyá N
   3. colobus : ngui N
   4. red monkey : bingba makáko N
   5. chimpanzee : seko N
month N : mois** N, nze N - the latter means moon
moon N : nze N - also means month
more Adj : mbéni An - means also other, some
mores N : lége N - see custom, manner, path, way
morning N : 1. before sunrise : ndá ade V
morning (cont.)-my

2. after sunrise : ndá péréré N

mortar N : (in which food is pounded) : kpu N

mosquito N : ngungu N

most of all Adv : ahó kóé V

moth N : kóla N

mother N : biological, social, or honorific : mamá N - also means mother's sisters, and members of mother's clan - see family, aunt

mount V : monter** V - also means to climb

mountain N : hótó N - also means hill

mouse N : deko N - also means rat

moustache N : kóá yángá N - see hair

mouth N : yángá N - also means opening, door, edge, language

move over V : pousser** V - also means to push, to propel, to impel

Mr. N : monsieur** N - also means sir, gentleman

Mrs. N : madame** N - also means madam, lady

much An : míngi An - also means many, very

mucilaginous Adj : dongó An, dongó yongóro An - applied to certain vegetables, e.g. okra

mud N : potopóto N - means any soft mushy substance, e.g. mush, gruel

mush N : 1. soft : potopóto N - also means mud, gruel

2. stiff dough, made of manioc or mil flour : kóbe N - also means food

mushroom N : gugu N

must V : il faut que** V, used as a sort of "impersonal"

my P : see I
nail N: 1. carpenter's: pointe** N

2. fingernail: nzné N, nzné ti mabóko N - also means claw

nail V: (roofing to a house): pika V - also means to hit, to pound, to beat

naked Adj: séngé An - see without

name N: éré N

name V: éré V, dé éré V - also mean to call, to summon, to invite

nap N: lángó N - also means sleep

nape of neck N: ndó gó N

narrow Adj: kété An - also means small, thin, little

nation N: kótóró N - means any kind of organized community

navel N: turúngu N - also means umbilical cord

near, nearby Adj, Adv: ndurú An - also means short

neck N: gó N - also means throat, voice, tune

need V: yi V - means also want, like, love

needle N: sôâ N

Negro N: zo vokó N, vokó zo N - also mean black man

net N: large net used for hunting or fishing: gbánda N

never Adv: lá  ámb pepe N

nevertheless C: quand même** C - also means even if, though, anyway

new Adj: finí An

news N: 1. general: téné N - also mean word, saying, affair

2. specific: nouvelle** N
next C : 1. general : et pu’s** C, na C, mai** — also mean and, but
   2. with strong sequential component : en re** C, na péko ni CP, na
      ndá ni CP — mean again, after, behind

nice Adj : nzoni An — means good
nicely Adv : nzoni Av — used after a verb — also means well

night N : bí N

night-time N : bingó N

Nile perch N : capitaine** N — see fish

nine Adj : ngombáya An

no I : non** I — see also not

noise N : 1. tumult : wûruwûru N
       2. voices : téné mingi N — see saying, word, utterance
       3. cry : toto N
       4. shout : kôngô N

none P : ्ko pẹpe An

noon N : kótá lá N, midi** N — see sun, day

no one P : zo ्ko pẹpe N

noose N : kámba N — also means cord, snare

nose N : h̩ N

not Adv : pẹpe SP — used at the end of the sentence

not any, not a single one, not at all P : ्ko pẹpe An — also means none

nothing P : yi ्ko pẹpe N

notice V : baaa V — means to see

now Adv : fadesô Av — used either pre-clausally or post-verbally — redup-
   licated it means immediately

number N : numéro** N

nurse N : infirmier** N

nurse V : bata V, soigner** V, sára na V — see also care for, keep, serve
oar N : káí N - also means paddle

oath N : 1. as in court : bá N - see also swear
    2. a curse : zonga N - see also curse V

obdurate, be V : li ... (êkè) ngangó V - also means to be stupid

obey V : mà yángâ V - see also hear, listen, mouth

object V : ké kité V - also to doubt, to expostulate

objection N : kité N - also means a doubt

obligated, be V : língbi V - this meaning is not frequent - see to suffice,
to be able, be equal

obligation N : a social debt : kódá N

oblige V : compel : forcer** V - also means to persuade

observe V : báa V - means to see

obstruct V : kânga lége V - see shut, path

obstructed, be or become V : kânga V - also means to be shut, to tie, to
fasten, to obstruct

obtain V : wara V - also means to get, to find

o'clock N : heure** N - see time

odor N : fô N

of Prep : 1. in all kinds of "genitive" relationships : tí C
    2. after hündà to ask : na C

offer V : mú V - means to give, to take

office N : bureau** N

often Adv : míngi An - also means much, many, very
oil-orchard

oil N : mafuta N - also means fat and grease

okrè N : vèkè N

old Adj : 1. of objects : ngbéré An
  2. of persons : vieux** An, mbakóra N
  3. old man : kótà kóli N, kângba N
  4. old woman : kótà wâle N, mbakóra wâle N

on account of Prep : tenèti C, ngbangati C - also mean in order to, for, because of

once Adv : 1. (frequency) : lége ọko N - see time, times
  2. (time) : mbéní lá N

one Adj : ọko An

one another P : téré N, used after a verb - also means body, each other, selves

one day Adv : mbéní lá N, lá ọko N - means once upon a time

onion N : oignon** N

on it Adv : da Av - used post-verbally only - means also to that place, in that place, etc.

only Adj : 1. one : ọko An
  2. just : gi An

on top of Prep : na ndó tí CP, na li tí CP - also mean above, over

open V : lungúla V - also means to untie

opening N : yángá N - also means mouth, door, edge, language

opportunity N : lége N - also means path, way, manner, means

opportunity, find V : wara lége V

or C : wala C - rarely na C

orange N : orange** N

orange Adj : bingbá An - also means red - see color

orchard N : yáká N - means field, garden, or any cultivated area
order V: commander** V — means to command, to rule
ordinance N: ndiá N — also means law, rule
ordinary Adj: séngé An — see without
organize V: leke V — also means to prepare, to arrange
ornament N: 1. bead, string of beads: lenge N, kisi N
   2. bracelet, anklet of brass: ngbérénâ N
   3. (in ear): yi ti mé N
other Adj: mbéni An — also means another, certain, some, any see also different
outside Prep, Adv: na gigi (ti/ni) CP
outside N: gigi N
over Prep: na ndô ti/ni CP — also means on top of, above, in addition to
overcome V: hô V, gagner** V — see also pass, win
overlook V: fail to notice: manquer** V — see also be absent
over there Adv: kâ Av — see also there
overwhelm V: 1. defeat: gagner** V, hô V — see pass, win
   2. be too much for: kara V, be V — see also annoy, bother, weary
own Adj: ti C followed by a noun or pronoun
own V: have, possess: eke na V
owner N: 1. master, mistress: vêni N
   2. inhabitant: wa N
ox N: bâgara N — also means cattle, bull, cow, etc.
oyster N: mbamba N — also means lime made from oyster shells
package N : kôngbâ N - see load, bundle

paddle N : (for a canoe) : kái N - also means an oar

paddle V : (a canoe) : sâra kái V

pain N : (usually physical) : finôo N (we experienced much pain : í bâa finôo mingi) - see suffering

pain V : so V - see hurt

paint V : 1. to whitewash a building : zía vurú sése na da V, zía mbamba na da V - see whitewash, lime
   2. (a box black) : zía vòkò yorò (na sandûku) V

palaver N : ténê N, ngbanga N - mean also any contentious problem, a dispute, an affair

palm N : 1. oil palm : mbûrû N
   2. fan palm : korôngo N
   3. false bamboo : bambou** N

palm of hand N : yá tí mabôko N - see hand

palm oil N : bingbâ mafuta N, mafuta tí mbûrû N - see palm

palm wine N : kanguya N - see wine

pan N : ta N - see pot, kettle

pane N (of glass) : tatara N - also means mirror

pangolin N : scaly ant-eater (genus Manis) : kpîkara N

paper N : mbéti N, papier** N - mean also document - mbéti also means book, letter

pardon V : forgive : pardonner** V

pass V : 1. proceed : passer** V, hô V - see also go, excell
   2. an examination : passer** V
paste N: (made from oleaginous seeds): kpi N - the word also designates collectively the seeds: peanut, sesame, etc.
pastor N: ordained Protestant minister: pasteur** N
patas monkey N: bingbá wákáko N - also called red monkey - see monkey
path N: lége N - also means road, way, manner, custom, opportunity - also enters into CP meaning by means of, on account of
patient, be V: persevere: kânga bé V - see shut, liver
pattern N: pandé N - see model
paw N: (of anima?): gître N - see foot, leg
pay V: fûta V, payer** V
pay attention V: má V, gengi mé V - see hear, listen
peace N: s'viri N, sôngó N - see also harmony, concord - sôngó suggests a prior state of conflict
peanut N: kârâko N
pebble N: témé N - also means any kind of stone
penis N: kângé N - see also scrotum, foreskin
people N: zo N - see person
pepper N: (red): ndôngé N
perceive V: acoustically: má V - also means to hear, to understand visually or otherwise: bâa V - means to see, to understand
perfect Adj: nzoni kôé An - see good
perform V: sâra V - see do, act, make
perfume N: yambo N - also means incense
perhaps C: peut-être** C, hinga pêpe V (perhaps he doesn't love you: hinga pêpe, bé tí lo ayí mo pêpe) (perhaps you didn't do your work right: peut-être mo sâra koa tí mo mbîrimbîrî pêpe)
permit V: zia V, zia lége na V, mú lége na V - see leave, let, give
persecute V : sára sáná na V - means to cause suffering
persecuted, be V : hú ponó V - means to experience suffering
persecution N : sáná N, ponó N - see suffering
persevere V : kánga bê V - means to be patient, to resist discouragement
persist V : continuer** V - see also continue, persevere
person N : zo V - a general term for human being
personality N : (the seat of) : bê N - means the liver - the spirit resides here, and all cognitive, affective, and volitional functions reside here - means also temperament, disposition, character
perspiration N : sweat : gbiki N
persuade V : forcer** V - also means to force, to pressure
perverse Adj : kirikiri An - means crooked, evil
perversely Adv : kirikiri An - see disorderly
pester V : emmerder** V - see also to discourage, to annoy, to weary
phallus N : kénégé N - see penis
phone V : píka senga V
photograph V : tirer** photo** V
photograph N : photo** N - also means picture, illustration
pick V : (fruit, etc.) : kô V - means to pluck
pick out V : choisir** V - see also choose
pick quarrel V : gî téné V
pick up V : gather what has been scattered : lô V
picture N : photo** N - means esp. photograph
piece N : 1. remainder : tànga N, ndâmbu N
  2. a small piece (as of bread) : ndurú An - means short
pig N : 1. domestic : cochon** N
2. bush pig : mbengé N
3. wart hog : cochon** ti gigi N, cochon** ti ngonda N

pill N : medicine : quinine** N - also means capsules, tablets
pillow N : koli N - also means cushion
pink Adj : 1. intense : bingbá kété An - see red, color
   2. light, pastel : vurú kété An - see white
pipe N : (for smoking) : kpókpó N
pitch black, be V : vokó kpitékpité V - see black
pity N : mawa N - also means misery
pity V : sâra mawa V, mawa ... gbó V - also mean to cause misery
place N : ndo N, place** N
plain N : (grassy, usually low and somewhat swampy) : lando N
plait V : (cord, hair) : há V - see also twist
plant V : lá V - also means to bury
plantain N : fondo N - see also banana
plantation N : yákâ N - also means field, or any cultivated area
platter N : (large, flat, traditionally carved of wood) : kolôngo N - means also basin - see container
play V : 1. sâra ngiâ V - also means to have fellowship, to chat, to have fun
   2. (music) : píka ... biá V - used of all but wind instruments
plead V : 1. pray : sambéla V, diko V - mean also to consult
   2. ask : hunda V
   3. as by kneeling : voróo V, voróo t’ré V - means to respect
please V : nzere V - means also to be sweet, to taste good
pleurisy N : kobéla ti kate N - see tuberculosis
plot N : 1. general : a field : yákâ N
   2. of right size for planting cotton : piquet** N- also means stake
plow-pound

plow V : fàa sése V, dé yáká V - see cut, chop
pluck V : (as leaves or fruit) : kó V - means to pick
pneumonia N : kobéla tí kate N - see tuberculosis
pocket N : poche** N - see also bag
pocketbook N : poche** N - also means pocket
pod N : kakó N - means husk, chaff, anything which is discarded when grain or seeds are processed
pointed Adj : kété kété An, konço pepe V - see small, grow
pointless Adj : without reason : sengé An
poison N : 1. general : yorô N - see also medicine, fetish, charm, talisman
        2. used in trial by poison : gônda N
pole N : kéké N - also means tree, wood, stick
policeman N : 1. general : police** N
        2. military or state : gendarme** N
pond N : ngû N - also means water, river, rain
ponder V : think : hâ V, b'anda V, gi bé V
poor Adj : nzinga N - means poverty
poor person N : wa nzinga N
porcupine N : (bush-tailed) : iele N
possessions N : goods : kàngbá N - means also load, bundle
possibly C : peut-être** C, hinga pepe V - see perhaps
post-office N : poste** N
pot N : 1. general : ta N - means also pan, kettle
        2. traditional clay pot : ta tí basánze N
        3. metal kettle : ta wé N
        4. reserved for guests : ta tí vorôo N - see respect
pound V : 1. general : pìka V - see hit
pound (cont.) - pressure

2. (hard food, to reduce to powder) : sosó V
3. (soft food, to mash) : pete V - also means to crush

pour V : só V - means also to spill - see also tip

poverty N : nzinga N - see poor

powder N : 1. general, fine powder : fúku N - means also flour
2. gunpowder, ash used medicinally : mbúlú N
3. a red powder made from bark and used to adorn the body in connection with a certain dance : mbiô N
4. dust : pupu sése N
5. sand : mbutu N

power N : 1. general : ngangó An - means strong, hard, strength
2. metaphorically : mbóko N, ti N - mean hand, arm

praise V : 1. a human being : gonda V - see also honor, respect
2. deity : sepálá V - this may be a Protestant term only - see also to pray, to worship, to plead

pray V : sambéla V, díko V - see also worship, praise, consult, count, read

preach V : fa téné V - see teach, show, demonstrate, word

preacher N : wa koa N - a Protestant neologism for messenger

prefer V : mú na pòpò V - see also choose

pregnant, become V : mé ngo V - see conceive - see also bear

pregnant/woman N : mamá ti ngo N - see also foetus, mother

prepare V : sâra V, leke V - see also make, do, arrange, repair

presence N : lé N, gbé lé N, devant** N - see also eye, bottom, front

present, be V : du V - means also to exist, to live - see also remain

preserve V : bata V - also means to keep, to conserve, to protect

press V : (clothes) : passer** bongó V - see also pass, clothing

pressure V : to force : forcer** V - also means to persuade, to compel, usually by moral pressure
pretty-publish

pretty Adj: pendere An - see also beautiful, young

prevent V: gbánzi V, kâ nga lége V - see also obstruct, shut, hinder, withhold

price N: ngéré N - means cost, value

pricker N: kíi N - see thorn, burr

pride N: baba N - see also vanity

priest N: (Catholic): père** N - see also clergy

print V: píka mbéti V - also means to type

prison N: kâ nga N, da tí kâ nga N - see also jail

problem N: téné N - means also utterance, saying, speech, matter, affair, issue

proceed V: goe V, passer** V, hô V - mean also to go, to pass, to surpass

proclaim V: 1. preach: fa téné V

2. publish: fa na gigi V

promise V: zé V - see also swear

promise N: zé ndo N - see also oath

propel V: pousser** V - means also to push, to impel - see force

properly Adv: mhirimbíri An - means straight, right

prosper V: 1. hô V - means to spread

2. gá nzoni V, dutí nzoni V - see also improve, greeting

prostitute N: wâle tí pitâ N - means also adulteress

protect V: bata V - means to keep, to preserve, to conserve

proud, be V: li ... kpingba V

provocation N: gi ngolo N

provoke V: gi téné V - means also to pick quarrel, to taunt

publish V: fa na gigi V
pull V: 1. drag: gbóto V, kóso V — also means to pull along, etc.
   2. a knife: há zembe V
punch N: (with the fist): coup-de-poing** N
pupil N: 1. of eye: vokó lé N
   2. student: élève** N
purpose N: ndá N — means lower back, end, meaning
purposeless Adj: séngé An — see without
pursue V: tomba V — means to chase — see also follow
pus N: sánzó N, ngú vuru N — the latter term refers to any thick whitish
   discharge from the body, including semen
push V: pousser** V — means to incite, to urge, to impel, to propel, —
   see also to force
put V: 1. general: zía V — also means to set, to leave, to cease, to aban-
   don, to permit
   2. put on clothes: yú V — also means to wear
put together V: assemble: bôngbi V, tîngbi V — see also join
python N: kúma N
quail N : dodoro N
quarrel V : papa V - means also to *argue*, to *dispute*
quarrel N : papa N - an *argument*, a *dispute*
quickly Adv : hio Av, fadé Av - used only post-verbally - fadé adds the idea of a brief time lapse : *soon*
quiet, be V : dutí kpó V - see to *sit*
quiet, become V : kâî V - means to *hush*
quietly Adv : doucement** Av - can be reduplicated for emphasis - also means *gently*
rabbit N : ndarangba N - also means hare
race N : 1. foot : gbíma ndoko N - means a contest
    2. canoe : mbandako N
race V : kpé lóró V - see run
rag N : bongó N - means cloth, clothing
rain N : ngú N, ngú Nzapâ N - the first means any kind of water
rain V : ngú ... píka V - see beat
rainbow N : kôngó N
rainfall N : ngú N - means water, rain
rainy season N : ngú N - also means water, rain, year
raise V : mú na ndúzú V, gbó na ndúzú V - mean also to lift
    rapidly Adv : híc Av, fadé Av - see fast
rat N : deko N - also means mouse
ratel N : zarí N
rat trap N : ngindi N - see snare
reach V : arrive ; sí V
read V : díko V, díko mbétí V - the first means to count, to consult, to pray, to worship
read, be able to V : hínga mbétí V - see know, book
real Adj : taá Au - means true, genuine
realize V : báa V, hínga V - see see, know
really Adv : bíakú Av, bíání Av - see certainly, truly
reason N : ndá N - means lower back, end, meaning, purpose
rebound-rejoice

rebound V : uru V - means to jump, to fly
rebuke V : wa V - means to warn, to advise, to counsel, to comfort
receive V : 1. take : mú V, kamâta V
2. get, obtain : wara V - also means to find
3. (a payment due, as bride-price or wages) : te n ginza V - see eat, money
recently Adv : ándo Av - also means formerly
reckon V : diko V - also means to count, to consult, to read
recline V : sé téré V - see lie, sleep
recognize V : (from the appearance) : hinga lé tí V - also means to be acquainted
recompense N : consequences of one's actions : fûta N - also means salary, wages
recompense V : fûta V, payer** V - also mean to pay
reconcile V : harmonize : lakâ tâné V, sâra sôngô V, gá sôngô V - the latter two also mean to be reconciled
recover V : (from illness) : ça va** V, kâi ... kobéla V, gá nzoni V
red Adj : bingbâ An - means also orange, reddish brown - see color
re reddish brown Adj : bingbâ An - see red, color
red monkey N : patas monkey : bingbâ makâko N, makâko tí bingbá N - see monkey
reed N : sosong N - see grass
refrain V : 1. hold back : ninga V - also means to delay
2. refuse, reject : kç V, yî pêpê V
refuse V : kç V, yî pêpê V - see also reject, object
reject V : kç V, yî pêpê V - see also refuse, object
rejoice V : sâra ngiâ V - means also to have fellowship or fun, to chat, to play
rejoice, cause to V : mú ngiâ na bé tí V, zia ngiâ na bé tí V
release V: zi V - also means to loosen, to untie
relinquish V: zía V - means to put, to leave, to abandon, to permit
remain V: 1. to sit, to dwell: duti V - see also exist
   2. to sleep, to dwell: lângô V
   3. to reside, to establish permanent residence: sârâ kôtôrô V
   4. to be left over from the past: ngbâ V
   5. to remain for the future, to be not yet begun: de V
remainder N: ndâmbu N, tanga N - see also rest, leftover - ndâmbu refers primarily to a solid unit or piece rather than to a mass
remember V: da bé V with the speaker also as object
remind V: da bé V with another object than the speaker
remove V: 1. zi V - also means to loosen, to untie
   2. to take away: lungûla V - also means to open
repair V: leke V - also means to arrange, to prepare, to organize, to make
repent V: leke bé V - also means to change mind
reply V: kiri téné V - see answer
reprimand V: wa V, zingo na V, sûku na V, in increasing order of severity - see also warn, advise, comfort, arouse, swell
reprove V: wa V - see warn, comfort, advise
republic N: république** V - see also administration
repudiate V: kë V - see also to refuse, to reject, to divorce
request N: formal application: demande** N
request V: 1. call for: éré V - see demand
   2. ask: hûnda
rescue V: save: so V
resemble V: kpa (térë) V
resentment N: vundû N - since misfortune is considered to result only from personal ill-will, the reaction to misfortune almost invariably
resentment (cont.) - rhinoceros

includes, along with sorrow or disappointment, a strong component of resentment and a desire for retaliation.

reside V: 1. general: duti V, lângô V - see sit, sleep, dwell
2. establish permanent residence: sâra kótôrô V

respect V: 1. honor: vorôo V, vorôo téré V - see also to kneel
2. fear, reverence: kpé mbîto V

respond V: kiri téné V - see answer

rest N: remainder: tanga N, ndâmbu N

rest V: 1. from effort: hû téré V
2. sleep: lângô V - also means to lie, to remain
3. recline: sê téré V

retain V: bata V - means to keep, to preserve, to conserve, to protect

retaliate V: fûta kulá V - also means to avenge - see also resentment

retaliation N: kulá N - see revenge

retribution N: fûta N - see consequences, salary, reward - see also revenge, recompense

retrogress V: kiri na pekô V - see also return

return V: kiri V

return N: kiringô N - from kiri to return

reveal V: 1. explain: fa ndâ ti V
2. publish: fa na gigi V

revenge V: fûta kulá V - see avenge, retaliate

revenge N: kulá N - any personal injury occasions resentment which cannot be appeased other than by revenge or retaliation

reverence V: kpé mbîto V - means to fear - see also respect, honor, praise, worship

reward N: fûta N - means wages, salary, recompense, retribution

rhinoceros N: másarâgba N
rice N : lôso N
rich Adj : mosoro N, aka na mosoro V
riches N : mosoro N - means wealth, bride-price
ridicule V : hé V - means to mock, to laugh at
right Adv : mbirimbiri An - means straight, just, justly, correct, correctly
right away Adv : fafaeso Av - means also immediately, now
righteous Adj : mbirimbiri An - means straight, right, just, correct
right hand N : koti N, mabôko ti kôli N
right now Adv : fafaeso Av - see immediately, now
right side N : mbâge ti kôli N - see right hand
ripe, be or become V : be V - means also to brown
ripen V : be V - means also to brown
rise V : lôndo V - used of animate beings and of the sun, moon, etc. - see also get up
river N : 1. water : ngû N - means also stream, brook, lake, pond, sea, rain, etc.
   2. bank : yângá ti ngû N - see mouth, edge
   3. source, spring : li ngû N - see head
road N : lége N - see path, way
roan antelope N : zaranga N - see antelope
roast V : (in coals) : zô V - means also to set fire, to burn
robber N : zo ti nzi N, wa nzi N - see also thief
rock N : témé N - see stone
roof N : li ti da N - see head, house
roofing N : 1. grass : péré N, bebé N
   2. sheet metal : tôle N - means also corrugated metal
room N : yâ ti da N - see stomach, house
rooster-rust

rooster N : kóli kóndo N - see chicken

rope N : kâmba N - see cord

rot V : fô V - means also to smell - see also spoil

rubber N : 1. raw latex, rubber tree ; bângá N
  2. cured rubber, rubber objects ; ndembú N

ruin V : foutu** V, buba V - see spoil

rule N : law ; ndiâ N

rule V : command ; commander** V

run V : 1. on foot or wheel ; kpé V - means also to run away, to flee
  2. (as a machine) ; tambéla V - means to walk
  3. (as a liquid) ; yuru V - means to leak, to seep - see also flow

run out V : to exhaust a supply ; hûnzi V - see also finish

rust N : sôko N - means corrosion in general - used with the verb te to eat
- S -

salary N : fúta N, nginza N - the first means recompense, wages, reward, retribution - the second means money

salt N : 1. generic term : yingó N
2. traditional salt made from the ashes of certain plants : sá N, yingó ti basánze N, yingó ti sauvage** N
3. imported rock salt : adorónu N

salutation N ; bara N - see greeting

salute V : bera V - see greet

same Adj : lége 5ko N - also means together, once, same time, same way

same time Adv : lége 5ko N - also means same, once, together, same way

same way Adv : lége 5ko N - also means same, same time, together, once

sample N : légo N - also means taste

sand N : mbutu N - see powder

sandal N ; pâpa N - see thong, shoe

sauce N : 1. generic term : kásà N - accompanies the staple dough - see also food
2. made of greens with or without oleaginous paste : yabándá N

save V : rescue : so V

say V : tene V - means also utter, tell

say a name V ; dé éré V - see name

saying : téné N - see word, utterance

scabbard N : (for knife) : póró ti zembe N - see skin, knife

scabies N : itch : sârâ N

scar N : 1. general, from wound : ká N
2. (ornamental, on cheek) : póró N
school-seep

school N : école** N

goes to V : sāra école** V

scold V : wa V, zíingo na V, súku na V, in ascending order of severity - see also warn, arouse, swell, reprimand

scourge N : chicotte** N - see whip

scrape V : kpaka V - see also scratch, dig

scratch V : 1. with fingernails : koto V
2. to scrape with instrument : kpaka V
3. (oneself, or to dig in ground with hands) : ñsa V

scrotum N : korogbé N - see also penis

sea N : kótá ngú N - see water, river

search V : gi V - see hunt

search one's heart V : gi bé V - also means to ponder, to think, to wonder

season N : 1. general : ngôi N - a time for doing something
2. rainy : ngú N - also means water, rain, year
3. dry : vurú ndo N, burú N

see V : báa V, báa ndo V - also mean to perceive, to understand

seed N : 1. of plant : lé N, lé tì kéké N, lèngò N - see also fruit, harvest, yield
2. food : lé tì kóbe N
3. edible oily seeds : kpi N - also means the paste made of them
4. of animals : ngongoa N

see first-hand V : báa V, báa na lé V - see, eye

seek V : gi V - see hunt

seem V : to appear : báa tongana V

see ... on way V : zìa ... na lége V {I saw him on his way : mbi zìa lo na lége} - see leave

seep V : yuru V - means to leak, to run out
seize V : gbó V, kamáta V - see also affect, take - means also to grasp, to grab, to grip

select V : to choose : choisir** V, mú na pòpó V

self, selves N : 1. after verb : téré N - means body, each other, another
    2. after noun or pronoun : vení An

sell V : ká V, vo V - see also to buy

semen N : ngú vurú N, ngú tí kólí N - the first also means pus

send V : to V, toka V

send dog V : (after something) : bi mbo V - see also incite

send word V : to koa V - see send, message

senseless Adj : búbá An - see foolish, crazy

sentence V : fáa ngbanga V - see judge

separate V : kàngbi V

servant N : 1. personal or domestic : bôi N
    2. slave : ngbáá N
    3. flunky : apprenti** N is a truck driver's flunky, marmiton** N is a kitchen flunky

serve V : sára na V, followed by a person - also means to work for

serve as V : sára V, followed by a noun denoting an office or function - see make, act, behave

sesame N : sindi N

set V : 1. put : zía V - means to leave, to abandon, to permit
    2. harden : gbó V, coller** V - see seize, grasp
    3. (sun) : lá ... kúí V - see die
    4. aside : zía na sése V - see put, ground
    5. fire : zó V - see burn
    6. heart on : zía bë V - means also to trust, to covet
    7. in order : lékt na kámба V - see arrange
settle-shine

settle V : establish residence : sára kótórô V - see make, community
    - see also dwell, reside

seven Adj : mbásámbárá An

severity N : ngângô An - also means strong, strength, hard

sew V : fû V

shade N : 1. shadow : gbé dé N, dé tî N
    2. of ancestor, spirit : tôrô N

shadow N : dé tî N (the shadow of the tree : dé tî kéké) - see cold

shake V : 1. general : yingi V
    2. (a sieve) : gbuburu V, yângâ V - see also sift
    3. winnow : pé V, diki V - see also wave
    4. tremble : téré ... dô V - see also kick

shame N : kamelâ N

sharp, be V : zá V - also means to shine

sharpen V : leke yângâ tî V - see repair, edge

shave V : kio V

she P : lo - see he

shea N : 1. tree, nut : bâlâwâ N
    2. butter : mafuta tî bâlâwâ N

sheath N : pôrô tî zambé N - see scabbard

sheep N : 1. taba N
    2. Protestant usage : ngâsa Ngbaka - see goat

sheet N : 1. be’ : drap** N
    paper : kugbé tî mbôtî N

shelter N : temporary shed : kpangba N

shield N : válá N

shine V : 1. (sun) : su V
    2. (something else) : zá V - also means to be keen or sharp
shirt N: 1. European type: chemise** N  
2. flowing. Muslim type: boubou** N

shoe N: 1. general term: pôrô N, pôrô ti géré N — means skin, leather  
2. European type: paire** N, soulier** N  
3. sandal, thong: papa N

short Adj: ndurû An — also means near

short time N: kété An, ndurû An — see small, short

shoulder N: ndo (ti) maboko N — see arm

shout N: kôngô N

shout V: dé kôngô V

shove V: 1. bi V — means to throw, to cast  
2. push: pousser** V

show V: teach, demonstrate: fa V, fa lége V — see way

show off V: fa téré V, fa baba V — see vanity

shut V: active or passive sense: kânga V — see tie, fasten

sibling N: 1. general: ita N — also means cousin, relative  
2. brother: ita (ti) koli N — see male  
3. sister: ita (ti) wâle N — see female  
4. older sibling: kótâ ita N  
5. older brother: kótâ zo N  
6. younger sibling: ngambe N

sick, become V: wara kobéla V — see sickness

sick 'em! I: k'a? I

sickness N: kobéla N, malade** N — means also ailment, illness

sick on V: darâ V — means to incite, to urge

side N: 1. of animate being: téré N — means body, flank  
2. general: mbáge N  
3. chest: katé N
sieve-slap

sieve N : yengère N

sift V : 1. strain, drain : passer** V - see pass
   2. (as flour) : yengère V - see sieve, shake

sigh V : gió bé V - means to exhale, to gasp, as in dying

signal V : (with hand) : pé V - see beckon

significant Adj : kótá An - see important, big

since Prep : depuis** C - see also for quite a while

sing V : hé (biá) V, sára biá V - see song

single girl V : of marriageable age : masia N - see unmarried girl

sir N : monsieur** N - also means Mr., gentleman

sisal N : ndunda N

sister N : ita (ti) wâle N - see sibling, female

sit V : dutí V - means also to remain, to stay, to dwell

sitatunga N : a small antelope ; lekpa N

six Adj : omaná An

size N : kônôngó N - from kono V to grow - also means growth

skill N : ndarâa N, malin** N, manière** N - mean also ingenuity, ability,
   understanding, wisdom, cunning

skin N : póró N - means also hide, leather, sheath, shoe

skull N : bió li N - see head

sky N : ndûzû N, lé ndûzû N - see also air, heaven

slag N : (waste from iron smelting) : purû N - means also excrement

slander V : 1. accuse : pâ éré V, réclamer** V
   2. betray : sára makorô V

slander N : makorô N - means esp. betrayal

slap V : pika V - also means hit, beat
slave N : ngbáá N - see servant

sleep V : lángó V - also means to lie down, to dwell - see recline

sleep N : lángó N - also means nap, day

sleeping sickness N : ngé lángó N

sleeping ly V : lángó ... sára lé tí V - see sleep, affect, eye

slimy Adj : dongó An, dongó yongóro An

slowly Adv : 1. yake Av - often reduplicated - means also gradually

2. gently : doucement** Av

small Adj : kété An - means also little, small amount, thin, narrow

small amount N : kété An - means small, narrow, thin, little

smallpox N : yangba N

smart, be V : (be able to learn) : li ... wóko V - see head, soften

smell V : fú V - both "transitive" and "intransitive" sense

smoke N : gúrú N - also means steam

smoke V : (tobacco) : yʒ (mánga) V - see drink, suck, tobacco

snack N : besides fruit, people buy at least three kinds of snacks in the markets:

1. fritter : makala N

2. portion of manioc crushed in water, wrapped in leaves, and roasted : mangbéré N

3. strips of roasted meat : ṣaća N

snail N : kalá N

snail shell N : póró tí kalá N

snake N : ngbó N

snare N : 1. general : kámba N - means a cord

2. specific : ngindí N, sọ N - see fish trap

softly Adv : doucement** Av - also means gently, slowly, quietly
so Adv : tongasó Av - see also thus
soap N : savon** N
sociability N : ngiá N - also means fellowship, joy, fun
soil N : sése N - see earth
solder N : mboso N, tungu N - also means lead
soldier N : turúgu N, yongóro ngombe N - the latter term refers to the troops used to pacify the country in colonial days
sole N : (of foot) : sédá tí géré N - see foot, footprint
solidify V : set, harden : gbó V, coller** V
some Adj : mbéni An - also means other, another, any
something N : mbéni yí N - see also anything
sometime Adv : mbéni lá N - see also one day
son N : mérangé (tí) kóli N - see child, male
s'ong N : bía N
son-in-law N : kógarâ N - also means father-in-law, brother-in-law
soon Adv : 1. ânde Av - both pre-clausally and post-verbally - has idea of time lapse, no idea of speed
2. fadé Av, hío Av, both post-verbal only - have idea of speed as well as time lapse : fast, quickly
sore N : ká N - also means wound
sorrow N : vundú N - cannot be disassociated from resentment and desire to retaliate which always accompany sorrow, since the causes of sorrow are all conceived to be attributable to some personal malice or ill-will
sort N : mará N, qualité** N - also mean kind, type
so then C : si C - also means and then, next
soul N : see spirit, personality
sour, be or become V : kpi V - means also to ferment
speak V : sara tene V - means also to talk - see also say, tell, chat, converse
spear N : likongó N
speech N : 1. general : tene N - also means word, utterance, affair, matter
  2. any kind of oral activity :isoró N - see chat
  3. story : histoire** N
  4. fable : tere N
speed N : lóró N - used in expressions meaning to hurry, to race
spend V : 1. (money) : dépenser** V, vo na yi V - see buy
  2. (time) : sara V - see do, act, behave, make, affect
spider N : tere N - a frequent character in fables, also called tere
spill V : 1. pour : sá V
  2. tip, dump : tuku V
spirit N : 1. of living person : yingó N
  2. of dead person : tóró N
  3. of witchcraft : lukundú N - see witch
spit V : dé V - also means to vomit, to utter
split V : sûró V - see also cut
spoil V : 1. general : foutu** V, bubu V - mean to ruin, to waste, to mar
  2. rot : fou V - means to smell
spoon, spoonful N : papa N
spouse N : mariage** N - see husband, wife, marriage
spread V : extend domain : hú V - also means to prosper
spring N : (of water) : lí ngú N - see head, river
sprout V : germinate : kó V
square V : carrer** V
stake N : post : piquet** N - also means a plot of the right size for
planting cotton

stamp V : dó V - means also to kick, to stub, to stumble, to dance, to shake

stand V : lutí V

star N : tongóro N

stare V : báa V - means to see

start V : begin : commencer** V

start off V : (on trip) : mú lége V

starve V : kúi nzala V - see hungry, die

state N : kótóró N - see community

state V : tent V - means to say, to tell, to utter

stay V : remain : dutí V - also means to sit, to dwell

steal V : nzi V

steam N : gûrû ti ngû N - see also smoke

steer N : bágara N - means any kind of cattle

stem N : stick, wood : kéké N - also means tree, pole

stick N : 1. general : kéké N - also means tree, pole, wood
2. forked, for building : sara N

stick together V : gbá (tářé) V - also means cleave (together)

still Adv : encore** Av - also means again

still, be V : dutí kpó V, kái V, bata yángá V - also mean be quiet

still more Adv, Adj : mbéni encore** An - see some, more

stir V : mélanger** V, tourner** V, yóro V - see mix

stomach N : yá N - see also abdomen

stone N : any size : témé N - pebble, rock

stone V : 1. (throw single stone with accurate aim) : bólo V
2. (throw shower of stones) : gana V
319 stop-stroll

stop! I : su I - addressed to a child to refrain from what he is about to do

stop V : 1. cease : arrêter** V - used without specifying action to be stopped
  2. zia V - used when action is specified by another verb - means also to leave, to put, to abandon

stop short V : hold back, refrain : ninka V - also means to delay

store, storehouse N : magasin** N

store-keeper N : (employed) : gérant** N

story N : 1. general, any kind of speech : isorô N
  2. history or fiction : histoire** N
  3. fable : tere N

straight Adj : physically or morally : mbirimbiri An - also means right, just

strain V : (through strainer) : passer** V - means also to pass, to drain, to sift

strange Adj : different : ndé An

stranger N : wa ndé N - see also visitor

straw N : péré N - see grass

stream N : ngû N - means water, river

street N : lége N - means path, road

strength N : ngangô An - also means strong, hard, power, force

strike V : pîka V - also means to hit, to beat, to pound

string 1. general : kamba N - means any kind of cord
  2. of beads : kamba N, lenge N, kisi N

strive V : 1. verbally : papa V - means to quarrel
  2. physically : tiri V - means to fight

stroll V : fono V - means to walk about, to travel
strong-suit case

strong Adj : ngangó An - also means hard, violent

struggle V : tiri V - means to fight

stub V : (toe) : dô (gérê) V - means also to kick, to stamp, to stumble

student N : élève** N - means pupil at any academic level

stumble V : dô (gérê) V - means also to kick, to stub, to stamp

stupid, be V : li ... (ekê) ngangó V - also means to be obdurate

submission N : pardon** N - also means apology, excuse

submit V : (as by kneeling) : voróo téré V - see respect, honor

subsequent, subsequently Adj, Adv : (na) ndá ní CP, (na) pekó ní CP - also mean after, later

succeed V : wara V - means also to get, to find, to receive

suit, be suitable V : lîngbi V - means to suffice

suck V : yô V - means also to drink, to smoke (tobacco)

suddenly Adv : yí tí bâa ndo V - used pre-clusally

suffer V : 1. pain : so V, bâa finôo V
   2. misery : bâa mawa V
   3. persecution, ill-will of others : hû ponô V
   4. burden of toil : bâa pâsi V

suffering N : 1. physical pain : finôo N
   2. pain of burdensome toil : pâsi N
   3. inflicted by others, as persecution : ponô N, sánâ N
   4. misery : mawa N - also means pity
   5. sorrow : vundû N - also means resentment

suffice V : lîngbi V - means to attain the exact measure, to be sufficient or adequate - also to be able, to be equal - with the negative, can mean either to be insufficient or excessive

sugar cane N : ngbókô N

suit case N : valise** N - see also box
summon V: 1. call, invite: éré V - also means to name
   2. call after someone: éré ndo V

sun N: là N - also means day, daylight, daytime
sunset N: là kúi N - also means afternoon
superior Adj: kótá ahô An - see big, important
supervise V: commander** V, commander** li tí V - see command, rule
suppose V: báa ... têne V - also means consider
sure, be: hinga ... têne V - see also to know
surface N: lé N - also means face, eye
surpass V: hō V - also means to pass, to excell - used in expressions of comparison (he is stronger than I: lo rê ngangô ahô mbi)
surround V: ngôro V - means also to go around, to circle
survive V: ngbá V - means to remain (from the past), to stay
sustain V: bata V - means also to keep, to protect
swallow V: mehe V - means also to gulp
swear V: (an oath): dé bá V
sweat N: gbiki N
sweep V: balayer** V
sweet potato N: bâbolo N
swell V: sûku V - also means to scold severely
swim V: sa (ngû) V
switch N: whip: zaza N
syphilis N: ndavsko N
- T -

table N : table** N
tablet N : (medicine) : quinine** N - means also capsule, pill
tail N : (of animal) : dambá N
tailor N : tailleur** N
take V : 1. general : kamáta V - also means to seize, to capture, to catch
   2. mú V - also means to give
take along V : goe na V - see also go, accompany
take apart V : lungúla V - means also to demolish
take away V : remove : lungúla V, zí V - see loosen, untie
take hold V : kamáta V, gbó V - see seize
take possession V : kamáta V - see take, seize
take to the road V : mú lége V - see start off
tale N : story : histoire** N
talisman N : yorô N - also means medicine, poison, charm, fetish
talk V : sâra ténâ V, sâra isorô V - also mean to speak, to chat, to converse
talk N : ténâ N - also means saying, utterance, speech, matter
tall Adj : yongóro An - means long, far
tall, be V : yo V - also means to be long, to be far
task N : kusâra N, koa N - see work
taste V : tara V - means to try
taunt V : gi yángá V - means to provoke, to tease
tax N : (direct income and head tax) : impôt** N
teach V: 1. general: fa V - means also to show, to demonstrate
   2. reading and writing: fa mbeti V
   3. how to do something: fa ledge V
   4. explain: fa nda ti V

teacher N: (lower grades), instructor: moniteur** N

tear V: suru V - means also to split - see to cut

tear N: (weeping): ngulé N - see water, eye

tease V: 1. entice, tempt, lure: handa V
   2. taunt: gi yanga V

telegraph V: pika senga V - means also to phone

telephone V: pika senga V - means also to telegraph

tell V: tene V - means also to say, to utter

temperament N: be N - means liver, personality

tempt V: handa V - means also to entice, to lure, to bluff, to kid, to fascinate, to amuse (a baby)

temptation N: handa N

tempter N: wa handa N - used esp. by Protestants in speaking of the devil

ten Adj: (unit of): bale N

tend V: occuper** V, soigner** V - see care for
termite N: bobo N

terror N: mbito N - see fear

textile N: bongó N - means any kind of cloth or clothing

thank V: mú merci** V

thanks N: merci** N

thank you I: merci** N

that Adj: só An - means also this

the A: ní An is used as a restrictive and/or anaphoric determinant
thee-thong

thee P : mɔ P - see I for pronominal system

their P : see they

theirs P : tì âla CP - see they

them P : see they

then C : eh bien** C - see also so then, next

there Adv : 1. general : ká Av in contrast with here
   2. anaphoric, post-verbal : da Av - means to that place, in that place,
      from that place

therefore C : tongasô Av - used pre-clausally - means also thus

there's just one thing : yi ñko N - used pre-clausally

these Adj : sô - see this

they P : âla P - see I for the pronominal system

thick Adj : kôtå An - means big, wide, important

thicken V : set : gbô V, coller** V - mean also to harden, to grab

thickness N : nîngô N, kônôngô N - mean also size

thief N : zo tì nzi N, wa nzi N - mean also robber, burglar

thigh N : kôtå géré N - see also leg, foot

thin Adj : kété An - means also small, little, narrow

thin, be or become V : (used only of living beings) : ngë V

thine P : tì mɔ CP - see thee

thing N : yi N

think V : 1. general : penser** v
   2. consider, ponder, meditate : b'anda V, hâ V, gi bé V - see wonder
   3. understand : bâa V, mà V - see also to see, to hear

this Adj : sô An - means also these, that, those

thong N : sandal : pàpa N - see also shoe
thorn N: 1. general: kîi N - means also prick
   2. burr: sisi N, kpo mo ngangô N

thou P: see thee

though C: see although

thousand N: 1. general: kutu N
   2. franc amount: sac** N

throat N: gô N - means also neck, voice

through Prep: na lége ti CP - means also by means of, on account of

throw V: bi V - means to cast, to fling, to hurl, to shove

throw a spear at V: bi na likongô V

throw away V: bi na ngonda V

thrust V: insert: yôro V

thumb N: kôtâ mabôko N - see hand, finger

thunder N: békpâ N

thus Adv: tongasô Av - either pre-clausally or post-verbally - means also so, like this, therefore

thy P: ti mo CP - see thee

tie V: 1. kânga V - means also to fasten, to imprison, to close
   2. as a cord: du V

time N: heure** N - in all senses: o'clock, moment duration, an unit of time

time, times N: lége N followed by a numeral {three times: lége otâ]

tip V: (over): tuku V - means also to dump, to pour, to spill

tip N: a gratuity: cadeau** N, matabisi N - also mean gift, bribe

tire N: géré N - also means wheel, foot, leg

tired, be V: fatiguer** V - see also weary

title N: éré N - means name
to Prep: 1. locative: na C - also means and, but, with, by, at, in, from
   2. in order to: ngbangati C, tensti C, ti C

tobacco N: mânga N
today Adv: lâ só N - see day
toe N: kété géré N - see also foot
together Adv: lége só N, só An - the first also means same, like, same
time, same way - the second means one
toil N: 1. work: kusâra N, koa N
   2. suffering: pâsi N
tomato N: tomate** N
tomorrow Adv: kékéreke Av

tongue N: 1. anatomical: mângâ N, langue** N
   2. language: yángâ N - means also mouth
too Adj, Adv: nga An - see also
tool N: 1. general: yi ti kusâra N
   2. specific: see knife, ax, hoe, machete
tooth N: pémbé N
top N: 1. head, cover: li N
   2. top surface: ndô N
tortoise N: bakongo N
toss V: bi V - see throw
to that place Adv: da Av - also means in that place, from that place, etc.
touch V: toucher** V
tow V: gbôto V - see pull
toward Prep: na C, na mbâge ti CP - the latter also means beside
town N: kótóró N - see community
township N: collectivité** N - see also administration
every N: (for fish); ngôlo N - also means weir - see also snare

travel V: tambéla V, fono V - mean also to walk

treat V: 1. general: sâra na V (he treated me badly; lo sâra sioni na mbi)
2. (medically): soigner** V - see care for

tree N: kêké N - means also wood, stick, pole

tremble V: téré ... dô V - see also shake, kick

tribe N: mará N - means also sort, kind, type

trip V: kinda V - means also to knock down

trouble N: 1. problem: téné N, ngbanga N - also mean matter, affair
2. suffering: mawa N, ponô N

truck N: camion** N - see automobile

true Adj: taâ Au - also means real, genuine

truly Adv: biakû Av, biani Av - either can be reduplicated - mean also
certainly

trunk N: 1. of tree: kêké N - means also tree, wood, pole, stem
2. of elephant: hî ti dole N - see nose, elephant
3. for storage: sandôku N - see box

trust V: zia bé V - means also to set one's heart on, to covet, to believe

truth N: taâ téné N - see true, word

try V: 1. taste: tara V
2. attempt: gi lége V - means to seek a way

tuberculosis N: kobéla ti kate N - also means pneumonia, pleurisy, asthma,
bronchitis, or any other severe chest inflammation accompanied by coughing

tug V: gbôto V - see pull

tune N: gô N - means neck, throat, voice, melody

turn V: tourner** V - also means to mix, to stir
turtle-type

turtle N : bakongo N
twin N : mérengé ti mia N, mérengé ti ngbó N
twist V : (make rope by twisting fiber) : pé kamba V
twisted Adj : kirikiri An - see crooked
two Adj : 6se An
type N : kind, sort : mará N, qualité** N
type V : (on typewriter) : pika mbétí V - also means to print
ugly Adj : nzoni pepe An, pendere pepe An - see beautiful, good
ulcer N : ká N - see wound
umbilical cord N : turúngu N - also means navel
uncle N : 1. father's brother : babâ N also means father
    2. father's older brother : kóté babâ N
    3. father's younger brother : kété babâ N
    4. mother's brother : aû N. kóya N - also used in respect in addressing
       a mature man
under, underneath Adj, Adv : na gbé ti/ni CP - also mean below
understand V : 1. perceive : báa V, má V - mean to see, to hear
    2. know : hingga V
    3. thoroughly : hingga li ti V, hingga ndá ni V, má ndá ti/ni V, hingga
       kóé V
    4. discern another's thoughts : hingga bê ti V
understanding N : ndarâa N - also means skill, ability, cunning, wisdom
unfasten V : lungûla V, zi V - mean also open, untie
unite V : bôngbi V, tingbi V - see also join, assemble
unmarried girl N : masia N - a girl who has never married, but of marriageable
       age
untie V : zi V - see also loosen, unfasten
until C : jusqu'à* C - also used as Av meaning for a while
untruth N : vene N, wâtâkâ N - see lie
up Adv : na ndûzû CP - see sky
upright Adj : mbirimbiri An - means straight, right, just
urge V : pousser** V, dará V - see push, incite
urinate-utterance

urinate V: 1. sâra ino V
   2. euphemism: goe (na) ngonda V - also means to defecate

urine N: ino N

us P: see we

use V: sâra na V - see make, do, act, prepare

useless, make V: foutu** V, buba V - see spoil

utter V: 1. téné V - see say
   2. dé V - also means to spit, to vomit

utterance N: téné N - means speech, word, saying, affair, matter
- V -

vacation N: 1. from work: congé** N - see also holiday, celebration
2. from school: vacances** N

vaccinate V: sûru (ndó tí) mabóko V - see split, arm, shoulder

vagina N: dondo N

valiant man N: lombé N - see hero

valley N: pópó hótó N - see middle, hill

value N: ngéré N - also means cost, price

vanity N: baba N, fanndara N - see also pride, conceit, show off

vanquish V: gagner** V - see defeat

various Adj: ndé An - also means different - often reduplicated

vegetable N: (edible leaves): kugbé kása N - see leaf, sauce

very Adv: mingi An - also means much, many

village N: kótôrô N - see community

vine N: kâmba N - also means cord, snare

violence N: ngangó An, yí tí ngangó N - see also strong, strength, hard

violent, be V: sâra ngangó na V - see do, behave, violence

violet Adj: vokó An - means also black - see color

visit V: (in a foreign place): goe гене V - see go, visitor

visitor N: (esp. one from a foreign place): гене N

voice N: gó N - also means neck, throat, tune

vomit V: dé V, dé na sése V - also means to spit, to utter
- W -

wages N : fúta N, par jour** N - the latter means esp. a daily rate, as for laborers - see also pay

wage war V : píka berá V - see also fight, war, strike

wait V : kú V - means also to hope, to expect

waken V : zíngo V - means also to arouse, to scold

walk V : 1. general : tambéla V - also means to travel, to run (as machinery)
    2. to walk about, to stroll, to wander, to gad about ; fono V

wall N : téré tí da N - see side, house

wallet N : poche** N - also means pocket, pocketbook

wander V : fono V - means also walk'about

want V : 1. general : yi V - means also desire, like, love, agree
    2. casually, without strong feelings : lé ... yi V - see eye, desire
    3. with strong feeling : bê ... yi V - see liver, love

war N : berá V - also means battle

warehouse N : magasin** N, da tê magasin** N - also means store

warn V : wa V - means also to rebuke, to admonish, to reprove, to scold, to advise, to counsel, to comfort, to console, to encourage

warning N : wángó N - from wa V to warn - also mean: advice, counsel

wart hog N : cochon** tí gigí N, cochon** tí ngonda N

wash V : 1. sukúla V - also means to clean in general
    2. wash up, bathe : sukúla ngú V

washcloth N : (indigenous, made of the rind of a wild plant) : ndakóro N

wasp N : gándá N

waste V : buba V, foutu** V - also mean to spoil, to ruin
watch V: 1. general: bata V - means to keep, to protect
   2. watch out: sâra attention** V
   3. imperative I: attention** I

watchman N: sentinelle** N

water N: 1. general: ngû N - also means river, rain, year, or any liquid
   2. cold: ngû tî dé N
   3. hot: ngû tî wâ N
   4. boiled or boiling: kpôrôngô ngû N

waterbuck N: a fairly large antelope: bêta N

wave V: (the hand): pé V - see beckon, signal

way N: 1. path, road, manner: lége N
   2. skill: manière** N - also means cunning, ability, wisdom

we P: 1. general: î P - also means us, our, ours - see î for the pronominal system
   2. in Protestant literature: âni P - not standard
   3. in Catholic material: *ê P - the distinction between *ê and î is not standard

weak Adj: ngangô pêpe An - also means easy - see strong, not

wealth N: mosoro N - also means bride-price

wear V: yû V - also means to put on clothes

weary V: 1. in transitive sense: be V - see also to annoy, to overcome
   2. in intransitive sense: fatiguer** V

weave V: há V - also means to plait, to braid

week N: semaine** N, dimanche** N - the latter is more common, and also means Sunday

weight N: néngô N - from ne V to bear down, to be heavy - also means heaviness, thickness

weir N: fish trap: ngôlo N

well Adj: séngé An - see without
well-whose

well Adv : nzoní An, bien** Av - see also good
well N : dú ngú N - see also hole, water
well, well then I : bon** I
wet, be or become V : gâ ngú V, eke ngú V, mouiller** V - see also be, become, water
what Adj, P : yë An, wa An - used in other interrogative expressions also : how, when, where, why, who
what-you-may-call-him N : (used when groping for a name) : yî só N
wheel N : géré N - also means foot, leg, tire
when C : tongana C - also means if, like
when Adv : lâ wa N, lâ yë N - used interrogatively - see what
where Adv : (na) nào wa CP, N - see place, what
while C : tongana C - see also when C
while, (for) a Adv : ngbii Av, jusqu'à** Av - see also for a long time
whip N : chicotte** N - see also switch
whiskers N : 1. moustache : kôá yângâ N
   2. beard : kôá ngbagba N
white Adj : vurû An - also means clean - see color
white, be or become V : vurû V - also means be clean
white man : mbunzû N
whitewash N : 1. white clay : vurû sése N
   2. lime : mbamba N - also means oyster
who, whom P : 1. interrogative : zo wa N - see what
   2. "relative" : só An - see this, that
whole Adj : kôé An - also means all
wholly Adv : kôé An - also means entirely, altogether
whose P : 1. interrogative : ti zo wa CP - see who
2. "relative" : só An - see who, this

why Adv : təntî yə CP, ngbangatî yə CP - see what, for, in order to

wide Adj : kóta An - also means big, important, thick

wife N : 1. wâle N - also means woman, female

2. co-wife : sambá N

wildcat N : yåç N - also means domestic cat

wild dog N : African hunting dog : sônzô N

wilderness N : ngonda N - also means bush, uncultivated area

wiles N : malin** N, manière** N - also mean skill, cunning, ability

will N : see personality

win V : gagner** V - also means to defeat, to overcome

wind N : pupu N - the verb is ia V to blow

wine N : 1. European grape wine : vin** N

2. palm wine : kanguya N

wing N : (of bird) : kpangbi N

wipe V : mbo V - means also to erase

wire N : (esp. telephone and telegraph) : senga N

wisdom N : ndaràa N - also means skill, ability, cunning

wish V : yi V - also means want, like, love

witch N : zo tí lukundû N - see spirit of witchcraft

with Prep : na C - also means and, but, to, for, at, in, from, by

withhold V : gbánzi V - also means to hinder, to prevent

with respect to Prep : see concerning

without Prep : sénge An means without something suggested by the context :

e.g. naked (without clothes), well (without illness, without trouble),
worthless (without value), ordinary (without distinction), free
(without cost), pointless (without reason or purpose)
woman-wrestle

woman N : wâle N - also means wife, female

wonder V : gi bé V - see also think, ponder

wood N : kéké N - also means tree, stick, pole

word N : téné N - also means saying, utterance, speech, matter, affair, problem

work N : koa N, kusâra N - also mean job, task

work V : 1. perform a task : sâra koa V, sâra kusâra V
    2. as a machine : tambéla V - see also to walk, to run

workman N : laborer : zo ti kusâra N, manoeuvre** N

worth N : ngéré N - also means value, cost, price

world N : sése N - also means earth, land, soil

worship V : diko V, sambéla V - mean also to pray - see praise, honor, reverence, plead

worthless Adj : 1. sêngé An - see without
    2. bubâ An - also means foolish, crazy

wound N : a sore : kâ N

wound V : 1. general : sâra kâ V
    2. with a weapon as subject : te V - means also to bite, to eat
    3. stab : kpo V - means to pierce, to puncture
    4. cut, kill : fâa V
    5. hit, beat, slap : pika V

wounded, be V : kâ ... wara V, wara kâ V - see get, wound

wow I : 1. usually in an absolute usage : babá N - means father
    2. either in absolute usage or introducing exclamatory sentence : mon vieux** I

wreck N : (of a bicycle, automobile, etc.) : kûi N - means dead body, corpse

wrestle V : tiri V - means to fight
wrist N : mabóko N - means also hand, arm
write V : sára mbéti V - see make, paper
wrong Adj : sioní An, kiríkiri An - the first means bad, the latter means crooked, perverse

xylophone N : (indigenous) : ngómbá N
Y

yam N: 1. domestic: gô N
  2. wild: ngasâ N

year N: ngô N - also means water, river, rain, rainy season

yeast N: 1. for bread: mamâ tî màpa N - see mother, bread
  2. for brewing beer: sá N

yell V: dé kângô V - also means to shout

yellow Adj: 1. deep, intense: bingbá An - also means red - see color
  2. light: bingbá kêté An - also means light pink
  3. very light: vurû kêté An - also means light gray

yes I: oui** I

yesterday Adv: biri N

yet Adv: encore** Av - also means still

yield N: lôngô N - means also fruit, harvest

you P: 1. singular, thee: mo P - see I for the pronominal system
  2. plural: âla P - also means your, yours

young Adj: pendere An - also means beautiful, handsome

young, youth N: 1. of animals: mîrêng N - see child
  2. adolescent: pendere An - means young, beautiful
  3. man: pendere kôli N
  4. woman: pendere wâle N

your, yours P: see you

youth N: young man: pendere kôli N - see also child